E LIBRIS
FREDERICI
HENRICI
HAVH
THIS, TOO WILL PASS.

/on-SOL

1702.

51 The Compleat Horseman: or, Perfect Farrier. In two parts.

Part I.—Discovering the surest marks of the beauty, goodness, faults, and imperfections of horses; the best method of breeding and backing of colts, making their mouths; buying, dieting, and otherwise ordering of horses. The Art of shoeing, with the several sorts of shoes adapted to the various defects of bad feet, and the preservation of good. The Art of Riding and managing the great horse, etc.

Part II.—Contains the signs and causes of their diseases, with the true method of curing them.

Written in French by the **Sieur de Solleysell,** Querry to the present king of France, and one of the Royal Academy of Paris. Abridged from the folio done into English by Sir William Hope. With the addition of several excellent Receipts by our best Farriers; and Directions to the Buyers and Sellers of Horses. London. 1702.

8vo. 376 pp. and table, engraved frontispiece, and 6 copper plates. M., 8 in. by $4\frac{3}{4}$ in.

THE
Compleat Horseman
Abridg'd.

THE

Compleat Horſeman:

OR,

Perfect Farrier.

In Two Parts.

Part I. Diſcovering the ſureſt Marks of the Beauty, Goodneſs, Faults, and Imperfections of Horſes; the beſt Method of Breeding and Backing of Colt's, making their Mouths; Buying, Dieting, and otherwiſe ordering of Horſes.

The Art of Shoeing, with the ſeveral ſorts of Shoes adapted to the various defects of Bad Feet, and the preſervation of Good.

The Art of Riding and managing the Great Horſe, *&c.*

Part II. Contains the Signs and Cauſes of their Diſeaſes, with the true Method of Curing them.

Written in *French* by the *Sieur de* SOLLEYSELL, Querry to the preſent King of *France*, and one of the Royal Accademy of *Paris*.

Abridged from the Folio done into *Engliſh* by Sir *WILLIAM HOPE*.

With the Addition of ſeveral excellent Receipts, by our beſt Farriers: And Directions to the Buyers and Sellers of Horſes.

Illuſtrated with ſeveral Copper-Plates.

LONDON,

Printed for *H. Bonwicke* at the *Red-Lyon* in St. *Paul's* Church-yard, *T. Goodwin* at the *Queen's-Head*, *M. Wotton* at the *Three-Daggers*, and *B. Tooke* at the *Middle-Temple-Gate* in *Fleetſtreet*, and *S. Manſhip* at the *Ship* in *Cornhill*. 1702.

THE PREFACE.

OF all the Books of Horſemanſhip yet extant, Mr. Solleyſel's Compleat Horſeman is juſtly accounted the beſt. The Reception it met with, not only in the original French, but in the Engliſh and other Tranſlations, is ſufficient evidence of its diſtinguiſhing Merit. The Author was a Perſon who made it his buſineſs to improve all the Parts of Horſemanſhip, and ſucceeded ſo well in that Profeſſion, that not only the French Court, and the Academies of Paris, but even the Perſons of Quality of other Nations, particularly the Incomparable Duke of Newcaſtle, paid him the deference that was due to the Character of a Maſter in that way. Till the Eighth Edition of this Book was publiſh'd, the World was miſled by the falſe Opinions and Practices that blind Cuſtom had eſtabliſh'd. Remedies were preſcrib'd by roat, and the

Plea of Antiquity ſtifled the proper Preſcriptions. Had a Perſon of leſs Authority than our Author offer'd to withſtand the Current, the crowd of Opinionative Farriers had been too hard for him: But the Character he bore, the weight of his Reaſons, and the certainty of his Experience, were proof againſt all oppoſition.

To inſtance in one or two things: The Cuſtom of Gartering for Foundering in the Feet, has been us'd among Farriers time out of Mind; but he makes it appear, that 'tis more prejudicial than ſerviceable. In like manner, when a Horſe is ſtrain'd in the Shoulder, they us'd to tie up the ſound Leg, to oblige him to make uſe of the affected one; and if he was ſtrain'd in the Haunch, they were wont to make him draw in the Harrows: Now he plainly makes out the perniciouſneſs of that Cuſtom, which only redoubles the pain of a part that's already oppreſs'd. Farther, If a Horſe vomits Matter at the Noſe, they us'd to call it the Glanders, tho' perhaps 'tis nothing but a Cold: And even in the Glanders, they plac'd the Cure in removing the Kernels, which are only the effect, and not the cauſe of the Diſtemper; and then pretended to thwart the courſe of Nature by repeated Purgation.

'Twere

'Twere eaſie to muſter up an infinity of ſuch Diſcoveries which are only owing to the Sieur de Solleyſel.

That all Perſons may enjoy the benefit of ſo uſeful a Book, we here preſent the World with an Abridgement of it. Thoſe who grudge the Price of the Original, or are ſcar'd by its length, may here gratifie their Curioſity, without any conſiderable loſs either of Money or Time.

The Firſt Part of this Performance contains the neceſſary Directions for Buying, Keeping, Shoeing, Bitting, *and* Breeding *all ſorts of Horſes for any Service whatſoever.*

The Second Part contains the Deſcription and Cure of the Diſeaſes incident to Horſes. In regard, the excellency of this Part conſiſts in the Receipts, which are infinitely preferable to all others; we have taken a particular care to make ſuch a Collection as will anſwer all the Diſtempers of Horſes, by what Names ſoever they may be diſtinguiſhed. Where a Diſeaſe retains to another, or is not known in England, *we paſs ſlightly over it. To multiply the Names of Diſtempers, and the Numbers of Receipts, does more harm than good: A few ſuch Remedies as theſe, if wiſely manag'd, will do more ſervice than all the numerous*

Prescriptions of other Authors. 'Tis *true, some of these Receipts are very Chargeable; but they are always accompany'd with others of an easier Purchase; besides, those who keep fine Horses will not grudge to advance upon the Price, when they are sure of having a good Med'cine. Our Author, who liv'd in a Wine Country, commonly prescribes Wine for a Vehicle: But in this Country that affords* Ale, *we may make use of it instead of* Wine, *in most cases.*

In fine, We have left out nothing that was material or useful; being directed in that point by a Person whose Judgment and Experience we could safely trust.

These Two Parts contain the Substance of Mr. Solleysel's Compleat Horseman; *to which we have added Two Supplements; one to the First Part, being* A Treatise of the Art of Riding, *of which Mr.* Solleysel *has little or nothing: And another to the Second, containing an additional description of some Diseases, and the Receipts of some noted Medicines; both of 'em collected from the best Authors upon those Subjects. These were thought proper to be added, that nothing might be wanting to render this Performance the compleatest of its kind.*

THE

THE CONTENTS. OF PART I.

THE Introduction. Page 1

Chap. I. *The Names of the Parts of a Horse.* 1

Chap. II. *How the Parts of a Horse should be framed.* 4

Chap. III. *How to know a Horse's Age while he hath Mark.* 14

Chap. IV. *How to know the Age of a Horse which is past Mark, Shell-tooth'd, or Hollow-tooth'd, or whose Mark is counterfeited.* 17

Chap. V. *Of the Eyes.* 22

Chap. VI. *A Continuation of the knowledge of Faults and Imperfections in Horses, and what is to be observ'd in buying them.* 26

Chap. VII. *How to know when a Horse's Legs are good.* 28

Chap. VIII. *How to know a Horse's Feet.* 41

Chap. IX. *How to know if a Horse be well bodied, or have a good Belly.* 47

The Contents.

Chap. X. *How to know when a Horſe's Flanks are altered and out of order.* 49
Chap. XI. *How to know when a Horſe is right planted on his Limbs; and if he Walks or Treads well.* 53
Chap. XII. *How to know if a Horſe's Mouth be good.* 57
Chap XIII. *How to judge of a Horſe's Vigour and Agility.* 58
Chap. XIV. *After what manner a Man ſhould Mount, and try a Horſe he intends to buy.* 60
Chap. XV. *Of the different Colours of Horſes. With ſome Obſervations that may be drawn from them.* 63
Chap. XVI. *Of White Feet, Stars, Blazes, Feathers.* 66
Chap. XVII. *How to know if a Horſe have a good Appetite, or be ſubject to the Tick.* 68
Chap. XVIII. *Directions for preſerving Horſes ſound upon Travel.* 70
Chap. XIX. *Directions for preſerving Horſes after a Journey.* 78
Chap. XX. *How to recover Horſes which are haraſſed and lean, after a long Journey.* 80
Chap. XXI. *Of the Art of Shooing, or, The true and exact Method of Shooing, all ſorts of Feet, be they never ſo bad and deform'd.* 81
Chap XXII. *How to pare the Feet well, fit the Shooes, and drive the Nails.* 83
Chap. XXIII. *Of low Heels, tender Feet, and other kinds of bad and imperfect Feet.* 86
Chap. XXIV. *Of flat Feet, and ſuch as have their Soles round and high.* 89

Chap.

Chap. XXV. *How Horſes that are Hoof-bound, or Narrow-heel'd, ſhould be ſhod.* 98
Chap. XXVI. *How Horſes which have Clefts in their Quarters, commonly call'd* Falſe-Quarters, *are to be Shooed.* 107
Chap. XXVII. *Of Shooing Horſes whoſe Fore-Legs, from the Knees to the Coronets, go in a ſtraight Line, and appear as if they were all one piece: As alſo of thoſe whoſe Paſtern-joints bend ſo far forwards that they appear to be diſlocate.* 110
Chap. XXVIII. *Of Arched Legs.* 115
Chap. XXIX. *How to Shooe Horſes which tread only upon the Toes of the Hind-Feet; as alſo thoſe which Trip or Stumble.* 116
Chap. XXX. *How to Shooe Horſes which have been founder'd in the Feet.* 118
Chap. XXXI. *Of Calkins.* 119
Chap. XXXII. *How to Shooe Horſes which cut or interfere.* 120
Chap. XXXIII. *Of Purging.* 122
Chap. XXXIV. *Of Glyſters.* 125
Chap. XXXV. *Of Blooding Horſes, and Precautions to be obſerved therein.* 128
Chap. XXXVI. *How to judge of the Quantity and Quality of Blood.* 133
Chap. XXXVII. *Of Bits.* 135
Chap. XXXVIII. *Of Branches.* 139
Chap. XXXIX. *A Diſcourſe of Breeding, and how to raiſe a good and beautiful Race of Horſes.* 144
Chap. XL. *When Foals are to be wean'd, or ſeparated from their Dams, and how they are to be ordered.* 150

Chap.

The Contents.

Chap. XLI. *The Ancient Method of preparing Running Horſes.* 153
Chap. XLII. *The Modern Way of preparing Running Horſes.* 157
Chap XLIII. *Of Ambling.* 175
Chap. XLIV. *Of the Vices of Horſes, and how to correct and remedy them.* 179

The Contents of the Treatiſe of the Art of Riding.

Chap. I. *Of what Stature and Age a Horſe ſhould be that is deſign'd for the Manage.* 187
Chap. II. *A Deſcription of the Natural Paces of a Horſe.* 189
Chap. III. *Of all the Artificial Motions which a Horſe can make.* 191
Chap. IV. *Of the true Seat a Man ſhould keep on Horſeback.* 193
Chap V. *The true Method of ſuppling a Horſe's Shoulders, or firſt riding him upon Circles.* 194
Chap VI. *How to ſtop a Horſe and make him go back.* 198
Chap. VII. *How to make a Horſe ſenſible and obedient to the Heels, and to anſwer exactly the Spurs.* 200
Chap. VIII. *The true and exact Method to make a Horſe go* Terra à Terra. 206
Chap. IX. *Of changing upon Demi-Volts.* 209

Chap.

The Contents.

Chap. X. *Of Peſates.* 210
Chap. XI. *For Corvets ſtrait forwards, ſideways, backwards, and upon the Volts.* 211
Chap. XII. *Of the* Capriole, Croupade, Balotade, *and a* Step *and a* Leap. 216
Chap. XIII. *Of the Piroyte.* 218
Chap. XIV. *Of Paſſades.* 219
Chap. XVI. *A new Invention to dreſs Horſes upon all Ayres, by the help of one* ſingle Pillar. 221
Chap. XVI. *Of the ſeveral Helps and Corrections with the Spurs.* 223

THE

THE CONTENTS OF PART II.

THE *Introduction.* Page 225

Chap. I. *Of the Diſorders of the Mouth; namely, the* Lampas, Barbs, Wolves-Teeth, *and Wounds in the Mouth.* 226

Chap. II. *Of a loathing of Food, or want of Appetite.* 229

Chap. III. *Of the Strangles.* 232

Chap. IV. *Of a Cold and Cough.* 235

Chap. V. *Of the Glanders.* 239

Chap. VI. *Of the Diſeaſes of the Eyes.* 242

Chap. VII. *Of a* Hæmorrhagy, *or Bleeding.* 246

Chap. VIII. *Of the* Vives. 248

Chap. IX. *Of the Colick, Fret, or Gripes.* 250

Chap. X. *Of an immoderate Flux of Urine; and of a ſtaling or piſſing of Blood.* 257

Chap. XI. *Of the Stavers and Giddineſs.* 259

Chap. XII. *Of Strains or Wrenches in the Shoulders or Hips.* 261

Chap.

The CONTENTS.

Chap. XIII. *Of broken, ſtiff, tir'd, decay'd, bruis'd, or ſwell'd Legs.* 263
Chap. XIV. *Of Malenders, Selenders, Splents, Wind-galls, Farcy-knots, and other Swellings.* 270
Chap. XV. *Of an Attaint or Over-reach.* 275
Chap. XVI. *Of the Scratches.* 277
Chap. XVII. *Of the Ring-bone.* 278
Chap. XVIII. *Of Vices of the Feet and Hoofs; particularly ſurbated Feet; and of Pricks made with Stubs or Nails in Shooing, or in the Streets.* 280
Chap. XIX. *Of Scab'd Heels or Fruſh; and of the Crown-ſcab and Mange.* 285
Chap. XX. *Of the Hoof-bound, or of waſted and ſhrunk Feet.* 288
Chap. XXI. *Of all ſorts of Wounds and Hurts.* 290
Chap. XXII. *Of the bitings of Mad-Dogs and venomous Beaſts.* 304
Chap. XXIII. *Of a Cough.* 307
Chap. XXIV. *Of Obſtructions of the Lungs, Fevers, and other Sickneſſes occaſion'd by Foundering.* 309
Chap. XXV. *Of the Preparations and Vertues of* Crocus Metallorum, Sal Polychreſt, *and the* Golden Sulphur *of* Antimony. 312
Chap. XXVI. *The Method of fattening Horſes.* 318
Chap. XXVII. *Of the Palpitation of the Heart.* 319
Chap. XXVIII. *Of Fevers.* 322
Chap. XXIX. *Of the Farcin.* 325

Chap.

Chap. XXX. *Of the Ebullition of the Blood, or Blood-running Itch.* 327
Chap. XXXI. *Of the Molten-Greaſe.* 328
Chap. XXXII. *Of Worms, Botts, or Truncheons, bred in the Body of a Horſe.* 333
Chap. XXXIII. *Of ſwaying of the Back, and Falls.* 334
Chap. XXXIV. *Of the Swelling of the Cods or Stones; and of bruis'd or hard Stones.* 336
Chap. XXXV. *Of the Lask, Looſeneſs, or Flux of the Belly.* 340
Chap. XXXVI. *Of the Falling of the Fundament.* 343
Chap. XXXVII. *Of Warts, Chops, Pains, Rattails, Mules, and other foul and watry Sores in a Horſe's Legs; and of ſwoll'n and gouty Legs, occaſion'd by ſuch Sores. Together with a deſcription of the Compoſition and Vertues of the* White Honey-Charge. 345
Chap. XXXVIII. *Of Halter-caſt.* 352

THE

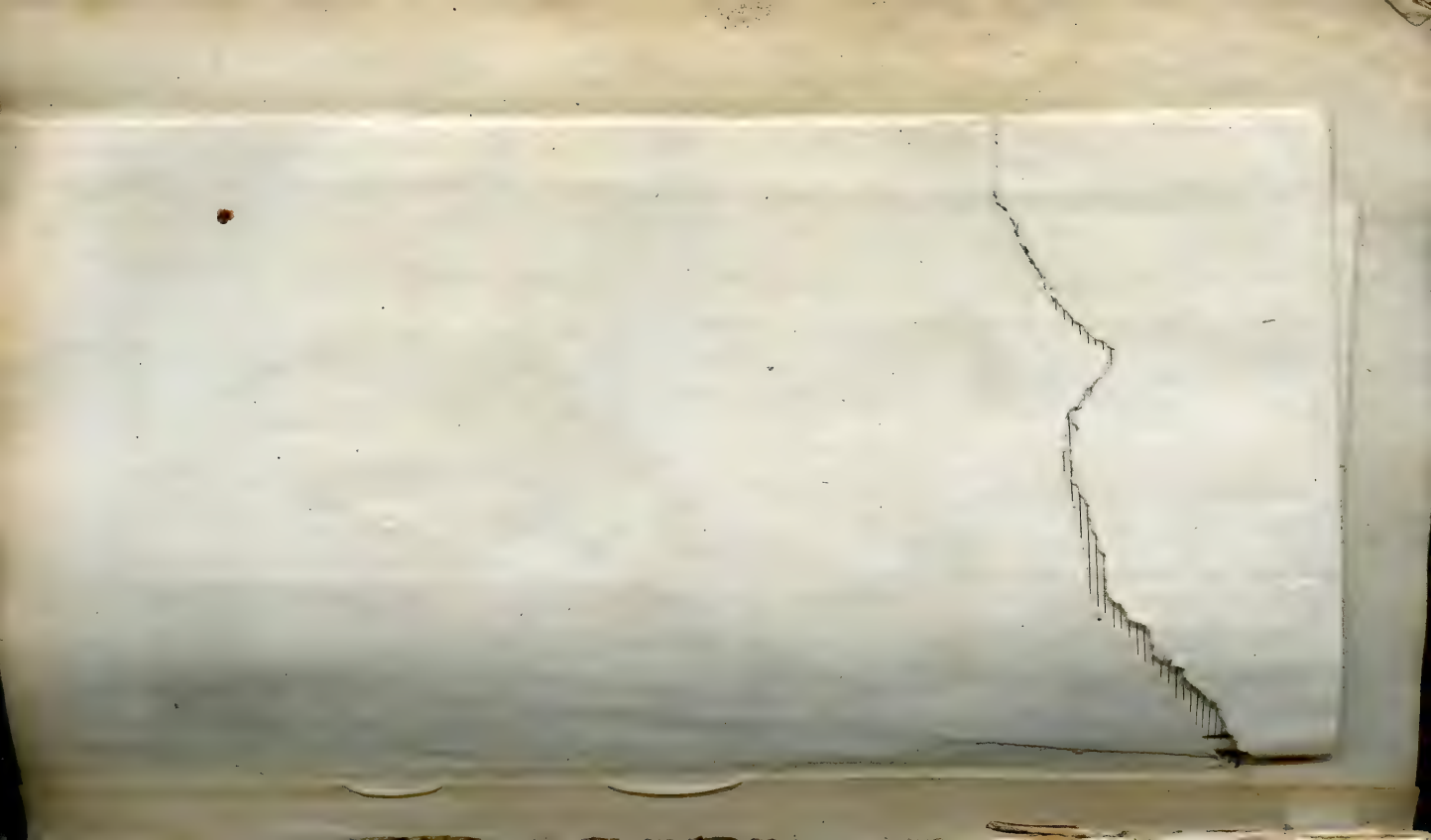
The CONTENTS of the Appendix.

Of the Anticor. 353
Of Bleymes. 355
Of Seymes *or* Falſe-Quarters. 356
Of the Curb. 357
Of a Jardon. ibid.
Of a String-halt. 358
Of the Bone-ſpavin. ibid.
Of the Blood-ſpavin. 359
Of the Hough-bonny. 360
Of a Cramp. ibid.
Of the over-ſtretching *or* relaxation *of a* Sinew. 361
Of Gaunt-Belly'd or Light-Belly'd Horſes. ibid.
Of the Ambury. 362
Of the Cords. ibid.
Of the Hungry-Evil. 363
Of the Stag-Evil, or Palſie in the Jaws. ibid.
Of Crepances. 364
Of the Stones drawn into the Body. ibid.
Of the Head-Ach. 365
Of an Apoplexy *or* Palſie. ibid.
Of the falling of the Creſt, Mangineſs in the Mane, or the ſhedding of the Hair. 366
Of a Canker in the Noſe, Mouth, or any other part of the Body. ibid.
Of the Poll-Evil. ibid.
Of the Colt-Evil, or burning by a Mare. 367

Of

Of a Stoppage of Urine in Colicks. ibid.
Of Gauling between the Legs. ibid.
Of Lice. 368
Of a foul'd or fur'd Yard. ibid.
Of the Stiffling. ibid.
Schmit's *Ointment for reſtoring the Hoof.* 369
Neatherd's Ointment for the Mange. 371
Counteſſes Ointment *for healing Sores in the Hairy part of the Foot.* 372
Duke's Ointment for all hot Swellings and Inflammations. 373
The ripening Ointment, call'd Baſilicum. 374
The Liquid Cauſtic. ibid.
The true Ointment of Montpelier. 375
An excellent Powder for Purſive Horſes. ibid.

THE



Of a Stop
Of Gaulin
Of Lice.
Of a foul
Of the St
Schmit's C
Neatherd
Counteſſe
Hairy
Duke's O
flammat
The ripen
The Liqu
The true
An excell

THE Compleat Horſeman: OR, Perfect FARRIER.

PART I.

The INTRODUCTION.

AMongſt all the Creatures, there is none which yields more Profit and Pleaſure to Man than the Horſe; yet oftentimes, for want of Skill to ride him, or through Negligence in his Diet or Dreſſing, or by Watring him unſeaſonably, or any other Accident, he becomes unſerviceable. The preventing of which, is the deſign of the enſuing Treatiſe.

CHAP. I.

The Names of the Parts of a Horſe.

TO ſay nothing of the Ears, Eyes, *&c.* as being Parts well known, I ſhall begin firſt with the *Barrs* of his Mouth, which are a part of the Gums, but without any Teeth; ſo that Nature

ſeems to have appointed them as a place for the Mouth of the Bitt to reſt upon.

The *Barrs* are properly the very Ridges or Upper-parts of the Gums, betwixt the Under-Tuſhes and Grinders; for the outward ſides of them are always called the Gums.

The *Channel* is the Hollow betwixt the two *Barrs*, or nether Jaw-bones, in which the Tongue is lodged.

The *Palat* is the Roof of the Mouth, where Horſes are commonly bled with a ſharp-pointed Horn, to refreſh and give them an Appetite.

The Teeth are of five kinds.

1. The *Jaw-Teeth* or *Grinders*, in number twenty four, *viz.* twelve in the Upper-Jaw, and as many below.

2. The *Foal-Teeth*, which come forth before, when he is about three Months old, and which he caſts about two Years and a half after.

3. The *Tuſhes*, which are placed alone in the Barrs, betwixt the Fore-Teeth and Grinders; one upon each ſide below, and as many above. *Mares* have ſeldom any Tuſhes, and when they have them they are but ſmall: It is alſo thought an Imperfection in thoſe which have them.

4. The *Gatherers*, which grow before in the place of the Foal-Teeth, and with which Horſes draw their Fodder, or cut their Graſs, being ſix above, and as many below, and are divided into three kinds, *viz.* the *Nippers*, the *Middle-Teeth* or *Separaters*, and the *Outward* or *Corner ones*. The *Nippers* or two foremoſt Teeth above and below, are thoſe which a Horſe firſt changes. The Middle-Teeth or Separaters, (ſo called becauſe they ſeparate the Nippers from the Corner-Teeth) are the two next the Nippers, one upon each ſide of them both above and below, and are thoſe which change next. The Outward and Corner ones being thoſe next the Tuſhes above and below, and by which the Age of a Horſe is

is known, are thoſe which he caſteth laſt. The Age is alſo known by the Middle-Teeth or Separaters. So there being twelve Fore-Teeth, ſix above, and ſix below, a Horſe hath in all forty Teeth, and a Mare but thirty ſix.

The *Withers* begin where the Mane endeth, and are joined to and end at the tip of the Shoulder-Blades, marked 9.

The *Loyns* or *Fillets* begin at the place where the hinder-part of the Saddle reſteth.

The *Flanks* are the Extremity of the Belly where the Ribs are wanting, and below the Loyns, marked 15.

The *Shank* is that part of the Fore-Leg, which is betwixt the Knee and ſecond Joint next to the Foot, called the Fetlock or Paſtern-joint, marked 19.

The *Paſtern-joint*, is the Joint next the Foot, marked 20.

The *Paſtern* is the diſtance between the ſaid Joint and the Coronet of the Hoof, marked 21.

The *Coronet* is that part round the very top of the Foot, where the Hair grows and falls down upon the Hoof, marked 22.

The *Foot* conſiſts of the *Hoof* or *Coffin*, which is all the Horn that appears when the Horſe has his Foot ſet to the Ground.

The *Quarters* are the two ſides of the Foot, from twenty three to twenty four. The Foot muſt be taken up, and then will appear.

The *Fruſh* or *Frog*, which is placed from the middle of the Sole towards the Heel upon both ſides, is a part more ſoft and more elevate than the reſt of the Sole, and terminates juſt at the Heel.

The *Sole* is at it were a Plate of Horn, which environing the Fleſh, covers the whole bottom of the Foot. All People know it, becauſe when a Shooe is right placed, it ſhould not at all reſt upon it, and but very ſeldom touch it.

The *Coffin-bone* is that Bone which is to the Foot as a Heart or Kernel. It is quite ſurrounded and covered by the Hoof, Fruſh, and Sole, and is not perceived when even the Horſe's Sole is quite taken out, being covered on all ſides by a Coat of Fleſh, which hinders the Bone from appearing.

It now remains to ſpeak of the *Hind-Legs*, in which are,

The *Stiffle* or great Muſcle, is that part of the Hind-Leg which advances towards the Horſe's Belly, and is a moſt dangerous Part to receive a Blow upon, marked 27.

The *Thigh* or *Gaskoin* beginneth at the *Stiffle*, and reaches to the *Ply*, or bending of the Ham; and is contained between the Figures 27. and 29.

The *Ham* or *Hough* is the Ply or bending of the Hind-Leg, marked 29. and comprehends likewiſe the Point behind and oppoſite to the Ply, called the *Hock*, marked 30.

The place where a *Selender* comes is marked 29.

The place where a *Spavin* comes, which is a little beneath the Ply; and in the inſide, is marked 31.

From the Ham to the Paſtern Joint, is that part of the Leg which in the Fore-Legs is called the *Shank*, but in the Hind the *Inſtep*, marked 33.

CHAP. II.

How the Parts of a Horſe ſhould be framed.

THE *Head* ſhould be ſmall, narrow, lean and dry. Every Horſe with a big Head may be apt to reſt and loll upon the Bridle, and thereby in a Journey incommode the Hand of the Rider. Beſides, he can never appear well with a big Head, unleſs he have alſo a very long and well-turned Neck.

Of

Of the Ears.

The *Ears* ſhould be little, narrow, ſtrait, and hardy, and the whole ſubſtance of them thin and delicate. They ſhould be placed on the very top of the Head, and their Points when ſtiled or prick'd, ſhould be nearer than their Roots. When a Horſe carries his Ears pointed forwards, he is ſaid to have a bold, hardy, or brisk Ear. Alſo when a Horſe travels, he ſhould keep them firm, and not (like a Hog) mark every ſtep by a motion of his Ears.

Of the Forehead.

The *Forehead* ſhould be ſomewhat broad: Some would have it a little raiſed; but in my opinion a flat Forehead is moſt beautiful. Thoſe Horſes called *Diſh-faced*, have the fore-part of their Head, from a little below their Eyes, to the place where the Noſe-band of the Bridle reſteth, low and hollow: Such Horſes are commonly durable, but very often ſtubborn and ill-natur'd.

A Horſe ſhould have in his Forehead, that which we call a *Feather*, which is a natural frizling or turning of the Hair. If he have two that are near or touch, the Mark is ſo much the better.

Some People fancy, that if the Feather be below the Eyes it is a ſign of a weak ſight. But Experience will diſcover the uncertainty of this Obſervation.

If a Horſe be neither White, Dapled, nor approaching thoſe Colours, he ſhould have a Star or Blaze in his Forehead: It being a defect not only for the Beauty, but oft-times for the Goodneſs of a Horſe of any dark colour, to be without one.

Of the Eye-pits.

The *Eye-pits* ſhould not be too much ſunk, for if they are deep and hollow they are ugly, and make

the Horſe appear to be old. Horſes that come of an old Stallion, have it from their very Youth, ſome more, ſome leſs.

Of the Eyes.

The *Eyes* which are bright, lively, full of fire, and pretty large and full, are moſt eſteemed: Thoſe which are very big are not the beſt, neither ſhould they be too gogling or ſtaring out of the Head, but equal with it, and have a large and full pupil or ground.

Moreover, the Eye ſhould be reſolute, impudent, and brisk: A Horſe to appear well ſhould look on his Object fixedly, and with a kind of diſdain, and not look another way. In the Eye is alſo diſcovered his Inclination, Paſſion, Malice, Health and Indiſpoſition. When the Eyes are ſunk, or that the Eye-brows are too elevate, and as it were ſwelled, it is a ſign of vitiouſneſs and ill-nature. Such kind of Horſes have a melancholy Countenance, but are commonly of great fatigue.

The Eye is the moſt tender and delicate part of the whole Body, being the laſt which is formed in the Womb, and the firſt that dyes.

Of the Jaw-bones.

The *Jaw-bones* ſhould be narrow and lean, the diſtance betwixt them at the Throat ſhould be large and hollow, that he may the better place his Head. If the Jaw-bone be too ſquare, that is, if there be too great a diſtance betwixt the Eye and that part of it which toucheth his Neck, it is not only ugly and unbecoming, but alſo hinders him from placing his Head. And if there be but little diſtance betwixt the Jaw-bones, then as ſoon as you pull the Bridle to bring his Head into its moſt becoming poſture, the Bone meeting with his Neck, will hinder him, eſpecially if he have alſo with that Imperfection, a ſhort and thick Neck.

Of

Of the Muzzle.

From that part where the Noſe-band of the Bridle reſteth, which is ſomewhat below the middle of the Jaw-bone, and where it begins to ſtraiten and become narrow: I ſay, from that part to his *Muzzle* he ſhould have nothing but Skin and Bone, and the ſmaller the better: Therefore People commonly ſay he ſhould be able to drink out of a Beer-Glaſs, by reaſon of the ſmallneſs of his Muzzle.

A Horſe's Head ſhould not be too long; but the chief thing is a good On-ſet, that he may be able to bring it into its natural ſituation, which is, that all the fore-part of the Head, from the very Brow to the Noſe, be perpendicular to the Ground, ſo that if there were a Plummet applied to it, it would but juſt ſhave or raze it.

Of the Noſtrils.

The *Noſtrils* ſhould be large and extended, ſo that the Red within them may be perceived, eſpecially when he Sneereth. The wideneſs of the Noſtril doth not a little contribute to eaſineſs of Breathing.

Of the Mouth.

The *Mouth* ſhould be indifferently well cloven; when it is too much, there is great difficulty ſo to bitt a Horſe as that he may not ſwallow it, as we ſay. And if he have a little Mouth, then with difficulty can the Mouth of the Bit be right lodged in it.

Of the Tongue.

The *Tongue* ſhould be ſmall, otherwiſe it will be difficult to keep the Bit frompreſſing it, which making the Tongue to extend over his Bars and cover them, will render his feeling of the preſſure of the Bitt dull, by hindring its operation and effect upon the Barrs.

Of the Barrs.

The *Barrs* ſhould be ſharp-ridged, and lean, for all the ſubjection which a Horſe ſuffers by the Bridle, proceeding from the Barrs, if they have not the above-mentioned Qualities, they will be very little, or not at all ſenſible, ſo that he can never have a good Mouth. For if they be flat, round, and unſenſible, the Bitt will not work its effect; and to take hold of ſuch a Horſe by his Tail, or by the Bridle, to govern him, will prove much about one.

Of the Channel.

The *Channel* or hollow betwixt the under Jaws, ſhould be large enough to contain his Tongue, that it be not preſſed with the mouth of the Bitt, which ſhould always have a little liberty in the middle of it.

Of the Palate.

His *Palate* ſhould be lean, for if it be fat, that is, if it be full and high, ſo that it be almoſt equal with the extremities of his upper Teeth, the leaſt height in the liberty of a Bitt will incommode him, and will make him either chack in the Bridle, and be always throwing up of his Head, or otherwiſe carry it too low, which, beſides the deformity, will much incommode the Hand of the Rider.

Of the Lips.

Thin and little *Lips* contribute to a good Mouth, but the contrary if they be large and thick.

Of the Beard.

The *Beard* ſhould be neither flat nor too high raiſed, that ſo the Curb may reſt in its right place. It ſhould have but little Fleſh upon it, and almoſt nothing but Skin and Bone, without any kind of chops, hardneſs, or ſwelling.

It is a good ſign in a Horſe to have his Mouth freſh and full of Froth, becauſe his Mouth being always moiſt, will not ſo eaſily over-heat, and is a token that the Bitt gives him pleaſure.

Of the Neck.

The *Neck* ſhould be lean, and but little Fleſh upon it; and to be well-ſhaped, it ſhould at its going from the Withers, riſe with a ſlope upwards, diminiſhing by degrees towards the Head: It ſhould have but little Fleſh upon it, near to the growing of the Mane In Mares it is a good quality to have their Necks a little groſs, and charged with Fleſh, becauſe their Necks are commonly too fine and ſlender.

Deer-Necks or Cock-thropled, are thoſe in which the Fleſh that ſhould be next the Mane, is placed quite below and next the Throat, which renders the Neck ugly and ill ſhaped.

A well-ſhaped Neck, beſides the Beauty it gives to a Horſe, contributes very much to the making him light or heavy on the Hand, according as it is fine or courſe. But it is not the ſhape of the Neck alone, which makes a Horſe light or heavy on the Hand, but good or bad Legs and Feet, and ſtrong or weak Reins; however, the Neck has a great ſhare in it.

Of the Mane.

The Hair of the *Mane* ſhould be long, thin, and fine, if it be frizled ſo much the better.

Of the Withers.

The *Withers* ſhould be well-raiſed, and pretty long, becauſe it is a ſign of ſtrength and goodneſs; and they keep the Saddle from coming forward upon his Shoulders and Neck, which immediately ſpoils and galls a Horſe, and when once hurt in that place

is

is very difficult to cure. They ſhould alſo be lean, and not too fleſhy, for then they will be much more ſubject to galling.

Of the Breaſt or Counter.

A large and full *Breaſt* or *Counter* is always eſteemed in light or ſmall ſized Horſes; but in *Dutch* Horſes they are commonly too large, which makes them heavy. In Horſes for draught, large and broad Counters do very well, for they draw with the more eaſe, and the Harneſs galls them leſs: But then it gives them the perfect quality of a Cart-Horſe, who the more he is tied to the Ground, and the bigger, the better he is.

Of the Shoulders.

The *Shoulders* ſhould be ſharp and narrow at the Withers, of a middle ſize, flat, and but little Fleſh upon them; becauſe a Horſe charged with Shoulders can never be agreeable to the Rider, for he will not only be heavy on the Hand and weary ſooner, but trip and Stumble every Minute, eſpecially if with ſuch large Shoulders he have a thick and big Neck. The Shoulders of a well-ſhaped Horſe are compared to thoſe of a Hare, and the diſtance between them ſhould be little more than half the breadth of his Hinder-Quarters.

But as ſome Saddle-Horſes are too large in the Shoulders, ſo others are too ſmall, that is, when their Breaſts are ſo narrow that their Fore-Thighs almoſt touch; ſuch Horſes are worth very little, becauſe they have a weak Fore-hand, and by croſſing their Legs are apt to Cut; and in Galloping carry their Legs ſo confuſedly, that they are ſubject to fall. Better too much Shoulders than this.

A Horſe of a middle ſize ſhould have about half a Foot or five Inches diſtance between his Fore-Thighs; and when he is ſtanding ſtrait upon his

Limbs

Limbs there ſhould be a leſs diſtance between his Feet, than between his Thighs near the Shoulders.

Of the Reins.

A Horſe ſhould have *double Reins*, which is when he hath them a little more elevate upon each ſide of the Back-bone, than upon it. The Back ſhould be ſtrait and not hollow or Saddle-backed. Becauſe ſuch Horſes, tho' they are commonly light, and have their Necks raiſed and high, yet they have ſeldom much ſtrength; and 'tis alſo difficult ſo to fit a Saddle to them, that it do not gall them. They have alſo commonly exceſſive big Bellies, which renders them uncomely.

The *Ribs* ſhould be circular and full, taking their compaſs from the very Back-bone.

Of the Belly.

The *Belly* to be of an ordinary bigneſs, but in Coach-Horſes the larger the better, provided it be round and well incloſed within the Ribs, and rather extending upon the ſides than downwards.

Of the Flanks.

The *Flanks* ſhould be full, and at the top of them on each ſide ſhould be a Feather, and the nearer thoſe Feathers are to each other, ſo much the better, but if they be as it were within view, then the Mark is excellent.

The diſtance between the laſt Rib and Haunch-bone, which is properly the Flank, ſhould be ſhort, which we term well-coupled. Such Horſes will endure labour longeſt.

Of the Croup.

The *Croup* ſhould be large and round, ſo that the tops of the two Haunch-bones be not within view of other. The greater diſtance between thoſe two

Bones

Bones the better: But it is an Imperfection if they be too high, call'd *Horn-hipped*, though that Blemiſh will in a great meaſure diſappear, if you can make him fat and luſty. The Croup ſhould have its compaſs from the Haunch-bones to the very Dock or Onſet of the Tail, and ſhould be divided in two by a Hollow or Channel all along to the very Dock.

Of the Tail.

The *Tail* ſhould be firm ſtrong, immoveable, and well furniſh'd with Hair. The *Dock* ſhould be big, ſtiff, and placed pretty high: Thoſe that have it too low ſet, have ſeldom good Reins. Though ſome have it too high ſet, which makes their Buttocks appear pointed and unbecoming.

In the *Forelegs* are the *Arm* or *Fore-thigh* and the *Shank*; both which the larger, broader, and more nervous they are, the better. The *Knee* ſhould be flat and large without any roundneſs or ſwelling.

The *Back-ſinew* being the moſt conſiderable part in a Horſe's Leg, ſhould be big: And becauſe thoſe Legs are moſt eſteemed which are broadeſt and flateſt, the greater the diſtance between the Back-ſinew and the Shank-bone, the better.

Of the Paſtern.

The *Paſtern* ſhould be ſhort, eſpecially in middle-ſiz'd Horſes, becauſe long Paſterns are weak and cannot ſo well endure Travel. Some have them ſo long, that their Paſtern-joints almoſt touch the Ground, which is a ſign of great Weakneſs in that Part, if it be not alſo univerſal.

Of the Coronet.

The *Coronet* ſhould be no more elevate than the Hoof; for if it makes a Ridge or Height round it, it is a ſign, that either the Foot is dried up, or that there

there are a great many Humours in the Coronet, which may occaſion the *Crown-Scab* and other *Sores* to which that part is ſubject.

Of the Hoof.

The Horn of the *Hoof* ſhould be of a dark Colour, ſomewhat ſhining, high and ſmooth: The White is commonly Brittle. To be excellent, it ſhould be of the Colour of a Deer's Hoof, and the whole Foot of a round Figure, but a little larger below than above.

The *Heel* ſhould be high and large, and one ſide of it ſhould not riſe higher upon the Paſtern than the other.

The *Fruſh*, although little, ſhould yet be well nouriſhed. In Hoof-bound Horſes it is too little, for it is almoſt quite dried up. And as it is a Fault to have it little, ſo it is one to have it too large and fat, as it were, eſpecially in Horſes that have low Heels, or are flat-footed.

Of the Sole.

The *Soles* ſhould be thick and ſtrong, and the whole lower-part of the Foot where the Shooe is placed, hollow.

Having conſider'd the Fore-Legs, let us go to thoſe behind.

The *Thighs* ſhould be well furniſh'd and fleſhy: For although the Croup be well turned, yet if the Thighs be ſlender and lean he will appear narrow behind; which is call'd, *Cat-thigh'd*.

The *Houghs* or *Hams* ſhould be large, full, and not much bended; dry, diſcharged of Fleſh, nervous, and ſupple.

Of the Inſtep.

The Bone of the Hind-Leg from the Ham to the Paſtern-joint, call'd the *Inſtep*, ſhould be big and flat,

flat, and in a perpendicular Line to the Ground, when the Horſe is in his natural Poſture of ſtanding. When the *Inſteps* ſtand not perpendicularly it is a certain ſign of weakneſs either in the Reins, or Hinder-quarters.

A *Horſe* who hath good Feet before, hath ſeldom bad behind, except by Accident. Therefore People look to the Hind-Feet but ſlightly.

There remains one viſible Imperfection to be conſider'd; that is, when the Legs are too long in proportion to their Bodies, or the having too much Daylight under their Bellies. It is beſt judged by the Eye: But to ſatisfie the Curious, take a Thread and meaſure from the Withers to the Elbow; and whatever length that is, he ſhould have the ſame diſtance between the Elbow and lower-part of his Heel. Therefore many People meaſure their Colts at a Year old, and take the diſtance from the lower-part of the Heel to the Elbow, and ſay, their Bodies will always grow until there be the ſame diſtance between their Elbow and Withers as there was betwixt the Elbow and Heel: Becauſe, ſay they, at a Year old a Colt hath his Legs as long as ever: Which I have indeed obſerved in ſome, but not in all: And the Duke of *Newcaſtle* in his Book condemns this Obſervation.

CHAP. III.

How to know a Horſe's Age while he hath Mark.

WHen a Horſe is two Years old and a half, he hath twelve Foal-teeth in the fore-part of his Mouth; and about that time, or ſoon after, four of them do fall, *viz.* two above and two below, in the very middle. (In ſome Horſes they do not fall till three

three Years, the Obſervation not being ſo exact as always to anſwer to Years and a half.) There grows in their place four others, called *Nippers* or *Gatherers*, much ſtronger and larger than the Fool-teeth, and then he is at moſt but three Years old, and commonly but two and a half.

At three and a half, and ſometimes at four, he caſts the next four Foal-teeth, *viz.* two above and two below, and in their room come four Teeth call'd *Separaters*.

There remains then but four Foal-teeth in the Corners, which he changes commonly at four Years and a half. It will be neceſſary to keep in memory two and a half, three and a half, and four and a half; that is to ſay, when a Horſe has caſt two Teeth above and as many below, he is but two Years and a half: When he hath caſt four Teeth above and as many below, he is three Years and a half; and when he has caſt ſix above, and as many below, which is to have them all changed, then he is four Years and a half old.

It is to be obſerved, that the Corner-teeth in the Upper-gums are caſt before thoſe in the Nether: But on the contrary the Under-tuſhes grow out before the Upper. And Horſes are often ſick when the Tuſhes of the Upper-gums cut, but are never ſo when theſe below come forth.

The Tuſhes are preceded by no Foal-teeth, but grow up when a Horſe is about three Years and a half, and commonly grow up before the Corner-teeth are caſt.

So ſoon as the *Gatherers* and *Separaters* have pierc'd and cut the Gums, they make all their growth in fifteen Days: But the Corner-teeth do not grow ſo ſuddenly. Yet that doth not hinder but that at their very firſt appearing they are as thick and broad as the other, but are no higher than the thickneſs of a Crown-piece, and very ſharp and hollow.

When

When a Horſe hath no more Foal-teeth, and that his Corner-teeth begin to appear, he is then in his fifth Year; that is, he hath about four Years and a half, and is going in his fifth. When he firſt puts out his Corner-teeth, they are of equal height with the Gums on the outſide, and the inſide of them is filled with Fleſh until he be near five; and when he comes to be five Years old, that Fleſh diſappears, and there will remain in the place of it a hollow; that is, they are not ſo high on the inſide as the out, which they will come to be about a Year after their firſt appearing. So that when a Horſes Corner-teeth are filled with Fleſh, you may confidently affirm that he is not five.

From five to five and a half, the Corner teeth remain hollow on the inſide, and that part which was filled with Fleſh is empty.

From five and a half till ſix, the hollow on the inſide fills up, and the Teeth grow and become flat and equal at top, only a little Cavity remains in the middle, reſembling the Eye of a dry Bean, and then they ſay the Horſe is entring ſix. And ſo long as a Horſe's Corner-teeth are not ſo high on the inſide as the out, he is ſtill ſaid to be but five, although he be five and a half, and ſometimes ſix.

You may alſo do well to remember, that at four Years and a half, when the Corner-teeth appear, and are filled on the inſide with Fleſh, that the outſide of them will then be about the thickneſs of a Crown above the Gums, and will ſo continue till five. And from thence to five and a half the outward Edge will be about the thickneſs of two Crowns above the Gums. At ſix they will be about the breadth of ones little Finger above the Gums, and his Tuſhes will be at their full length. At ſeven Years they will be about the thickneſs of the ſecond or Ring-finger above the Gums, and the hollow almoſt quite worn out and gone.

At

At eight Years old the Horſe will be razed; that is, none of his Teeth will be hollow, but flat quite over, and about the thickneſs of the Middle-finger above the Gums.

It is quite contrary in Horſes to what it is with Men. Young People labour and endure Fatigue incomparably better than Old: Whereas Horſes will toil better when they are old than young. Men, when young, eat and ſleep better than when they are aged; but Horſes on the contrary eat a great deal more when a little aged, and alſo reſt better.

CHAP. IV.

How to know the Age of a Horſe which is paſt Mark, Shell-tooth'd, or hollow-tooth'd, or whoſe Mark is counterfeited.

AFter a Horſe has razed, a Man cannot judge of his Age, but by the length of his Fore-teeth, or by his Tuſhes.

As the Gums through time grow lean, ſo they make the Teeth to appear long; and it is certain, that ſo much the longer a Horſe's Teeth are, he is ſo much the older. And as he grows old, his Teeth will contract Ruſt and become Yellow. Not but that there are ſome old Horſes who have very ſhort and White Teeth; and People ſay of ſuch Horſes, That they have a good Mouth conſidering their Age. Some alſo will have a Black Speck in their Teeth, reſembling the true Mark, a long time after they are paſt eight or nine; but then it is not hollow.

The Tuſhes are the moſt certain Mark whereby to know a Horſe's Age.

If a Horſe be but ſix, the Upper-tuſhes will be a little channell'd, or ſomewhot hollow'd and groov'd upon the inſides: And when he is above ſix, they fill up, and become a little round in the inſides. This Obſervation never or rarely fails.

If you feel the Tuſhes of his Upper-jaw with your Finger, and find them to be worn equal with the Palat, the Horſe is then at leaſt ten Years old. This Obſervation ſeldom fails, unleſs the Horſe when young hath carried a bigger mouth'd Bitt than was proper for him.

Young Horſes have always their Under-tuſhes ſharp and pointed, pretty long, ſomewhat edged upon both ſides, and without any Ruſt upon them: But as they become aged their Tuſhes grow big and blunt, round, and ſcaly, and in very old Horſes, they are extremely thick, round, and yellow.

A Horſe is ſaid to be Shell-tooth'd when he has long Teeth, and yet black Specks in them; and this Mark laſts all their life. It is eaſily known, becauſe the Mark appears in the other Fore-teeth as well as in the Corner teeth.

In Age the Points of the *Gatherers* ſtand outward a little; and when extremely old, point almoſt ſtrait forward: But when he is young they ſtand almoſt ſtrait up, and are juſt equal with the outer Edges of thoſe above. Sometimes the Upper-teeth do thus point forward, but for the moſt part it is the Under that do it.

If you require no exactneſs, but only to know if he be young or old, lift up the Upper-lip; and if his Upper-teeth be long, yellow, and overpaſſing thoſe below, it betokens Age. As the contrary Signs, ſuch as ſhort and white Teeth, and thoſe of the Upper-Jaw not overpaſſing thoſe below, betoken Youth.

There are ſome Horſes whoſe Teeth continue always white and ſhort, as if they were but ſix. When ſuch Horſes fall into the Hands of Cheats, they oftentimes

tentimes counter-mark them, by hollowing the Corner-teeth with an Ingraving-Iron, and putting ſome double Ink immediately into the Hole, and there let it dry, which will remain as long as the Teeth continue hollow. Others with a red-hot Iron burn a Grain of Rye in the Hollows of the Teeth, which makes them perfectly black; for there proceeds from the Rye a kind of Oil, which by the help of the burning cleaves faſt to the Hollows of the Teeth newly cut. To prevent being cheated by ſuch Villains, obſerve if there be any Scratches on the outſides of the Hollows of the Teeth (becauſe the Graver ſometimes ſlips and ſcratches the other parts of the Teeth) for then you may conclude him countermark'd; and an artificial Hollow is much blacker than a natural. Take notice alſo of his Upper-Tuſhes; the inſides of which ſhould be groov'd or hollow until the Horſe be ſeven Years old. Obſerve alſo if he have any ſigns of old Age, ſuch as the Upper-teeth long, overpaſſing thoſe below, and yellow; the lower-part of the nether Jaw-bone ſharp and edged; the Under-Tuſhes uſed, big, and ſcaly; if he have theſe Tokens of Age, and yet appears marked, it is very probable that he is countermark'd.

I have heard of filing a Horſe's Teeth to make 'em ſhort; but I believe no Man ever made twice tryal of it in his Life-time. For if you file the Under-teeth, which are thoſe at which People look to know the Age, then thoſe above will be obſerved to be longer than thoſe which have been ſhortned: And if the Teeth both above and below be ſhortned, then the Jaw-teeth or Grinders being at their full length will joyn, and ſo hinder the Upper and Lower-teeth, which were ſhortned, from cloſing, which will plainly diſcover the Cheat: For the Horſes Mouth being ſhut, the Fore-teeth will be at a great diſtance from each other. Beſides the Horſe would not in a

long time be in a condition to chew his Meat, by reaſon of the ſtreſs endured by the filing; neither could he draw his Hay or Straw from the Rack, becauſe of the diſtance between his Lower and Upper-teeth.

Having now explained how a Horſe's Age may be known by his Teeth, I ſhall next give you ſome other Rules, tho' not ſo certain as the former.

Some have recourſe to the Joints of the Tail, paſſing their Hand along it, to feel for a Knot or Joint in the upper-part of it, which cometh forth when he is between ten and twelve; a ſecond when he is fourteen. Others thruſt back a Horſe's Under-lip; and ſo many Plyes or Folds as they find, ſo many Years old they ſay he is. They who are ſatisfied with theſe Marks may make uſe of them; for my part I eſteem them very little. After the Mark is gone, I always have recourſe to his Legs, to know if they be neat and good; to his Flank, if it be well truſs'd, and not too full and ſwallow'd up; to his Feet; and laſtly, to his Appetite. However, I ſhall give you ſome other Obſervations to know the Age of a Horſe that is paſt Mark.

When the Pitts above the Eyes are extremely hollow, it is for the moſt part a certain Token of old Age; although Horſes got by an old Stallion have them very deep at four or five Years old, as alſo their Eye-lids and Eyes wrinkled and hollow.

In young Horſes that part of the nether Jaw-bone, which is three or four Fingers breadth above the Beard is always round, but in old Horſes ſharp and edged: So that a Man who is accuſtom'd to it, will, before he open a Horſe's Mouth, judge pretty near of his Age. This is a good Remark.

Some will pull the Skin of the nether Jaw-bone or Shoulder a little to them, and if the Skin continue long without returning to its place, it is a ſign, ſay they, the Horſe is not young; and the longer it is

in

in returning, the older he is. A Man ſhould not truſt much to this Obſervation, becauſe the Skin of a lean Horſe, altho' young, will be longer in returning to its place, than the Skin of an old Horſe that is fat and plump.

Another certain mark of Old Age is when a Horſe *Seeleth*, that is, when upon his Eye-brows there groweth about the breadth of a Farthing of white Hairs, mixed with thoſe of his natural colour. A Horſe never ſeeleth until he be fourteen Years old, and always before he be fifteen or ſixteen at fartheſt. The light Sorrel and Black do ſooner ſeel than any other Colours.

Horſe-Courſers commonly pull out thoſe white Hairs with Pincers: but if they be ſo many that it cannot be done without making the Horſe look bald and ugly, then they colour their Eye-brows, that they may not appear old.

You may judge of his Age alſo by looking on his Palat, becauſe as he grows old the roof of his Mouth grows leaner and drier towards the middle: And thoſe ridges which in young Horſes are pretty high and plump, diminiſh as they increaſe in Age: ſo that in very old Horſes the roof of the Mouth is nothing but Skin and Bone. This remark is good, eſpecially in Mares, who have ſeldom any Tuſhes whereby to know their Age.

Grey Horſes become white, as they grow old, and when very aged, are white all over; but this doth not conclude, that no Horſes are foaled white; altho' but very rarely. But thoſe which are foaled grey are known by their Knees and Hams, which continue, for the moſt part, ſtill of that colour.

CHAP. V.

Of the Eyes.

IT is difficult to perceive Eyes in the Sun-ſhine, becauſe in the Sun all Eyes appear to be better than really they are: Therefore take the Horſe to a ſhade, and place your Hand above his Eye, to keep away the too great light, and do not look ſtrait upon them, but a little a ſquint or ſlope-ways, and then you will perceive them to the very ground or bottom.

If you would judge truly of a Horſe's Eye, you ſhould firſt view them at Night in the Stable, by the light of a ſmall Candle, placing the Eye between you and the Candle. But yet I would not adviſe you to buy a Horſe barely upon this Obſervation, leſt it deceive you. I only mention it as a help, that you may diſtinguiſh them with the more eaſe in the day time.

In the Eye are two things to be conſider'd, *viz.*

1. The Chryſtal.
2. The Bottom or ground of the Eye.

The Chryſtal is that roundneſs of the Eye, which appears at firſt view, being the moſt tranſparent part of it, and ſhould for the clearneſs, reſemble a piece of Rock-Chryſtal, ſo that one may ſee clearly thro' it, becauſe if it be obſcure and troubled, ſo that you cannot ſee thro' it, it is a ſign the Eye is not good. The Eye ſhould alſo have no white Circle about it, yet there are Horſes that have this Circle, and have alſo very good Eyes, but it were rather to be wiſhed they wanted it.

A reddiſh Chryſtal is a ſign that the Eye is either inflamed, or that it is influenced by the Moon. A Chryſtal that is *Feuille-mort*, or of the colour of a dead

dead Leaf upon the lower part, and troubled upon the upper, is an infallible Mark that the Horſe is Lunatick, but it continues no longer than while the Humour doth actually poſſeſs the Eye. Now you may know when that is, by the Eye being ſwelled, and emitting a great deal of hot Water or Humour. This mark of the Eye being of that colour and reddiſh, as if the Eye were full of bloody Water, is one of the moſt certain whereby to know when a Horſe is Lunatick; but obſerve, it is only ſo when the defluxion hath fallen down, and then he ſeeth not with that Eye. Now to know a Lunatick Eye when the defluxion is not actually upon it, conſider that if only one of the Eyes be ſubject to it, then it will appear leſs than the other, the Chryſtal of it will be alſo troubled, and the bottom or ground of the Eye black and browniſh. But the Moon in the Eyes is better known by a troubled Chryſtal than any other Mark whatſoever. Moon blind Eyes are commonly worſt in the Wane; ſometimes in the Full, and are never to be blooded but in great neceſſity, and then in the Flank.

The ſecond part of the Eye to be conſider'd is the Ground or Bottom, which is properly the Pupil or Apple of the Eye, and ſhould be large and full. It muſt be clearly perceived, that you may certainly know if there be any *Dragon*, which is a white Spot in the bottom of the Eye, which makes a Horſe blind in that Eye, or will do it in a ſhort time. In the beginning it appears no bigger than a grain of Millet, but groweth to ſuch a bigneſs as to cover the whole Apple of the Eye, and is alſo incurable.

If the whole Bottom or Apple of the Eye be white, or of a tranſparent greeniſh white, it is a bad Sign, tho' perhaps he is not quite blind with it, but as yet ſees a little. But you muſt take notice, that if you look to a Horſe's Eyes when oppoſite to a white Wall, the reflexion of it will make the Apples of

them appear whitiſh, and a little inclining to green, altho' they be indeed good: When you perceive this, you may try if his Eyes have the ſame appearance in another place.

If you can perceive above the Bottom or Apple of the Eye, as it were two grains of Chimny-ſoot fix'd to it, it is a ſign the Chryſtal is clear and tranſparent; and if to this, the Bottom of the Eye be without Spot or Whiteneſs, then the Eye will be good.

You are alſo to conſider, if an Eye which is troubled and very brown, be leſs than the other; for if it be, it is loſt without recovery; and it is alſo a great hazard that he will loſe the other Eye alſo. But you muſt remember that by ſome accident an Eye may appear to be leſs than the other, and yet no danger of loſing his ſight, neither will it be troubled or of a browniſh colour; as when an Eye-lid is heal'd up after a Wound, it may be a little ſtraiter than before, which will cauſe the body of the Eye to ſeem leſs than the other, altho' it be really not ſo, which oft-times happens.

Beware of thoſe little Eyes which are ſunk into the Head, and are very black, and try if you can perfectly ſee through the Chryſtal: Then look to the bottom of the Eye, and ſee that the Pupil be big and large. In all Eyes the ſmall, narrow, and long Pupils run a greater risk of loſing the Sight than any other.

There are more general Obſervations for knowing Eyes: for Example; The Walk or Step of a blind Horſe is always uncertain and unequal, not daring to ſet down his Feet boldly when he is led in ones hand: But if the ſame Horſe be mounted by a vigorous Horſeman, and the Horſe of himſelf be metled, then the fear of the Spurs will make him ride reſolutely and freely, ſo that his blindneſs ſhall hardly be perceived.

Another Mark whereby a Horſe that is abſolutely blind may be known, is that when he hears any enter into the Stable, he will prick up his Ears and move them backwards and forwards: the reaſon is, becauſe a vigorous Horſe having loſt his ſight, miſtruſts every thing, and is continually in alarm by the leaſt noiſe he hears.

The Colours moſt ſubject to bad Eyes are the very dark grey, the flea-bitten, the white ſpotted, and colour of a Peach-bloſſom, and alſo the Roan oft-times.

When Horſes have either the true or falſe Strangle, or are changing the Foal-Teeth, or are putting out their upper Tuſhes, ſome of them have their ſight weak and troubled, ſo that a Man would judge them blind, and ſometimes they do really become ſo. This weakneſs of ſight happens oftner in time of caſting the Corner-Teeth than any of the reſt.

Some People will paſs their Hand or Finger before a Horſe's Eyes, or puſh their Finger almoſt into his Eye, and if he move his Eye-lids, or wink and ſhut them, then they eſteem them good, but if he keep them ſtill open, then they ſay he is blind. Others, if they can ſee their own Faces in a Horſe's Eye, as in a Looking-glaſs, conclude that the Eye is good; but they are all mightily miſtaken: And as to the laſt Remark, a bad and troubled Eye will repreſent the Face better than a good one.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

A Continuation of the Knowledge of Faults and Imperfections in Horſes, and what is to be obſerved when buying them.

AFter you have conſider'd the Age and Eyes, put your Hand between the two Jaw-bones near to the Horſe's Throat, to feel if there be a good diſtance between them, that ſo he may with the more eaſe bring in and place his Head: for that diſtance between the Jaw-bones being pretty large and hollow, and tapering by degrees from the Throat to the Chin, will contribute much to the goodneſs of the Mouth.

Next you are to obſerve if there be any Swelling, Hardneſs, or moving Kernel between theſe two Bones, which if the Horſe be young, is a ſign that he hath not yet caſt his *Gourme* or *Strangle*, or at leaſt that he hath caſt it but imperfectly. But if he be more aged, altho' he have a pretty number of them (providing they be no bigger than large Peaſe) they are of no great conſequence, becauſe Exerciſe and Sweating will diſcuſs them in a ſhort time. However, if the Horſe be paſt ſix Years old, they are a little more to be feared, altho' they ſhould not hinder you from buying the Horſe, if he otherwiſe pleaſe you. Such moving Kernels may proceed from a Rheum or Cold, or from a remainder of the Gourme or Strangle, which may have left theſe Swellings in that part, by which Nature diſcharg'd her-ſelf of her Impurities, and through which theſe bad Humours did evacuate themſelves, by the negligence and careleſneſs of thoſe Perſons who having the charge of ſuch Horſes did not attempt to reſolve and diſcuſs theſe Hardneſſes and Swellings.

If

If there be a fixed Kernel, painful and faſtned to the Jaw-bones, it is almoſt always a ſign of the *Glanders*, eſpecially the Horſe being paſt ſeven Years of Age; but if he be not as yet ſix, then it may be only the Strangle, eſpecially if he have a Cough with it; for commonly a Cough is only an effect of the Strangle. However, if there be the leaſt appearance of the Glanders, I would not adviſe you to meddle with him, becauſe it is a Diſeaſe which is very rarely cured, whatever great Secrets ſo many printed Books do promiſe for it. A Rheum or Cold may be alſo the cauſes of a Kernel fix'd to the Jaw-bone, after the ſame manner as thoſe which proceed from the Glanders, but then it may be diſcuſs'd by a due application; yet if neglected, it for the moſt part turns to a Glander.

Some Horſes have big and fixed Hardneſſes, which are faſten'd commonly on the inſide of one of the Jaw-bones, and are no token at all of the Glanders: Theſe are Excreſcences or Figs, which are of no conſequence, and are removed firſt with the Inciſion-knife, and then the roots of them are eaten away with Powders; but the neateſt Method of taking them away, is by tying them hard about the Roots in the decreaſe of the Moon, with a thread of crimſon Silk, and then anointing them every day with the Juice of Purſlain. Theſe Figs are not dangerous, nor any ſign at all of the Horſe's having the Glanders.

When you perceive a Horſe to have any kind of Kernels between his Jaw-bones, whether fixed or looſe, you muſt with your Hand ſtop his Noſtrils, to ſee if being a pretty while without breathing through them, he will force himſelf to ſnear when you let him go, which if he do, you muſt obſerve if the Noſtrils run, and if he throw out of them a Matter ſomewhat reſembling the glair or Whites of Eggs, which if it be but in a ſmall quantity

tity is not to be regarded; but if it be in great abundance, and of an Impoſthumous conſiſtence, then is it to be feared, eſpecially if it be viſcous, and cleaveth to the inſide of his Noſtrils, into which you are alſo to look, if the ſharpneſs of the Humour hath as yet occaſioned any Ulcer, which is a certain token of its great malignity, not only becauſe it may be juſtly ſuſpected to be the Glanders, but it is alſo dangerous for the infecting other Horſes. And if the Horſe have attained to eight Years, you are not to venture upon him, even altho' that groſs and viſcous Humour ſhould have only proceeded from a Rheum. As alſo if you perceive a fixed Kernel, which the Horſe cannot ſuffer you to handle, becauſe of the great pain he endures by it, or that he caſts only at one Noſtril; or likewiſe if the Kernel be very hard, though not painful; or if he do not Cough with it, altho' he be under ſix Years old. I think in all theſe caſes you may conclude with a great deal of reaſon that it is the Glanders.

CHAP. VII.

How to know when a Horſes Legs are good.

HAving before treated of the *Shoulders* in the ſecond Chapter, I ſhall next conſider the *Legs*, which are the Pillars by which this Edifice is ſupported.

The Fore-Legs are ſubject to many Infirmities, they are the Parts which ſuffer moſt, and are alſo commonly the ſmalleſt and weakeſt.

The firſt mark I ſhall give you of bad Legs, that is, which are uſed and ſpoiled, is, if they appear altogether ſtrait, or as they were all of one Piece. A Horſe is ſaid to be ſtrait upon his Members, when from the Knee to the fore-part of the Coronet, the Knees,

Knees, Shank, and Coronet descend in a strait or Plum-line, and that the Pastern-joint appears more, or at least as much advanced as the rest of the Leg. Such Legs are like those of a Goat, and make a Horse apt to stumble and fall; and in time, the Pastern is thrust quite forwards out of its place, and the Horse becomes Lame.

That a Leg may be said to be right planted or situate, the Pastern should be placed about two Fingers breadth more backwards than the Coronet, that is, if you stretch a Thread or Line between the top of the Knee and the fore-part of the Coronet of the Hoof, the fore-part of the Pastern should be distant from that Thread about the breadth of two Fingers, more or less according to the size of the Horse; whereas in a Horse that is strait upon his Members, the fore-part of his Pastern will be as far advanced as the Thread or Line.

Horses which are strait upon their Members are quite contrary to those that are long-jointed, that is, whose Pasterns are so long and flexible, that the Horse in walking almost touches the Ground with them. This is a greater Imperfection than the former, for to them there may be some remedy used, but for this there can be none. Besides, it is a token of little or no strength, and such Horses are not fit for any kind of toil or fatigue.

Some Horses, altho' they be long-jointed, yet do not bend their Pasterns in walking, and may prove serviceable. There are *English* Horses of strong Reins, who altho' their Pastern-joints are somewhat long, yet if they are not too flexible, such Horses will gallop and run with a great deal more ease to his Rider, than if he were very short jointed: And these are the only Horses for Persons of Quality who have wherewithal to seek after their ease and agreeableness in a Horse. Such Horses may be compared to Coaches with Springs, which render them

them infinitely more eaſie than thoſe without them.

This Imperfection of bending too much the Paſtern-joint, ſhould be as carefully taken notice of in the Hind-Legs as in the Fore: And there are alſo ſome Horſes which bend too much only in the Hind-Paſterns, and not in thoſe before, which is a token that they have a very weak Hind-Quarter, and is a great Imperfection, whatever kind of Service they may be deſigned for: And if they have Wind-galls, they are more dangerous behind than if they were before. Neither will they be proper for the Coach, becauſe they will not endure pulling back, or ſtaying the Coach upon any deſcent.

Obſerve therefore narrowly, that the Paſtern-joints be neither too ſtiff nor too ſmall, nor upon the contrary too plying and flexible. For the knowledge of all I have ſaid concerning a Horſe being ſtrait upon his Members, depends abſolutely upon the exact obſervation of the Paſtern-Joints.

Thoſe Horſes which are ſhort-legg'd, or ſhort-jointed, are ſubject to become ſtrait upon their Members, eſpecially, if, in Shooing, their Heels are left too high. Care therefore muſt be taken to keep the Heels of ſuch Horſes very low, by frequent paring them.

Paſtern Crowned.

The Paſtern-joint is alſo ſometimes *Crowned*, as we ſay, that is, when without being galled or hurt, there is a Swelling goes round it beneath the Skin, in form of a Circle, and about half the breadth of ones Finger It proceeds from a Humour gathered there through much Travel, and ſhews that the Horſe's Legs have been too much uſed.

I ſhall only add, that Horſes which have thick, ſtiff, and ſhort Joints, that is no ways plying or flexible, are unfit for the Manager: for glib and flexible Joints, if they be not too long, are one of the

the chief qualities required in a fine and delicate Horſe of Manage.

Legs Arched.

The next Imperfection of the Legs is, when they are *Arched*, which is, when the Horſe being in his natural ſituation hath his Knees bent forward, and his whole Leg frameth a kind of Arch or Bow. It proceedeth from exceſſive Labour, which hath cauſed the Nerves or Back-ſinews to ſhrink up, ſo that the Legs remain arched, and tremble beneath them when they are made to ſtop, after they have been rid a little. Such Horſes are not abſolutely uſeleſs, becauſe they may work notwithſtanding of it. *Spaniſh* Horſes are for the moſt part arched in their Legs, as they are brought old from *Spain*, becauſe they always Fetter them in the Stable. So likewiſe in *Barbary*, they never make uſe of a Halter about the Head or Neck, in the Stable or at Graſs, but Shackle their Legs, and faſten them to Stakes placed in the Ground.

Some Horſes are foaled with arched Legs, and are not much the worſe for Service. But I would not buy a Horſe with this Imperfection but at an eaſie rate, and unleſs I were ſure that his Legs were ſo naturally, and not occaſioned by Labour or Fatigue.

Having obſerved the three preceding Imperfections; *viz.* whether a Horſe be ſtrait upon his Members, long-jointed, or have arched Legs, you muſt next paſs your Hand along along the Back-ſinew of the Fore-leg, from the very bending of the Knee to the Paſtern-joint, and you ſhall obſerve if the Sinew be large, firm, and at a good diſtance from the Shank-bone (the broadeſt and flatteſt Legs being beſt) and that there be no hardneſs to ſtop your Hand, nor no moveable Jelly to ſlip between your Fingers. There are ſome Horſes, who although they have the Back-ſinew of their Fore-legs ſomewhat ſe-

parate

parate from the Bone, yet their Sinews are ſo ſmall and ſo little detached, that with ſmall labour their Legs will become round, and are called *Ox Legs*.

You are next to obſerve if the Back-ſinew doth not quite fail, as it were, juſt beneath the Ply or Bending of the Knee. For although it ſhould not be ſo big there as in the middle of the Shank; yet in ſome Horſes it diminiſhes ſo extraordinarily, that in that place it is no bigger than ones Thumb, or is ſo fixed to the Bone that it but very little appears. This much weakens the ſtrength of a Leg, though few People take notice of it; and ſuch Horſes are for the moſt part ſubject to ſtumble, or at leaſt to trip and ſtrike with their Toes againſt the Stones.

Wind-Galls.

Upon the ſides of the Paſtern-joints, there come ſmall Swellings full of Water, called *Wind-Galls*, eaſily perceived by the Eye, which ſhew that his Legs have been too much uſed, but are not prejudicial unleſs they be hard and painful, which will in a ſhort time lame the Horſe. Small Wind-galls do often come to Horſes upon a Journey, and go away again with a little Reſt.

Splint.

Turning your Hand, feel along the fore-part of the Shank-bone, from the Knee downward, to find if there be any *Splint*; which is a callous Excreſcence or kind of Griſtle, adhering to the Shank-bone, and cometh commonly upon the inſide: But if there be one oppoſite to it on the outſide, then it is call'd a *pegg'd* or *pinn'd Splint*, becauſe it does as it were pierce the Shank-bone, and is very dangerous.

Thoſe ſimple Splints which are only faſtned to the Bone at a pretty diſtance from the Knee, and without touching the Back-ſinew, are not very dangerous: But thoſe that touch the Back-ſinew, makes the Horſe in a ſhort time to halt.

Every

Every Saddle-horſe which hath a Splint ſhould be leſs valu'd than if he wanted it; and ſo proportionably if he have two. In Coach-horſes the Imperfection is not ſo conſiderable. Some deny that a Splint mounts upwards, but that it only dilates and extends it ſelf to the very Knee. But what way ſoever it cometh thither, it is certain that a Splint joining to the Knee always lames the Horſe.

Horſes have in the ſame place where the Splints come, that which we call *Fuzies*, which are two Splints joined by the ends, one above the other, and are more dangerous than a ſimple Splint; and therefore I would never buy a Horſe which had them.

Oſſelets.

There are ſome Horſes which have little Bones or hard Excreſcencies in the Knees, call'd in French *Oſſelets*; which is an Imperfection not very common, and the harder to be diſcover'd, becauſe they appear to be of the ſame Subſtance with the reſt of the Knee. It is a kind of large Splint juſt upon the Knee, which deſcends about the breadth of two Fingers lower on the inſide of the Shank-bone than on the outſide. Some Horſes have two of them, one upon each Fore-leg. If a Horſe have any of theſe Imperfections (excepting the ſimple *Splint*,) *viz.* the *pegg'd Splint*, the *Splint* joyning to the Knee, or Back-ſinew, the *Fuzie*, and the *Oſſelet*, he is worth little or nothing.

Mallender.

There cometh in the bending of the Knee a Crevice or Chop, called a *Mallender*: It is ſometimes ſo painful as to make a Horſe halt. Every Horſe with a *Mallender* ſhould be the leſs eſteemed for it; for as he grows old, the pain will increaſe ſo as to make him halt at firſt going out of the Stable.

Form.

Below the Paſtern-joint, and in the very Paſtern, you muſt feel if there be not that which is called in

French a *Forme*, which is a Swelling in the very Subſtance of the Paſtern, and not in the Skin. They come as well in the Hind-legs as in the Fore; and although it be an Imperfection not very common, 'tis dangerous, and no other Remedy but firing and taking out the Sole; and the Fire alſo cannot be applied to that place without great difficulty and danger. There are ſome Swellings and Hardneſſes which are only fix'd upon the Skin, and are not what we call *Formes*, but are either a Button of the Farcy, or ſome other kind of Swelling not very material, being not all fix'd to the Subſtance of the Paſtern.

Crown-Scab.

The *Crown-Scab* is a kind of itching Scurf upon the Coronet of the Hoof. It is of two kinds, a Moiſt and a Dry. They make the Hair to ſtare, and the Coronet to ſwell. It is as troubleſome an Infirmity as a Horſe can have, and they rarely recover.

Cloſed behind.

I ſhall next diſcover unto you the Imperfections incident to the Hind-quarters. The firſt is when a Horſe is too much *cloſed behind*; that is, when the Hams are nearer to each other than the Feet, eſpecially the Points of the Hams, called the *Hocks*, and the diſtance enlarges ſtill towards the Feet. Such Bow-legg'd Horſes are many times good; yet they have commonly a weak Hind-hand, and in great Deſcents are apt to ſtrike their Hams againſt one another. Yet it is better to have the Hams bowed inwards than outwards, which is a ſign of Weakneſs; and Amblers are more ſubject to it than others.

The Ham ſhould be large and full, nervous and dry; thoſe which are charged with Fleſh, or grounded, will be ſubject to thoſe Imperfections I am about to explain.

Capt

Capelet.

You are first to observe the tip or point of the *Hock*, if there be a *Capelet* upon it; which may be known by the Tip of the Hock being moveable, and more swelled than ordinary. When it is small it does no great prejudice, but if it should grow large, it will be painful, and make a Horse lose his Belly.

Vessigon.

You are next to consider if he have a *Vessigon*, which is a kind of Wind-gall or Swelling, about the bigness of half an Apple, less or more, compos'd of a soft and spongeous Flesh, growing between the Flesh and Skin, and situate in the Hollow next to the Hock, and beneath the big Sinew, a little above the *Capelet*, and bending of the Ham, and which appears but very little, except when the Horse is resting equally upon both his Hind legs; because when he bendeth his Ham it doth not appear at all, neither doth it often make a Horse halt. It comes upon both sides the Ham, and sometimes on one only, and is situate a little above the Numb. 29. in the Figure of the first Plate. Those that are situate lower are not dangerous, and in young Horses may be discussed by moderate Exercise.

Curb.

There cometh upon the backside of the Ham, below the *Capelet*, and a little inclining towards the inside, a Swelling, which is called the *Curb*, which makes the Horse frequently to halt, and is incurable.

Varisse.

Upon the inside of the Ham, a little distant from the *Curb*, but about the same height, there is a Bone somewhat high and elevate; and that part of the Ham which is below that Bone swelleth by a degorging of the great Vein, and is called a *Varisse*, which doth not make a Horse to halt, but only sometimes spoils his Sale by growing excessively large. Ease

and Reſt (eſpecially if the Part be daily bathed with Spirit of Wine) will ſo reſtrict it, as to be imperceptible for the time.

Spavin.

Below the *Curb* and *Variſſe*, but more upon the inſide, beneath the bending of the Ham, do the *Spavins* come, which are marked 31. in the Figure of the firſt Plate, which are very troubleſom, and do commonly at laſt lame the Horſe. They are of two kinds, *viz.* the *Ox Spavin*, and the *Dry Spavin*. The *Ox Spavin* is a callous and griſſy Swelling, hard as a Bone, and ſo painful that it makes a Horſe loſe his Belly. Some Horſes halt with them at the firſt coming out of the Stable only, when the *Spavins* are but young: And I have ſeen Horſes with large and ſmall *Ox Spavins*, which yet did not looſe their Flanks with them, but trotted very equally, and were ſold at the ſame Rates as if they had wanted theſe *Spavins*, becauſe no Body obſerved them; for when they were handled they felt as hard as the Bone. Many half-skill'd People ſay, that ſuch Swellings are not *Spavins*, but the real Bones of the Legs, which grow bigger in ſome Horſes than in others. When *Ox Spavins* do firſt ſeize upon Horſes, they are the more difficult to be obſerved, becauſe they do not riſe much above the Subſtance of the Legs; but yet at their firſt piercing they commonly make a Horſe halt, and afterwards the Swelling growing bigger, the Horſe halts no more with it: But ſince they rarely come equally in both the Hams, the one Ham is eaſily perceived to be bigger than the other, which you may better diſcern, placing your ſelf before the Horſe, a little towards one of the Shoulders, than if you were juſt behind him: For a *Spavin* in its Infancy is larger towards the Ply and Bending of the Ham, than behind it; and by degrees it will ſo encreaſe, that it will at laſt quite lame the Horſe.

The

The second kind is the *Dry Spavin*, which is perceived by the most unskilful: for when a Horse in walking raises with a Twitch one of his Hind-legs higher than the other, he is then said to have this kind of *Spavin*, and will have it many times in both Hind-legs. Horses that have this Infirmity do not always twitch up their Legs, but only when they first come out of the Stable, before their Legs are suppled with walking. They often degenerate into *Ox Spavins*; and there is no Remedy but to apply the Fire, and even that does not always cure 'em.

Jardon.

If upon the outside of the Ham, below the *Vessigon*, there be a Swelling as hard as a *Spavin*, mounting almost as high as the part where the *Vessigon* cometh, it is called a *Jardon*, and is as much or more to be feared than the *Spavin*. It is not very common, therefore few People know it, altho' it be as painful as the *Spavin*, and makes a Horse to halt. There is no Remedy but Firing, which does not always succeed. It is marked 32 in the Plate.

If upon the Fore-sinew of the Leg, between the *Spavin* on the inside, and the *Jardon* without, there be as it were a Circle which joineth them, and invironeth the Nerve of the Instep, the Horse is spoilt and ruin'd past recovery.

Selender.

In the Ply of the Ham, there are sometimes Chops and Crevices which resemble the *Mallender* in the Fore-legs, and are called the *Selender*.

You are also to observe if the Ply or Bending of the Ham be swelled, unless it proceed from some Accident, as casting with the Halter, being intangled with the cross hanging Bar, or such like; in which Cases there is not much to be feared. *Spavins* and *Jardons*, when they are hereditary, are incurable. They are more to be feared in young Horses than in old, because in young Horses, Exercise and

Labour makes them increaſe; but in thoſe which are paſt ſeven or eight Years, when the *Spavin* is not very large, and provided they do not mean or halt with it, and have alſo a good Body and full Flank; in theſe, I ſay, it is not ſo much to be feared as in young; However in either it at laſt ſpoils and ruins the Horſe.

I come now to ſpeak of the Infirmities of the Hind-legs, from the Ham downwards.

Rats-Tails.

There come upon the Back-ſinews *Rats-Tails*; they are known by the part being without Hair, from two or three Fingers breadth below the Ham to the very Paſtern-joint, and are ſometimes dry, and ſometimes moiſt, but always accompanied with Cruſts and hard Calloſities, more elevate than the reſt of the Leg. When they are moiſt they ſend forth a ſharp Humour. There are ſome Horſes which have them only in their Fore-legs, but this is very rare.

Coach-Horſes of a large ſize, who have their Legs charged with Fleſh, Hair, and full of bad Humours, are moſt ſubject to this and the following Infirmities, which ſeldom happen to Horſes of a middle-ſize.

There are a kind of Warts or Leek-heads, which come about the Paſterns and Paſtern-joints. They are higher than the Skin about half the thickneſs of ones Finger, throw out filthy ſtinking Stuff, ſpoil the Leg, and are very troubleſome to cure. Thoſe which come in the Paſterns are hid beneath the long Hair of the Fetlocks, and are ſome of them ſo very malign, that they make the Hair fall all around them, and they themſelves grow up like Wallnuts. There are others again more flat, and not ſo much raiſed above the Skin, but are more dangerous than thoſe which are biggeſt and moſt elevate; they are eaſily diſcovered, being a great many mattering kind

of Warts touching one another, and are without Hair: They, for the moſt part, ſend forth Matter, but may be dried up for a Seaſon.

Figs.

There come ſometimes in the Soles mattering kind of Warts, or rather *Figs* upon the Fruſh, and are in a manner detached from it, and appear diſtinctly upon the middle of the Fruſh towards the Heel, and commonly exceed the ordinary heighth of the Fruſh. And ſometimes they grow upon the ſides of the Fruſh, and beneath the Sole of the Foot; and when they are conſiderably raiſed above the Fruſh, ſo that they touch the Ground as the Horſe is riding, they then cauſe him to halt.

A Man may know when a Horſe hath been cured of *Figs*, becauſe that Foot will be larger than the reſt, altho' the Horſe be well recover'd and render good Service.

Kib'd-Heels.

Traverſe-Mules or *Kib'd-Heels*, are Chops and Clifts which ſurround the back parts of the Paſtern-joints where they ply and bend. This is more painful than the preceding, becauſe theſe Chinks, as a Horſe is riding, ſhut and open, which makes them very painful. This Infirmity ſhould not hinder a Man from buying a Horſe, if the Legs be not gorged and ſwelled, becauſe they may be dried up, tho' with ſome difficulty, by reaſon of the motion made by the Paſtern-joint.

Waters.

The Hind-legs are ſubject to a white ſharp, and corrupt Humour or *Waters*, which come very rarely in the Fore-legs, and are known by ſearching the Paſterns, if you find a Moiſtneſs beneath the Hair, which is extremely ſtinking, and groweth all round the Paſtern and Paſtern-joint, and ſometimes almoſt up to the very Ham. They many times cauſe the Paſterns to ſwell, keep the Legs ſtiff, make the Horſe lean,

and ſeparate the Fleſh from the Coronet near to the Heels. They are eaſily ſtopt at firſt; but when they have continued a long time, People are deceived when they think to diſcuſs them, though they may be dried up for a certain time, but they return again.

However I would not ſcruple to buy a young Horſe with ſome of theſe *Humours* or *Waters* in his Paſterns, provided his Hams be dry, and that his Legs be not gorged. And although he have much Hair on his Legs, if they be broad, nervous, and diſcharged of Fleſh, he will not be ſubject to theſe Infirmities, provided they be kept clean. But if his Legs be charged with Fleſh, or have a full and fleſhy Ham, you ſhall never find any ſatisfaction in him. If you undertake the Cure of theſe Infirmities in Winter and cold Weather, they will give you a great deal of trouble: but in Summer-time the *White Charge* in the ſecond Part of this Book will produce ſuch Effects as you dare hardly wiſh for. *See the ſecond Part.*

You are alſo to obſerve if his Paſtern-joints are not ſwelled or have *Crown-Scabs*; and if when he is ſtanding ſtill his Paſtern-joint be not lodged more to one ſide than the other; or if it bend too much forwards; or if he carry it ſo low that it miſhapeth his Leg. Now ſome Horſes have this Weakneſs in their Hind-legs, when they have it not in their Fore.

Obſerve alſo if he hath a Wind-gall that hath any coherence with the Nerves, it being one of the greateſt Infirmities a Horſe can have, always laming the Horſe, and there is no remedy but Firing.

Laſtly, you ſhall conſider if the Horſe tread only upon his Hind-toes, which you may know by the Shooe being worn in that part: The Back-ſinew of the Leg ſhrinks up, and the older he grows, it will be

ſtill

ſtill the worſe. But this may be remedied by methodical Shooing when the Horſe is young.

CHAP. VIII.

How to know a Horſe's Feet.

THE Foot being a part of the Body which ſuffers moſt: if a Horſe have but one bad Foot, he is fit for nothing but the Plow, or ſuch Countries which are free of Stones.

A Man muſt know Horſes very well to be able to judge exactly of ſome ſorts of Feet. For ſome will appear to be weak which are really good, and the little Horn they have is tough, ſolid, and capable to ſerve: Others again appear good, which are pained for being too fat and full of Fleſh; The ſureſt way then is to take them of a good ſhape, and if they prove good, they may be eaſily kept ſo; or if bad, may be recovered by the right method of Shooing.

Let us begin with the *Hoof*, which ſhould be of a form very near round, and not longiſh, eſpecially towards the Heel, for long Feet are worth nothing: The Horn ſhould be tough and ſolid, high, ſmooth, of a dark colour, and without any Circles. Brittle Hoofs may be known by many pieces being broken from the Horn around his Foot. A Man may alſo know a bad Hoof by lifting up the Foot, and conſidering if it have a Shoe forged expreſly for it, and if it be pierced extraordinarily, and the holes of it placed in ſuch parts where it is not uſual, ſeeing he had not Horn enough to take hold by in thoſe parts where commonly the Nails are driven. So Nails are never driven near to the Heels of the Fore-feet, but when the Toe is ſo much ſplit and broke that they can place none in it.

If

If the Foot be circled, altho' it do not make a Horſe to halt or mean his Foot, yet it is a ſign that the Hoof is altered, or the Horn nought; therefore other circumſtances muſt be conſidered; as firſt, if the Horn be thick, becauſe Horſes with a thin Horn are ſaid to have fat Feet, and cannot be known but by ſeeing the Foot pared. Such thin-hoof'd Horſes halt and mean their Feet along time after they are ſhooed, before they recover ſtrength in them, ſo that a Man is neceſſitated to let them reſt ſome days after they are ſhod, before he can make uſe of them.

To know when Feet are fat, is one of the moſt difficult things in the knowledge of Horſes, their ſhape being as beautiful as that of any other Foot, and the Horn maketh the beſt appearance in the World, only that the Hoof is ſomewhat larger than the ſize of the Horſe will allow of.

You are alſo to conſider if the Horſe have not a kind of clift in his Foot called a *Falſe Quarter*, which is occaſioned by the Horſe's caſting his Quarter and getting a new one; for then the Horn beginning to grow, is uneven and ugly, and bigger and ſofter than the reſt of the Hoof. If the clift be conſiderable, and take up a quarter part of the Hoof, it ſhould keep a Man from buying the Horſe.

There are Horſes which have Over-reaches or Calkin-treads upon the Coronet, which become hollow and grooved in curing, but then the hollow of the tread deſcends proportionably as the Hoof grows, and is viſible upon it: it doth little or no prejudice to the Horſe if there remain no ſwelling upon the Coronet.

There are ſome Clifts very dangerous; for when Farriers have ſometimes fired the Coronet, and burnt down a little upon the top of the Horn, it cauſes a clift or groove along the Hoof, which renders it ugly and hard as long as his Hoof laſts, and commonly

monly ſtraitens and dries up the Hoof in that part. However, it is not at all dangerous to apply Rays of Fire upon the Hoof, provided you do not burn the Coronet; nay, it is very profitable upon many occaſions to perform it; for example, when a Heel or Quarter is ſo ſtraitned, that it preſſes the little Foot or Coffin-Bone, a Man may in that caſe, inſtead of grooving the Hoof with a Drawing-Iron, apply the Rays of Fire after the manner I have taught you in the *Second Part*. Therefore when People ſee a Foot thus fired, they ſhould not be much ſtartled at it, but only conclude that it hath been ſtraitned, and that thoſe Rays of Fire have been applied to inlarge it.

You muſt now lift up the Foot, the Heel of which ſhould be pretty high, broad, large, and open, that is, without being Hoof-bound, which is to have it too narrow and ſtrait. You ſhall alſo conſider if the Frog or Fruſh be proportionable to the Foot, and that it be not too little and dry, nor too large and fat. Thoſe which are little, and too much dried up, fall to the ſhare of Hoof-bound or Narrow-heel'd Horſes, becauſe the Heel's becoming ſtrait, hinder the Fruſh from being nouriſhed as it ought. When the Fruſh is too large and fat, it is higher than the Sole at the Heels, and is always a token of a very bad Foot.

The moſt part of Horſes which have low Heels, have large and fat Fruſhes, ſo that they cannot walk but they touch the Ground, and ſometimes halt, which ſhould be well conſider'd, becauſe moſt People, who underſtand Shooing, take down their Horſes Heels to preſerve the Back-ſinews of their Legs: the Ignorant ſeeing a Heel cut and taken down in that faſhion, boldly pronounce that a Horſe hath none; but in that caſe you are to obſerve the Fruſh, which being but of a middle ſize, the Horſe can ſcarcely be too low heel'd. You may know

know by the circumference of the Hoof, if the Heels are low, after a very little experience.

You ſhall in the next place, keeping the Horſe's Foot ſtill up, conſider if the Sole be ſtrong, and the whole Foot hollow, and at a pretty diſtance from the Shoe, whereas ſome Feet are ſhaped like the back part of an Oyſter-ſhell, and the Sole is higher than the Hoof, ſo that the whole Foot is quite fill'd up on the lower part, they are then called *Crowned-Soles*; and altho' ſuch Feet have for the moſt part their Heels low, yet are they ſtraitned and narrow towards the Shoe, and become in a little time abſolutely uſeleſs, unleſs it be for the Plow. Not but that by methodical Shooing, care and time, ſuch Crowned-Soles may in ſome meaſure be rectified, if the Heels be only ſtraitned near the Shoe, and have not their Fruſhes over large, and their Heels too low: For theſe laſt there is no poſſibility to recover them.

There are other kind of Feet which People call *Weak*, becauſe altho' their Heels be indifferent high, yet they are but thin, that is, that at the point of the Fruſh, betwixt it and the upper part of the Hoof, they have but a ſmall thickneſs; and altho' they have the inward part of the Foot, that is, the Sole hollow, yet they have ſo little ſtrength in their Feet that they eaſily halt, and are alſo ſubject to heat their Feet upon hard ways, the pain whereof maketh them lame. Theſe kind of Horſes are very often upon their Litter, that is, People are obliged to let them ſtand ſoft, and give them but very moderate Labour.

Hoof-binding is known, when the Heels do not take a right tour or compaſs, but ſtraiten towards the clift of the Fruſh, ſo that upon each ſide of the ſaid clift, there is not above a Finger-breadth of diſtance, and that the whole Heel is little more than two Fingers broad. Whereas a Horſe ſhould always have

have about four at the Heel, little more or leſs according to the ſize and bigneſs of the Foot.

There are Narrow-heel'd Horſes which have high Heels, but ſo weak, that by preſſing the two ſides of the Heel one againſt the other, they yield and move, which is a token of tenderneſs in the Foot; and altho' the Horſe were not Hoof-bound, yet ſuch yielding Heels are always weak.

Some narrow-heel'd Horſes have not high Heels, but on the contrary very low; but then that part of the Hoof next to the Heel, and which reſts upon the Shoe, is much more ſtraitned than that which is next to the Coronet, and it is that which Hoof-bindeth a Horſe: Now for theſe laſt, the *Panton*, or *Pantable* Shoes have a very good effect.

There are Horſes which have the back-part of their Paſterns next to the Heels, as if they were pointed, and by that means have their Feet too long, becauſe they exceed the ordinary roundneſs, and extend too much backward: Commonly ſuch Horſes have very bad Feet, and are for the moſt part Hoof-bound.

Beſides this fault in ſmall ſized Horſes of being Hoof-bound, they are alſo ſubject to have one of the ſides of their Heels higher by an Inch than the other. This is a fault, tho' not ſo bad as Hoof-binding, becauſe Hoof-binding doth for the moſt part make a Horſe to halt, and is alſo a ſign of great drineſs in the Foot; whereas this proceeds partly from the drineſs of the Foot, and ſometimes from bad Shooing; and the Method to prevent it, is to ſhooe and pare the Feet every Month, that ſo you may keep them from taking that bad ſhape. Small ſized Horſes with narrow Heels, which never moiſten their Feet in wet Ground, are moſt ſubject to this Infirmity.

Hoof-bound Horſes are alſo ſubject to have *Seymes* or Clifts in their Quarters; the drineſs of the Foot

is

is the internal cauſe of both. The external cauſe the Horſe's riding upon hard Ground. It is eaſily perceived by their not ſetting their Feet firm upon the Ground in walking. Hoofs round and ſolid are ſeldom troubled with them.

They are known by looking to the Quarters of the Hoofs upon the inſide, which will be cloven from the Coronet to the very Shoe, quite thorow the Horn, and ſuch Quarters are commonly ſtraitned: Some of theſe Clifts do not aſcend ſo high as the Coronet, and are therefore leſs dangerous; and altho' they may be recovered, yet it is an Imperfection, eſpecially in fat Feet, which have a thin Horn, where oft-times ſuch Clifts occaſion ſcratches upon the Coronet. Horſes that have the Seymes cannot work but in very ſoft Ground; for upon the Street, or hard Ground, the Blood frequently comes out of the Clefts. Cloven Quarters are always a token of a dried Foot and bad temperature. Sometimes the Horn of the Hind-Feet cleaveth juſt in the very middle of the fore-part of the Hoof from the Coronet to the Shoe; they are called Ox-feet: they are not common, but very troubleſome, and oft-times make a Horſe halt.

There is another Imperfection called in French *Crapaudine* or Tread upon the Coronet, and is a kind of Ulcer upon the Coronet, from whence there iſſueth a filthy Matter, which by its ſharpneſs drieth up the Horn beneath the part where the Tread is made, in which there is made a kind of hollow or groove down to the very Shoe, and it would ſeem that the Horn ſhrinks in that part, by reaſon of that Humour, which inſtead of moiſtning it as it ought, changeth its Nature by the corruption it receiveth from the wound made by this Tread.

It is a great Imperfection to have Feet too large or fat, or to have them too little. Such Horſes as have them too large, are for the moſt part very heavy,

heavy, and apt to ſtumble, eſpecially if with ſuch Feet they have weak Legs, and too long Paſterns. And on the other hand too ſmall Feet, are much to be ſuſpected, becauſe they are frequently painful, and ſubject to cloven Quarters, and other Imperfections.

In foundred Feet, the Hoof oft-times, towards the middle of the Foot, is ſhrunk and fallen in, hath many Circles quite round the Foot, and appears altogether altered and dry, with the Heels all circled. Such Feet become ſtill worſe, and the Horſe always ſets his Heels firſt to the Ground when he trots. Theſe bad kinds and ſhapes of Feet ſhould be rejected.

CHAP. IX.

How to know if a Horſe be well bodied, or have a good Belly.

HAving narrowly examined the Feet, you muſt next conſider if he have a good Body, and be full in the Flank.

If the laſt of the ſhort Ribs be a conſiderable diſtance from the Haunch-bone, altho' ſuch Horſes may for the time have pretty good Bodies, yet if they be much laboured, they will loſe them, and theſe are properly the Horſes which have no Flank.

A Horſe hath alſo no Flank, when his Ribs are too ſtraitned in their compaſs, which is eaſily perceived by comparing their height with that of the Haunch-bones, for they ought to be as high and elevate as them, or but a very little leſs, when the Horſe is in good caſe.

If a Horſe be narrow cheſted, it not only hinders him from having a good Body, but his Wind and Breathing will never be very free, by reaſon of the laſt

laſt or hindmoſt Ribs compreſſing too much the inward Parts.

If ſuch Horſes as have their Ribs ſtrait be great Feeders, then their Bellies will be gulphed up, ſo that it not being poſſible for the Entrails to be contained within the Ribs, they will preſs downwards, and make the ſhape of a Cow's Belly, which is very unbecoming. Beſides that thoſe Horſes that are ſtrait Rib'd are very difficult to Saddle, for they muſt have Saddles made expreſly for them; they have no Wind, and are ſubject to the Cough. But they have generally a good Chine or Back.

If a Horſe's not having a good Belly proceed from leanneſs, he may be recovered by Reſt and Eaſe, with the aſſiſtance of cooling and moiſt nouriſhment, eſpecially if his Ribs have a good compaſs; and if they have not, yet if he eat heartily his Hay and Oats, and drink well, he may prove as good as any for the Saddle, but I would not meddle with him for a Coach. Horſes with ſtrait Ribs have generally good Backs, and altho' their Croups are not ſo beautiful, being for the moſt part pointed; yet to ſupply that they have excellent Reins. They are commonly called *Sow-Backs.*

It is an infallible Maxim, that a Man ſhould never buy a Horſe which is both light bodied and fiery, becauſe ſuch Horſes deſtroy themſelves in an inſtant. Many People do ignorantly confound Firyneſs with Vigour or High-mettle; whereas true Mettle doth not conſiſt in fretting, trampling, dancing, and not ſuffering any Horſe to go before them, but in being very ſenſible of the Spurs. Not but that fiery Horſes are many times very high mettl'd, but their fault is in being ſo, with this fretful Diſpoſition.

Horſes which have any great pain in their Hind-Quarters, are commonly light-bellied. Therefore when you are ſhown a Horſe that is light-bellied, look

look immediately to his Hams, and in all probability you will find there *Spavins*, *Jardons*, or *Capelets*: Not but there are some light-bodied Horses which have none of these Infirmities in their Hams, but there are few which have these Infirmities but what are light-bellied.

Painful *Scratches* in the Hind-Legs will sometimes take away a Horse's Belly, but they should not hinder you from buying, because they may be easily cured. Yet if the Scratches are situate upon the back Sinew of the Leg, a pretty way above the Pastern-joint, altho' People may endeavour to make you believe they are nothing, I must tell you they are one of the most troublesome external Maladies a Horse can have. I have known Horses to have them six, eight, and ten Months, others to become Lame by them, and some at last have died of them.

A Horse low in case cannot be made plump unless he eat much Hay, which will make his Belly like that of a Cow with Calf, which may be remedied with a Surcingle about a Foot and a half broad, with two little Cushions to it, which may answer to the top of the Ribs upon each side of the Back-Bone, to preserve the Back from being galled with the Surcingle. And by this means a big or low Belly will pass towards the Croup, and insensibly diminish.

CHAP. X.

How to know when a Horse's Flanks are altered and out of order.

IF a Horse have a Flank full enough, you are to consider if he have it not too large, that is, if over-against that part of the Thigh called the *Stifle*,

(marked 27 in the Figure) the Flank fall too low; for if so, it is a great advance to Pursiness, especially if the Horse be not very young.

If he make a String or Cord in breathing, by attracting the Skin of his Belly where the Ribs fail, making as it were a Channel or Groove all along them, then it is a token that his Flank beginneth to alter, or at least a certain sign that his Body is over-heated, that he hath been sick, or will in a short time become so. This Cord or Hollow along the Ribs does many times appear in vigorous Horses, which have been undiscreetly push'd on or over-rid, and then it is not a sign of actual Pursiness, but only that in a short time it may become so.

When a Horse is far gone with this Distemper, it is easily known, yet at the beginning of it a Man may readily be deceived. Therefore that you may not be imposed upon, you are first to consider his Age, because young Horses are very rarely Pursy. You must next observe, if his Flank be not swallow'd up, or fall'n too low. But to be more certain, you must press his Wind-pipe near the onset of the Head, that so you may make him cough, and then take notice to the sound of it; if it be dry it is nought, and if it be dry and often reiterate, it is yet worse; if it be moist there is not so much hazard: But if he Farts as he Coughs, then it is almost always a sign of Pursiness. The surest way is to view him in the Stable, immediately after he hath drunk, or when he is eating his Oats, for after galloping or travailing, or when he hath not drank for a pretty while, a Man cannot so well judge of him; nor when he is at Soil or Grass, which although it be thought to recover some Horses while they are at it, yet is quite contrary: For as soon as ever they are taken up, and put to Hay and Oats again, they will be worse than ever.

You

You muſt exactly obſerve if the Horſe's Flanks redouble as he is breathing, which is, when having breath'd and drawn up his Flank to him, he letteth it down on a ſudden, and maketh at the very ſame time, and with the ſame breath, a redoubled motion, as if he breathed a ſecond time with one and the ſame breath. You muſt alſo obſerve if the motion of his Flanks appeareth at the upper part of his ſhort Ribs, which is a ſign that his Flanks are altered, but yet a great deal more if they beat and make their motion at the very top, and juſt by his Back-Bone, or too low and over-againſt the flat part of his Thighs. If the Horſe be far gone with this Diſtemper, his Lungs will be dried up and cleave to the Ribs, and there is no cure.

After you are certain that the Horſe's Flank is right and ſound, you are to obſerve if he be not a *Wheezer* or *Blower*, which is quite different from Purſineſs. For this Wheezing does not proceed from any defect in the Lungs, but from the narrowneſs of the Paſſages between the Bones and Griſtles of the Noſe. And theſe Horſes do not want Wind, for altho' they blow ſo exceſſively when they are exerciſed, yet their Flanks will be but little moved, and in the ſame condition as they ſhould be. However it is diſpleaſing to the generality of People, who for the moſt part take them to be Purſy.

There are other Horſes again which are thick-winded, that is, who have their breathing a little more free than the former, but neither the one nor the other are agreeable, or for any great Service. Yet a Man may be miſtaken in it; for when a Horſe hath been kept a long time in the Stable without exerciſe, he will at firſt riding be out of Wind, altho' he be neither a Blower nor thick-winded.

There are ſome Wheezers or Blowers which rattle and make a noiſe through their Noſe; but this Im-

pediment goeth and cometh, and proceedeth only from abundance of Phlegmatick ſtuff, for his Flanks will not redouble, neither will he have a Cough with it, and therefore cannot be Purſy.

In buying Coach-Horſes People are many times caught and deceived, if they do not ſee them draw before they pay for them. For ſome of them while they are ſhowing, will trot unitely, with their Shoulders free and eaſy, and having a good movement with their Legs, will plant their Feet right upon the Ground, keeping their Heads high and firm; and yet when Harneſſed and put to a Coach, will as ſoon as they have trotted a little, puff or blow like Oxen. Therefore before you pay for a Coach-Horſe, ſee him draw, and if in drawing he ſtoop with his Hind-Parts, and raiſe his Fore, then he will draw right; but if he raiſe his Hind-Parts, and ſtoop with his Fore, then he will draw ill.

You are in the next place to conſider if the Horſe be *Cheſt-foundred*, which is known by the ſame Symptoms almoſt as Purſineſs. The only difference is, that young Horſes are ſubject to Cheſt-foundring as well as old; whereas they are commonly Horſes of ſix Years old and above that are troubled with Purſineſs; at leaſt, it is a Diſeaſe which rarely happens to very young Horſes, and when it does, they have it naturally from their Sire or Dam.

Cheſt-foundring may proceed from Crudities in the Stomach, or other Infirmities obſtructing the Paſſages of the Lungs. The difference between Cheſt-foundring and Purſineſs is, that in the firſt there is hopes of Recovery, but none in the laſt. Graſs, and much refreſhing and cooling are Cheſt-foundring, but encreaſe Purſineſs.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

How to know when a Horse is right planted on his Limbs, and if he walks or treads well.

BEfore you see him walk, observe him as he is standing in the Stable; because upon the right or wrong *Camping* of a Horse, his good or bad going in a great measure depends. He should stand equally upon his Legs, and not one advanced before the other. If he advances one of his Hind-legs, letting the Toe only to touch the Ground, it is no bad sign: But if he advances one of his Fore-legs, and only point it to the Ground, it would be a sign that he is pained in that Leg. There be some Horses, as there are Men, who can never plant themselves right upon their Legs; and I have seen several Horses advance one of their Fore-legs more than the other, who had nevertheless their Legs good, and never made a false Step. His Legs should be wider above than below; that is, the distance between his Feet should be less than between his Fore-thighs, at that part next to the Shoulders. The Knees should not be too close, but the whole Leg should descend in a strait Line to the very Pastern-joint, and the Feet should be turned neither out nor in.

As for the Hind-hand, his Jarrets or Hams should not be too close. The Instep which is betwixt the Hock and Pastern-joint, should stand perpendicular to the Ground: If it stand forward under his Belly, the situation of it is bad; or if he turn the Toes of his Hind-feet much outward, especially if designed for the Coach, because for want of strength in his Haunches, he cannot so well keep back upon any considerable descent. Therefore put him back with your Hand; and if in going back, the Toes

of his Hind-feet turn outward, he will be for no great Service, and the more he turns them out, the more reaſon you will have to conclude he is a bad Horſe, whatever other Qualifications he may have.

Having thus obſerved him ſtanding, let him be trotted along the Street in ones Hand, and take notice if the lifting up, keeping up, and ſetting down of his Legs be ſuch as I am going to deſcribe; as alſo if he keep his Reins ſtrait and equal without rocking or ſwinging; his Head high, well placed, and firm; for if he halt he will mark every time in his Trot with a motion of his Head.

Then cauſe ſome body to ride him a foot-pace, wherein you are to take notice if he have the *Raiſing* or lifting up of his Leg, the *Stay*, or keeping of it up, and the *Tread* or ſetting of it down, all good.

The *Raiſing* will be good if he perform it hardily and with eaſe, not croſſing his Legs, nor carrying his Feet too much out or in, and that he alſo bend his Knees as much as is needful.

The *Stay* is good when he keeps them up ſo long as he ought, his Head and Body remaining in a good Poſture, and if he do not ſet down one Leg ſuddenly to give eaſe to another Leg which is weak or pained.

The *Tread* is good if it be firm, and without reſting upon one ſide of the Foot more than upon the other, or ſetting down the Toe or Heel one before the other: If he ſet his Heels firſt to ground, then is it a ſign that he is founder'd in the Feet; but if he ſhall ſet his Toes firſt to ground, then will it be a Token that he hath been a Draught-horſe: The whole Foot therefore ſhould be ſet down equally, and at the ſame inſtant of time, and turned neither out nor in.

Some Horſes, although they have the *Raiſing*, *Stay* and *Tread* of the Foot very good, yet they have a bad

bad Walk. Therefore it is not altogether enough to consider in a Walk these three Actions of the Leg, but you must also observe if he walk *Lightly*, *Surely*, *Quickly*, and *Easily*.

To walk *Quickly*, is to advance considerably upon the Step: Now every one is a competent Judge to know whether he steps quickly or slowly upon his Walk, and therefore I shall say no more of it.

To walk *Lightly*, is to be light on the hand; that is, he should not press or rest too much upon the Bit, but be always champing upon it, keep his Head high, and move quickly his Shoulders.

A Horse will walk *Easily* if he be united; that is, if his Fore-hand and Hind are, as they were, both one when he walks, and if they both make, as it were, but one Motion. There are some Horses whose Fore-quarters go right, but their Croup, when walking, swings from side to side, which is called a *rocking Croup*. And when such a Horse trots, one of the Haunch-bones will fall and the other rise, like the Beam of a Ballance, which is a sign that he will not be very vigorous.

To walk *Surely*, he must lift up his Legs indifferently high: If he does not bend them enough, he will be cold in his Walk, and apt to strike upon the Stones and Clods. This cold way of Walking or Riding is for the most part a Token that the Horse hath his Legs spoilt; although many Colts have a cold Walk before ever they be wrought. Moreover, to walk *Surely*, a Horse should have his *Tread* good and firm, that he may not be subject to stumble, but ride securely.

The Opinion of most People is to be admired, who pretend to know if a Horse goes well, if he overpasses the Tread of his Fore-foot very much with his Hind, which is a most ridiculous Mistake, and should be joined with that of passing the Hand

before a Horſe's Eyes, to know if he have a good Sight.

Moſt Horſes which thus overpaſs, if they do it conſiderably, ſwing their Croup from one ſide to t'other and rock, which is contrary to what we required in a good Walk. Beſides ſuch Horſes commonly *Forge*; that is, with the Shooes of their Hind-feet they overtake thoſe of their Fore, and ſo pull them off upon the Road; neither have they any Reins or Mettle. I don't deny but ſuch a Horſe may walk ſwiftly, but he will rarely have good Reins; neither can he go eaſily, becauſe he hath not a quick, but long and ſtretched Step all upon his Shoulders, which will make him more ſubject to ſtumbling, becauſe he is not ſupported by his Reins.

This Obſervation of a Horſe's overpaſſing with his Hind-foot the Tread of his Fore, is as good a Remark for his Ambling well, as it is bad for his Walking well: For it is certain a Horſe can never amble upon his Haunches, nor go well, if he do not with his Hind-feet overpaſs the Treads of his Fore, at leaſt a Foot, or a Foot and a half; and the more he overpaſſes, the better will he amble.

There are ſome Horſes, who although they have too long Haunches, yet commonly walk well. Such Horſes are good to climb up Hills; but to ballance that, they are no ways ſure upon a deſcent; for they cannot ply their Hams, and they never gallop ſlowly, but almoſt at full ſpeed.

The Haunches are too long, if when the Horſe is ſtanding in the Stable, he camps with his Hind-feet farther back than he ought, and that the top or onſet of his Tail doth not anſwer in a perpendicular Line with the tip of his Hocks, as it always does in Horſes whoſe Haunches are of a juſt length.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

How to know if a Horſe's Mouth be good.

A Horſe to have a good Mouth ſhould have a well-rais'd Neck, and if it be ſomewhat large and thick, it ſhould be at leaſt well turned, his Reins ſtrong and well ſhaped, and his Legs and Feet likewiſe. If he have all theſe right, no doubt but he will have (unleſs it be by accident) a very good Mouth. But if his Jaw-bones be too cloſe, and that he have alſo a ſhort and thick Neck, ſo that he cannot place his Head right, his having a good Mouth will be to little purpoſe, becauſe you cannot make uſe of it.

Having felt his Jaw-bones, to know if they are ſufficiently ſeparated, put your Finger into his Mouth, preſſing his Barr pretty hard with it, and if you find it paineth him, it is a token that the Barr is ſenſible, and conſequently that his Mouth is good; however too great a degree of ſenſibility would render it bad, as I ſhall ſhew you.

If the place where the Curb reſts be hurt, you may infer by it, that the Horſe has either a bad Mouth, reſts too much upon the Bit in travelling, or that the Rider hath a hard Hand, or the Curb is ill made: But in buying a Horſe a Man ſhould always conclude the worſt againſt him, and believe that the place where the Curb reſts hath been hurt, either by his having too hard a Preſſure upon the Curb, or by his Mouth's not being ſo ſenſible as it ought. If the Barr have been hurt, although it be healed up, it is almoſt as much to be ſuſpected as a bad Mouth, becauſe the Scar where the Wound was, will never have that ſenſe of feeling it had before,

fore, nor will the Mouth of the Bit reſt ſo equally upon it.

To be certain of a Horſe's Mouth, you muſt put him on pretty ſmartly, and then preſently ſtop him; by his parting you will know if he be tickliſh-mouth'd by his chacking the Bridle, or throwing up his Head. Again by his Stop; you will find if he ſtop eaſily, and by the leaſt Motion of your Hand, with his Head firm and well placed.

The Mouth ſhould be full of Froth; and if he champ continually upon the Mouth of his Bit, it is a token of a good Horſe, for few bad ones have this Action.

If the Froth be thin and fluid, or of a pale, grey or yellowiſh colour, it denotes a bad-temper'd Brain; but if it be white and thick, cleaving to his Lips, and Branches of the Bridle, then you are to look upon the Mouth to be freſh, and that the Horſe is of a good Conſtitution, and ſound in his Body.

CHAP. XIII.

How to judge of a Horſe's Vigour and Agility.

WHen the Horſe is ſtanding ſtill, keeping him faſt with the Bridle-hand, apply your Spurs juſt to the Hair of his Sides, which by Horſemen is termed *Pinching*; and if you find him to be impatient under you, aſſembling himſelf, and endeavouring to go forward, champing upon the Bit without thruſting out his Noſe, it is a ſign of Heart and Vigour. There are ſome Horſes which ſhew a great deal of Mettle when they are pinched, but immediately loſe the apprehenſion of it; ſo that though

though they have a very ſenſible feeling, which proceeds moſt from the thinneſs of their Skin, yet are of a dull and craving Nature and Diſpoſition. Of ſuch Horſes it may be ſaid, that they are rather tickliſh, than really ſenſible of the Spurs.

There is great difference between a mettled Horſe and a fiery one. A mettled Horſe ſhould be eſteem'd, but a fretting and fiery Horſe is good for nothing. A Horſe truly vigorous ſhould be calm and cool, ride patiently, and not diſcover his Mettle but when required.

Some Horſes when a Man gives them the Spurs, will not endure them, nor go forwards, but as it were cleaving and faſtning to them, ſtrike out, and go back; and if you preſs them hard, they will then fall a piſſing, and not ſtir out of the place. If he be a Gelding, he will with difficulty quit this Humor; but if he be a Stoned-horſe, he may perhaps forget it for a time, if he be under the Conduct of a good Horſeman; but if he once get the Maſtery of any of his Riders, he will then be juſt to begin a-new again. This is not to ſay, but Geldings, if guilty of any other Vice but this of Kicking againſt the Spurs, may be eaſily reduced, if they have not been long accuſtomed to it. In a word, every Gelding, Stone-horſe, or Mare, which does not fly the Spurs, but obſtinately cleaves to and kicks againſt them, ſhould be look'd upon as of a croſs and dogged nature, and therefore to be rejected.

When you mount a Horſe to try him, if he will not obey, but endeavours to go where he will, you are to reject him as a reſty Jade, ought always to be; for a Man ſhould buy Horſes which have no other Will ſave that of their Rider. Theſe kind of Horſes never quit altogether this Vice, and therefore ſhould not be medled with.

The

The ſureſt Method will be to chooſe ſuch Horſes as are very apprehenſive of Stroaks, and are afraid at the leaſt appearance of them, which at the only cloſing or graſping of the Legs, or rather Thighs, are afraid and alarm'd, and that without fretting or fierineſs. A Horſe which walks deliberately and ſecurely, without needing too often the Whip, and without fretting, goes from the Walk to the Gallop, and from the Gallop to the Step again, without being diſquieted, but always champing upon his Bitt, trots with a glibneſs upon his Shoulders, and gallops eaſily, ſnorting a little thorow his Noſtrils: If he be well upon his Haunches, have a light and eaſie Stop, his Head firm and well placed, and the feeling of the Bitt equal and juſt, I ſay, if he have theſe Qualities, you will ſeldom have cauſe to complain for his Price.

I ſhall only add, that whatever other good Qualities a Horſe may have, that you never give a good Rate for him, unleſs he have theſe two, of having a good Mouth, and being ſenſible and obedient to the Spurs.

CHAP. XIV.

After what manner a Man ſhould mount and try a Horſe he intends to buy.

AFter you have ſeen the Horſe rid by another Perſon, it will be fit to mount him your ſelf, that you may know if his going pleaſe you.

Take the Horſe as he comes out of the Stable, and if poſſible before he hath been rid that day, and without animaling, or in the leaſt frighting him with your Legs or Rod, ſlack your Bridle-hand about four Finger's breadth, more than is neceſſary to

to feel him on the Hand, letting him go at a Step according to his own Fancy and Humour, with his Head lolling if he will, and you no ways troubling him: Now if you can have but patience to let him walk thus for a quarter of an Hour, if he incline to ſtumble, he will trip more than once, and perhaps ſalute the Ground with his Noſe, if he be very ſubject to it. If he be heavy on the Hand, he will reſt wholly upon the Bit, and be a burden to the Bridle-hand. If he be dull and lazy, he will diminiſh inſenſibly the train of his Walk, and will at laſt ſtand ſtill. To put him on again, you muſt move gently your Body and Legs, nay, even your Arms, and infallibly you will know your Horſe better thus in half an Hour, than in half a Day by any other Method. Again, if after having made this proof, you cauſe him to go at an attentive Pace, and that he be under the apprehenſion of your Spurs, he will unite all his ſtrength and mettle to pleaſe you; whereas if you ſuffer'd him to walk on negligently at his pleaſure, he would not much help or advance his Sale; becauſe it is commonly in the firſt hundred yards or ſo, that a Horſe after he hath been ſwitch'd or ſpur'd, gives the greateſt token of his Mettle, by reaſon the correction he received is ſo long freſh in his Memory: But if after he is once freed of that apprehenſion, by your negligence in preſſing him on, and ſlackneſs of your Thighs and Legs, he notwithſtanding go chearfully forward, with a raiſed and well-placed Head, and champing his Bit, his Step well raiſed and reſolute, without either ſtumbling or ſtriking the Clods or Stones in the way, I ſay, ſuch a Horſe without doubt cannot but be vigorous and mettled, and alſo go well.

As for *Amblers* they ſhould go roundly and equally, that is, their Hind-Quarters ſhould exactly accompany their Fore, and not go as if they were in two

pieces

pieces or halves: But above all, you ſhould obſerve if the Perſons upon them make but a little motion with their Bodies, which will be a certain token that ſuch Horſes go well, and that not only the Amble, but alſo the Step.

The beſt obſervation for Amblers, and to know if they really go well, is to take notice if they over-lay much in Ambling, which is, if with their Hind-Feet they over-paſs a Foot and a half, or two Foot the print of their Fore, for the more they over-paſs them with their Hind-Feet the better will they Amble, becauſe it is impoſſible for them thus to over-paſs with their Hind-Feet the tread of their Fore, without plying conſiderably their Haunches, which is the perfection of the Amble.

It now remains that I ſpeak of thoſe Horſes which go ſhuffling and mixt Paces, which, generally ſpeaking, are worth nothing, and commonly ſuch Horſes are fretful and fiery, which obliges them at their firſt out-ſetting to betake themſelves to ſuch ſhuffling Paces. Sometimes alſo it proceeds from a weakneſs either in their Reins or Legs: But if it hath never been a Horſe's cuſtom to go a ſhuffling Pace betwixt the Walk and Amble, and that you find he now inclines to it of his own accord, it is a ſign that his Legs are either ſpoil'd or weak, and that he endeavours by this kind of Pace to give eaſe to them.

A Horſe deſigned for Hunting ſhould be vigorous and full of Mettle (but not fiery,) gallop upon his Haunches, and graze but ſlightly upon the Ground with his Feet; that is, ſhould go ſmooth, and not raiſe his Fore-Feet too high. His Head and Neck high and well-placed, without reſting too much upon the Snaffle, and alſo giving a little ſnort with his Noſtrils each ſtroke he makes, which is a token of a good Wind. When you make tryal of a Galloper, obſerve if he perform it equally, and puſh him on a little

little hard, that you may know by his Stop if he have ſtrength and vigour, which is called a *Source* or *Fund*, and if he be alſo ſenſible of the Spurs.

CHAP. XV.

Of the different Colours of Horſes: With ſome Obſervations that may be drawn from them.

THE Duke of *Newcaſtle* ridicules all ſuch as regard either Colour or Marks, and laughs at thoſe who think that a Horſe is compoſed and nouriſhed by the Four Elements; for, ſaith he, both Men and Horſes receive their Suſtenance from Meat and Drink only. However, ſince ſome People will not be perſwaded, but that the natural Temper and Conſtitution of Horſes may be diſcovered in a great meaſure by their colour, I ſhall briefly name them unto you.

The moſt common of all Colours is the Bay: Some have dark Spots on their Croup, and are called *Dappled Bays.*

The dark Bay is that which is almoſt black, only hath a little brown Hair upon the Flanks and tip of the Noſe; and is therefore ſometimes called *Brown Bay.*

All theſe kind of Bays have their Manes and Tails black: Neither was there ever a Bay Horſe which had not his Extremities black.

The Grays are of ſeveral kinds.

The branded Gray is he which hath large black Spots diſperſed here and there.

The light or ſilver Gray is when there is a very ſmall mixture of black Hairs, and only ſo much as may diſtinguiſh it from the white.

The ſad or powder'd Gray is a colour with a very great mixture of black Hairs in it, and is a pretty colour

colour when the Mane and Tail are white: The Black Gray is almoſt the ſame with a great deal of Black, and but little white. The Browniſh or Sandy-coloured Gray, is when there is Bay-coloured Hairs mixed with Black, and is a very good colour. The Dapple-Gray is commonly known.

Of Pye-bald Horſes are ſeveral kinds, as Black, Bay, and Sorrel. The leſs White they have, it is ſo much the better token of their goodneſs.

The Roan is as good a colour as any of the preceding; and there are ſeveral kinds, as the Roan of a Wine-like colour, which approaches near to the colour of a pale Claret; and the Roan with a black Head, which hath alſo his Mane and Tail black.

The Starling-colour ſomewhat reſembles the browniſh or black Gray, only more Freckled, and having a conſiderable deal more white, reſembling the colour of that Bird's Breaſt and Back-feathers.

Horſes of the colour of a Peach-flower or Bloſſom are very rarely ſenſible and obedient to the Spurs, but their colour is delicate and pleaſing to the Eye.

The Sorrel is a kind of Bay of a brown or rather ruddiſh colour. There are but few but what are good, eſpecially if their Manes, Tails, and Legs be black.

There are ſeveral kinds of Sorrels, and their difference chiefly conſiſts in the colour of their Manes and Tails: As,

The Red or Cow-coloured Sorrel, with the Mane and Tail White, or of the ſame colour with their Bodies.

The Bright or Light-coloured Sorrel, hath commonly the Mane and Tail White, and is not much worth.

The Common-Sorrel, which is as it were a Medium between the Red and Bright, is that which is commonly called Sorrel, without any other diſtinction.

The Burnt-Sorrel is of a very deep brown and reddiſh colour, and ſhould have always the Mane and Tail white, and are very rarely of another colour; and this is a beautiful and good colour.

The moſt part of Sorrel Horſes, except ſuch as have their Flanks of a pale colour, and their Extremities white, anſwer readily to the Spurs, and are for the moſt part of a cholerick Conſtitution.

There are other mixt kind of colours, ſuch as the Rubican, which is when a black or ſorrel Horſe hath white Hairs here and there ſcattered upon his Body, but eſpecially upon his Flanks.

The Mouſe-colour or Dun is well known. Many of them have black Liſts along their Backs, called *Eel-back'd*. Others have their Legs and Hams liſted or rayed with black, with their Manes and Tails quite black. Some are of a bright Dun-colour, but the dark are moſt ſerviceable, eſpecially if their Extremities be black.

The Wolf-colour is of two kinds, Bright or Dark; if it be very bright, it reſembles the Iſabella-colour; ſuch Horſes have always, or at leaſt ſhould have, a black Liſt along their Backs, with their Manes, Tails, and Legs black; and are for the moſt part very good.

The Tiger-colour is almoſt the ſame with the Branded-Gray before-mentioned, only that the Spots are not by far ſo big.

The Deer-colour is ſufficiently known, and if ſuch Horſes have their Manes, Tails, and Legs black, they will prove good; and if they have a black Liſt along their Backs, they will be ſo much the better.

Altho' there be good Horſes of all colours, as there are good Greyhounds of all Marks, yet I ſhall tell you which colours are moſt eſteemed, and ſo conclude this Chapter.

The Bay, Cheſnut, Dapple-gray, Roan with a black Head, the burnt and dark Sorrel, the Black with a Blaze or Star in the Forehead, are all good colours.

I have ſeen ſome very good Iron-coloured Grays, altho' it be generally no good colour. And I have known very good White Horſes, which were black all about their Eyes and Noſtrils.

The Flea-bitten Gray, which have good Eyes, ſeldom fail to prove good, but there are but few Horſes of this colour until they become a little aged. Thoſe that are flea-bitten in their Fore-Parts are commonly excellent; and if they have them all over their Bodies, the Mark is ſo much the better. But if they have them only upon their Hind-Quarters, and none upon their Fore, then they are rarely good.

CHAP. XVI.

Of White Feet, Stars, Blazes, Feathers.

ALtho' theſe Marks in the Opinion of the Duke of *Newcaſtle*, are nothing but ſo many Abſurdities, as alſo what People ſay of white-footed Horſes, that there are four good Marks belonging to them, and ſeven bad; yet ſince many People rely much upon them, I ſhall deſcribe them as briefly as I can.

The firſt good Mark is when a Horſe hath only his far Fore-foot; the ſecond when he hath his near Hind-foot white. The far Hind-foot white is eſteemed a bad Mark. The two Fore-feet white is a bad Mark, but not very common. I have known but

but few Horſes with this Mark, neither were they much worth.

The two Hind-feet white is a good Mark, eſpecially if he have a Star or Blaze in his Forehead.

The two Fore-feet, and one Hind-foot white, is ſomewhat better than the two Fore-feet alone.

Four white Feet ſhews good nature, but are commonly not very ſtrong; and their Fore-feet will incline to be brittle becauſe of the whiteneſs of the Horn.

Two Feet of a ſide white is a bad Mark, and ſo it is when a Horſe is Croſs-white-footed; altho' ſome People look upon it as a good Mark to have the far Fore-foot and near Hind-foot white, eſpecially if he have a Star with it.

Ermined white Feet are thoſe which are freckled with little black Spots round the Coronets: an excellent Mark.

The higher the White aſcends upon a Horſe's Legs, he is ſo much the worſe. But after all, the Judgment drawn from Colours and Marks is according to Men's Fancies, there being good and bad of all Colours, as well as of all Marks.

A *Feather* is nothing elſe but a turning of the Hair, reſembling in ſome an Ear of Barly, and a kind of Oilet-hole in others. When it reacheth a good way along the upper part of the Neck, near to the Mane, it is a good Mark, and if it be on each ſide the Neck, the Mark is the better. So likewiſe if there be in the Forehead two or three of theſe Oilets ſeparate from each other, or ſo joined that they form a kind of Feather. Or if the like Mark be upon the ply of a Horſe's Hind-Thigh, and upon the back part of it near to where the end of his Dock or Rump reacheth, it is a very good Mark.

It is ſaid of Horſes which have white Faces or Blazes, that if the Blaze be divided in the middle, croſs-ways, the Horſe will be of an odd diſpoſition.

But if his near Hind-Foot be white, it will rectify that blemiſh.

Every Horſe that is not White or Gray, is eſteemed the better for having a Star in his Forehead. You may eaſily diſcover when it hath been made by Art, becauſe there will be no Hair in the middle of it, and the white Hairs will be much longer than the reſt.

The *Hollanders* roaſt a large Onion in hot Aſhes, and being almoſt throughly roaſted, they divide it in two, and dip it into ſcalding hot Walnut-Oil, after which they immediately apply the flat ſide of it to that part of the Forehead where they intend to make the Star, and there keep it for half an Hour, and then take it away and anoint the ſcalded place with the Ointment of Roſes: In a ſhort time the Scarf-Skin falls away, and there grows up in the new one ſome white Hairs, but the Star in the middle remains always without Hair, as was before obſerved.

CHAP. XVII.

How to know if a Horſe have a good Appetite, or be ſubject to the Tick.

BEfore you conclude your Bargain when you are buying a Horſe, obſerve if he eat heartily. For tho' there are ſome great Feeders which are no great Toilers; yet there are very few which can endure a long Fatigue, but what have excellent Appetites.

If a Horſe be light-bellied, it were convenient to try him one Night, giving him fifteen or twenty Pound weight of Hay, and if there be none next Morning remaining, he has a good Appetite. Obſerve alſo if he drink well.

Light-

Light-bellied Horſes, altho' they may eat their Oats heartily, yet for the moſt part do not eat much Hay, nor conſequently drink luſtily, whereby they cannot travel ſo well, becauſe with Oats alone they are too much over-heated, when a Man is obliged to give a great quantity of them, that ſo they may ſupply the want of Hay.

You may be eaſily deceived, if you conclude that a Horſe has a good Appetite, becauſe he is fat and luſty, and carries a good Belly; for he may have been pamper'd for ſome time, and yet may diſguſt and loſe his Appetite by the leaſt Fatigue.

Some Horſes, as they eat their Oats, take their Heads out of the Manger, and yet eat all up; thoſe Horſes may have a good Appetite, but loſe a great deal of their Oats; whereas he ſhould not ſtir his Noſe from among them until they are all eat up. But (if his Oats are freſh and no ways muſty) and he forſake them and fall to eating his Hay, you may conclude that he hath no good Appetite.

Take notice while he is eating his Oats if he be not ſubject to the *Tick*, which is a preſſing the edge of the Manger with his upper Teeth, and giving a kind of Belch through his Throat, whereby he loſes part of his Oats.

Laſtly, When you are buying a Horſe, take care not to fall in love with him, for when this Paſſion hath once ſeized you, you are no longer in a condition to judge of his Imperfections.

CHAP. XVIII.

Directions for preserving Horses sound upon Travel.

FIrst see that his Shoes be not too strait and press his Feet, but be exactly shaped, and let him be shod some days before you begin a Journey, that they may be setled to his Feet.

You are next to see that he be accommodated with a Bit proper for him, and by no means too heavy, which may incline him to carry low, or to rest upon the Hand when he grows weary, which we call making use of his fifth Leg. The mouth of the Bit should rest upon his Bars, about half a Finger's breadth above his Tushes, and not make him to frumple his Lips. The Curb should rest in the hollow of the Beard, a little above the Chin, and if it gall him, you must defend the place with a piece of Buff or soft Leather.

The next thing to be observed is, That the Saddle do not rest upon his Withers, Reins, or Back-Bone; and that no part of it do more press his Back than another.

To know if it rest equally over all, cause some Person to get upon it, and if the Toes or Points of the Saddle's Fore-bow press too much the Horse's Sides, then the upper part of it will be void and hollow, and not close enough to the Horse's Back, and so the Saddle will be too narrow in its Toes or Points: But if the Points of the Fore-bow be too wide and open, then they will not touch him at all in that part, but the upper part of the Saddle will press him a little below the Withers, and so hurt and pinch his Shoulders, or occasion Sit-fasts, which are difficult to cure.

So

So likewiſe if the Hind-bow of the Saddle preſs at its Points, then it will not come cloſe enough to his Back above; and if it reſt too cloſe upon his Back above, then it will be too eaſie at the Points, and ſo quickly ſpoil the Horſe where it preſſeth moſt.

The Stuffing of the Saddle ſhould be of Deer's-Hair, or the long Hair of Horſe's Manes and Tails, or even that of the Tails of Oxen, which does not harden near ſo much with the Sweat, as the ordinary Hair of Oxen and Cows; and ſome uſe well-dried Moſs, as leaſt apt to harden with Sweat.

When the Saddle is placed too forward, the fleſh of the Shoulder will appear raiſed at the Points of the Fore-Bow when the Horſe is in motion. The ſame will happen if the Pannels be too much ſtufft before, or that the Toes of the Fore-bow be too narrow and ſtrait. The *Fore-bows* ſhould be always diſtant from the Withers two or three Fingers breadth, and when you perceive they lie too near, you ſhould immediately rectify it, by ſtuffing that part of the Pannels called their Breaſts or Paps.

If your Horſe be low before, or the Fore-bow of your Saddle too wide, or the Pannels too much ſtuff'd behind, ſo that you muſt have recourſe to a Crupper, take care that it be neither too ſtrait drawn, nor too ſlack, and that the Buckle do not gall him by reſting upon his Reins.

The *Dock-piece* ſhould be large and full, rather than too ſmall, and let it be greaſed every Day if he gall beneath the Dock, and waſh the Sore with Water and Salt, or good Brandy, which is the moſt ſoveraign Remedy, if the Horſe will ſuffer it.

The *Breaſt-plate* ſhould be alſo of a juſt length, and the Buckles ſo placed as not to gall him.

Some Riders do gall a Horſe's Sides below the Saddle, with their Stirrop-Leathers, eſpecially if he be lean; to hinder it, you muſt fix a Leather Strap

between the Points of the Fore and Hind-Bows of the Saddle, and make the Stirrop-leathers paſs over them.

Let your Stirrop-leathers be ſtrong, as alſo the Stirrop-irons, which ſhould be pretty large, that you may the ſooner quit them in caſe of a Fall.

Having obſerved theſe Precautions, begin your Journey with ſhort Marches, eſpecially if your Horſe have not been exerciſed in a long time. Suffer him to piſs as often as you find him inclin'd; and not only ſo, but invite him to it. But excite not your Mares to piſs, becauſe their Vigour will be thereby diminiſhed. During your whole Journey let him drink of the firſt good Water you meet with after ſeven in the Morning in Summer, and after nine or ten in Winter. I call that good Water which is neither too quick and piercing, nor too muddy and ſtinking. This you are to do, unleſs you deſign to gallop him a long time after drinking; for in that caſe you muſt forbear, although it be the cuſtom in *England* to run and gallop their Horſes after drinking, which they call *Watring-courſes*, to bring them, as they ſay, in Wind; yet it is the moſt pernicious and hurtful Practice for Horſes that a Man can imagine, and many of their Horſes become purſy by it.

While he is drinking, draw up his Head five or ſix times, moving him a little betwixt every Draught; and although he be warm and ſweating very much, yet if he be not quite out of breath, and that he have four or five Miles to ride, he will be better after drinking a little than if he had drank none at all. It is true indeed, that if the Horſe be very warm, you ſhould at the coming out of the Water redouble your pace, or make him go at a gentle Trot, to warm the Water in his Belly.

You are thus to let him drink all the while you are travelling, becauſe if he be hot or ſweating when you come to bait, you muſt let him ſtand a long

long time before you can give him any Drink, without endangering his Life; and when you take off the Bridle, his exceſſive Thirſt will hinder him from eating, ſo that an hour or two will be elapſed before he offer to touch his Meat, which is almoſt all the time a Man can well allow for a Bait at Noon, and to depart again with the Horſe in this condition before he hath either eat or drank, will make him but very unfit to travel.

It is alſo good to ride very ſoftly for a quarter or half an Hour before you arrive at your Inn, that your Horſe not being too warm, nor out of breath when you put him into the Stable, you may immediately unbridle him. But if your Buſineſs requires you to put on ſharply, you muſt then, if the Weather be warm, let him be walked in a Mans Hand, that he may cool by degrees: And if it be very cold, then let him be covered with ſome Cloaths and walked up and down in ſome place free from the Wind. But if you have not the conveniency of a ſheltred Walk, ſtable him immediately, and let his whole Body be well rubb'd and dried with Straw. And do not unbridle him until he be pretty dry, and have recovered his Wind; and during that time you ſhall ungirt him, take off his Crupper, ſlack the Breaſt-plate, and put ſome freſh Straw betwixt the Saddle and his Back to refreſh and eaſe him. Then ſhake down freſh Litter beneath him to oblige him to ſtale or piſs; for moſt good Horſes do always piſs when they are firſt put in the Stable, and find the Litter beneath them.

Although moſt People will have their Horſes Legs rubb'd down with Straw as ſoon as they are put in the Stable, thinking thereby to ſupple their Legs, yet it is one of the greateſt Abuſes can be committed, and produces no other Effect but to draw down upon the Legs thoſe Humours which are already ſtirr'd up by the Fatigue of the Journey. But where-

as

as it may be objected, that the Humour which falls down, is diſſipated by Tranſpiration through the Pores, which are open'd by this rubbing of the Legs: To this I anſwer, That the Humour indeed does in ſome meaſure rarifie, but that it cannot be all diſcuſſed that way, having too groſs a Body for it; ſo that the remaining part of the Humour inſinuates it ſelf as a Vapour amongſt the Nerves, which is afterwards by the Cold condenſed into a Water, and this Water into a kind of viſcous Humour, which cannot be diſpelled by rubbing; becauſe being done in a time when all the Humours are in Agitation, it draweth them down, and inſtead of giving eaſe, or being any ways beneficial to the Horſe, is extremely prejudicial and hurtful. Not that I diſapprove the rubbing Horſes Legs, upon the contrary I very much approve of it, only I would not have it done at their firſt arrival, but when they are perfectly cooled.

If before you arrive at the Inn you meet with any Ford, ride your Horſe through it two or three times, but not ſo deep as the Water may come up to his Belly. Now this Water will not only cleanſe his Legs of Mud, but the coldneſs thereof will bind up the Humours, and prevent their deſcent.

Being arrived at your Inn, aſſoon as he is partly dried, and ceaſes to beat in his Flanks, let him be unbridled, and his Bitt waſhed, cleanſed and wiped, and let him eat his Hay at pleaſure.

If your Horſe hath been very warm, and that you had not the conveniency of letting him drink upon the Road, he will when unbridled eat but very little; you muſt therefore give him his Oats waſhed in Ale or Beer, or ſome of them only, if you intend to feed him again after he hath drunk.

Many are of Opinion that People ſpoil their Horſes by giving them Oats before their Water; becauſe, ſay they, the Water makes the Oats paſs too ſoon,

ſoon, and ſo undigeſted out of the Stomach. I again think, that although it be the common Cuſtom not to do it till after; yet it is good to feed with Oats both before and after, eſpecially if they be warm and have been hard rid, for they will be a great deal the better for it, and not at all in danger of becoming ſick.

The Duſt and Sand will ſometimes ſo dry the Tongues and Mouths of Horſes, that they loſe their Appetite: In ſuch caſe give them Bran well moiſtned with Water, to cool and refreſh their Mouths, or waſh their Mouths and Tongues with a wet Spunge to oblige them to eat.

The Preſervation or Deſtruction of Horſes depends much on the Water they drink when travelling. That which is leaſt quick and penetrating is beſt. A River is preferable to a Spring, and a Spring or Fountain to a Draw-well: But if a Man be neceſſitated to let his Horſes drink of ſuch penetrating Waters, he ſhould cauſe the Water to be ſet in the Sun, or warm ſome of it to correct the ſharpneſs of the reſt: Or it may be a little corrected by ſtirring it about with the Hand, or throwing a little Hay amongſt it. But if the Water be extremely quick and piercing, mix it with a little warm Water, or Wheat-bran, which will ſufficiently correct it.

The preceding Directions are to be obſerved after moderate Riding: But if you have rid exceſſively hard, unſaddle him, and ſcrape off the Sweat with a Sweating Knife or Scraper, holding it with both your Hands, and going always with the Hair. Then rub his Head and Ears with a large Hair-cloth; wipe him alſo between his Fore and Hind-Legs. In the mean while his Body ſhould be rubbed all over with clean Straw, eſpecially under his Belly, and beneath the Saddle, until he be throughly dry. Then ſet on the Saddle again, and cover him; and if you have a warm place, let him be gently led up

and

and down in it for a quarter of an Hour; but if not, let him dry where he ſtandeth.

Let him not drink until he be throughly cooled, and have eat ſome Oats. For many by drinking too ſoon, have either died by it, or become very ſick. A Horſe after violent Labour, will never be the worſe by being kept half a day from drinking, but may die by drinking an Hour too ſoon.

Set the Saddle in the Sun, or by the Fire, that the Pannels of it may be dry, rather than ſet it upon his Back next Day all wet, and let the Pannels be beaten with a Rod, that they may not harden and hurt the Horſe.

At the taking off the Saddle, you ſhould feel your Horſes Back, if he be pinched or galled. You may diſcover it better when he hath ſtood an Hour or two unſaddled, by the ſwelling of the Part oppreſſed. If it be only ſwelled, fill a Bag with warm Dung, and tie it upon the Swelling, which will not only hinder its increaſe, but perhaps alſo quite diſcuſs it: Or rub and chafe the Swelling with good Brandy or Spirit of Wine; and when you have ſoak'd the place well with it, ſet fire with a lighted Paper to what remains upon it; and when the Fire of its own accord extinguiſhes, then the Swelling will alſo diſappear. But if the Skin be cut, waſh it with warm Claret, mixed with a fourth part of Sallad Oil or Freſh-Butter; or bathe it frequently with Brandy if the Horſe will endure it.

Some, to prevent a Horſe's galling, do take a Hind's Skin well garniſh'd with Hair, and adjuſt it neatly beneath the Pannel of the Saddle, that the Hair of the Skin may be next to the Horſe. Now this doth not harden with Sweat, and ſo not only prevents galling, but is good for ſuch Horſes as have been lately cured, who would otherwiſe gall anew again.

When Horſes are arrived at an Inn, a Man ſhould before they are unbridled, lift up their Feet to ſee if they

they want any of their Shoes, or if thoſe which they have, do not reſt upon their Soles; and pick and clear them of the Earth and Gravel which may be got betwixt their Shoes and Soles.

If you water them abroad, ſo ſoon as they return from the River, cauſe their Feet to be ſtopped with Cow-dung, which will eaſe the Pain in their Feet: And if it be in the Evening, let the Cow-dung remain in their Feet all Night, to keep them ſoft and in good condition.

But if your Horſe have brittle Feet, it will be neceſſary to anoint his Fore-feet at the on-ſetting of the Hoofs with Butter, Oil or Hog's-greaſe before you water him in the Morning; and in dry Weather they ſhould be greaſed alſo at Noon.

So ſoon as you give your Horſe Oats it is good to leave him alone; for a vigorous Horſe, ſo long as there is any Perſon behind him, will not fail to look about him, and ſo loſe many of his Oats, which at that time fall from his Mouth. If he eat his Oats too greedily, ſpread them in the Manger, that he may neither eat them in ſuch haſte, nor ſwallow them unchawed.

Many Horſes aſſoon as unbridled, inſtead of eating, lay themſelves down to reſt, becauſe of the great Pain the have in their Feet, ſo that a Man is apt to think them ſick; but if he look to their Eyes, he will ſee they are lively and good; and if he offer Meat to them as they are lying, they will eat it very willingly; yet if he handle their Feet he will find them extremely hot, which will diſcover to him that it is in that part they ſuffer. You muſt therefore obſerve if their Shoes do not reſt upon their Soles; which is ſomewhat difficult to be certainly known without unſhoing them: But if you take off their Shoes, then look to the inſides of them, and you may perceive that thoſe Parts which reſt upon the Soles are more ſmooth and ſhining than any other.

ther. You are therefore to pare their Feet in thoſe Parts, and fix on the Shoes again, anointing the Hoofs, and ſtopping the Soles with ſcalding-hot black Pitch, or Tar.

Horſes which have tender Feet, commonly lie down to reſt as ſoon as unbridled, becauſe of the great Pain in their Feet. By tender Feet, I mean ſuch as have low Heels, or whoſe Feet have but little thickneſs betwixt the Sole and the Hoof, in that part of the Foot which is about two Fingers breadth or leſs above the Toe or Fore-part of it; alſo thoſe which have too little Feet, or which have cloven Quarters, or are Hoof-bound, or have their Hoofs circled; and laſt of all, thoſe which have flat Feet.

You ſhould alſo look on your Horſe's Dung; if it be too thin, it may be a ſign, that either the Water which he drunk was too cold and piercing, or that he drunk too greedily of it. If there be amongſt his Dung whole Grains of Oats, either he hath not chewed them well, or hath a Weakneſs in his Stomach. And if his Dung be black, dry, or come away in very ſmall and hard pieces, it is a token that he is over-heated in his Body.

Laſtly; Before you leave him, ſee that he be ſo tied as that he may lie down with eaſe, and that his Halter be neither too long nor too ſhort.

CHAP. XIX.

Directions for preſerving Horſes after a Journey

WHen you are arrived from a Journey, immediately draw the two Heel-nails of the Fore-feet, and if it be a large Shoe, then four. And two or three Days after you may blood him in the Neck, and feed him for ten or twelve Days with Bran

Bran only, without giving him any Oats, keeping him well litter'd. The reaſon why you are to draw the Heel Nails is, becauſe the Feet ſwell, and if they were not thus eaſed, the Shoes would preſs and ſtraiten them too much. It is alſo good to ſtop them with Cow-dung, but do not take the Shoes off, nor pare the Feet, becauſe the Humours are drawn down by it.

The following Bath will much preſerve your Horſe's Legs. Take Cow or Ox-dung, and make it thin with Vinegar, ſo that it be but of the conſiſtence of thick Broth, and adding to it a handful of ſmall Salt, rub his Fore-Legs from the Knees, and Hind-Legs from the Gambrels by chafing them well with and againſt the Hair, that the Remedy may penetrate and adhere to them, and that they may be all covered over with it: And thus leave him till Morning, not wetting his Legs, but giving him his Water that Evening in a Pail.

The next Morning lead him to the River, or waſh his Legs with Well-water, which is alſo very good, and will keep his Legs from Swelling. Many times when I have had no Vinegar, I have made uſe of ſimple Water, and it ſucceeded very well.

Thoſe who to recover their Horſe's Feet, make a Hole, which they fill with moiſten'd Cow-dung, and keep their Fore-feet in it, during the ſpace of a Month or ſo, do very badly; becauſe altho' the continual moiſture which is amongſt the Cow-dung cauſes the Hoof to grow, yet it dries and ſhrinks in ſo extreamly when out of that place, that it ſplits and breaks like Glaſs, and the Foot immediately ſtraitens. For I aſſure you that Cow-dung, contrary to the Opinion of many People, ſpoils a Horſe's Hoofs: It doth indeed moiſten the Sole, but drieth up the Hoof, which is of a different nature from it. Therefore to recover a Horſe's Feet, you are rather in place of Cow-dung to fill a hole with

with wet blue Clay, and make him keep his Fore-feet in it for a Month.

When a Man hath rode a Horſe ſo extreamly hard that he fears foundring, the beſt method he can take, after he hath led him a little in ones hand, and otherways ordered him, as I have already directed, is, to take two Quarts of Vinegar, with two Pounds of Salt, and mixing them well together cold, bathe and rub hard the Horſe's Fore-legs with it for about half an Hour; then pour into his Feet ſome Oil of Bays ſcalding hot, and upon the Oil hot Aſhes, above which put Hurds or courſe Flax, with thin ſlices of Wood fixed croſs-ways above it, to keep all faſt: But if you can have no Oil of Bays, then take either the Oil of Walnuts, Rape-ſeed, or that of Fiſhes, but Oil of Bays is by far the beſt.

CHAP. XX.

How to recover Horſes which are haraſſed and lean after a long Journey.

MOſt Horſes that are fatigued or over-rid, and made lean by it, have their Flanks altered, without being Purſy, eſpecially vigorous Horſes that have wrought too violently. There is no better method to recover them, than to give them in the Morning half a Pound of Honey very well mixed with ſcalded Bran; and when they ſhall eat well the half Pound, give them the next time a whole one, and then afterwards two Pounds every Day, continuing it until you find that your Horſes empty and purge well with it: And when you perceive that they no longer purge, then forbear to give them any more Honey. Or you may give them Powder of Liquoriſh in the ſcalded Bran for a con-

Pte

Part, C

table. 3 Genoual.

norancy

eed at the

e forme of

The Elbow, or rather shoulder

y

orb

may g

Bran for

con-

considerable time. And to cool their Blood it will not be amiss to give them three or four Clysters. If their Flanks do not recover, give them the Powder for Pursy Horses described in the *Second Part.*

If the Horse be very lean, it will be proper to give him some wet Bran every Night, over and above his proportion of Oats. Grass is excellent for him, if he be not Pursy.

If it be a Mare, give her a Horse, and if she never had a Foal before, it will enlarge her Belly.

Sometimes excessive Feeding may do more harm than good, by making Horses subject to the Farcy: Therefore give not too great a quantity at a time, and take a little Blood from them now and then.

Cut Straw, mixed with Oats is good to prevent a Horse's eating of them too greedily, and being of it self a very good Food, is mighty wholsome for them; that which is smallest cut is the best.

When a Horse begins to drink heartily, it is a certain sign that he will in a short time recover.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Art of Shooing, or the true and exact Method of Shooing all sorts of Feet, be they never so bad or deformed.

THere are two Methods of Shooing. The first is, to shooe for the advantage of the Foot, and according to its nature and Shape, to fit such Shoes to it as may make it better than it is; and if it be good, may preserve and keep it from becoming bad. The second Method is, that which disguiseth the Foot, and maketh it appear good when really it is not; which method, altho' in time it wholly ruines the Foot, yet Horse-Coursers who have no other design but to sell and put off their Horses, do

not much trouble themſelves about it; for provided their Horſes Feet but appear good, and they get them ſold, it is all they deſire.

I ſhall treat of the firſt only, wherein are four Rules to be obſerved in Shooing all ſorts of Feet whatſoever.

The firſt is, *Toe before*, and *Quarter behind*, or as we commonly ſay, *Before behind*, *Behind before*.

By *Toe before* is meant, that you may give the Nails a good hold upon the Toes of the Fore-feet, becauſe there the Horn is very thick, which it is not in the Quarters of the Fore-feet, for there the Horn is thin, and you would hazard the pricking your Horſe.

Quarter behind is that a Horſe hath the Quarters of his Hind-feet ſtrong, that is to ſay, the Horn thick, and ſo capable of ſuff'ring a good gripe by the Nails; but at the Toes of the Hind-feet you will immediately meet with the Quick, becauſe the Horn is but thin in that part; and therefore Smiths ſhould put no Nails at all juſt in the Toes of the Hind-feet, but only in their Quarters.

The ſecond Rule is, *Never to open a Horſe's Heels*. People call it opening of the Heels, when the Smith in paring the Foot, cutteth the Heel low, and cloſe almoſt to the Fruſh, and taketh it down within a Finger's breadth of the Coronet, or top of the Hoof, ſo that he ſeparates the Quarters at the Heel, and by that means weakens and takes away the ſubſtance of the Foot, making it to cloſe and become narrow at the Heels. Now this which they call opening, would be more properly called cloſing of the Heels; for the roundneſs and circumference of the Foot being cut, by doing that which they call opening of the Heels, which is to cut them wholly away, they are no longer ſupported by any thing; ſo that if there be any weakneſs in the Foot, it

it will of neceſſity make it ſhrink and ſtraiten in the Quarters, which will quite ſpoil the Foot.

The third Rule is, *To make uſe of as thin and ſmall Nails as poſſible*, becauſe the Nails that are thick and groſs make a large Hole, not only when they are driving, but alſo when they are riveting: For being ſtiff, they ſplit the Horn, and take it away with them. Neither can a tender Foot be ſhod with ſuch big Nails, without hazard of pricking, eſpecially if there be but little Horn to take hold of: But Smiths, to prevent this, pierce their Shoes too near the edge, which will in time ruine the Foot.

The fourth Rule is, *To make the lighteſt Shoes you can*, according to the ſize of your Horſe, becauſe heavy Shoes ſpoil the Back-ſinews, and weary the Horſe; and if he happens to over-reach, the Shoes being heavy are more eaſily pulled off. Thoſe who think it frugality to ſhoe with thick and heavy Shoes, and ſeldom, are deceived, for they loſe more by it than they gain; for thereby they not only ſpoil the Back-ſinews, but loſe more Shoes than if they had been light.

CHAP. XXII.

How to pare the Feet well, fit the Shoes, and drive the Nails.

DO not pare your Horſe's Feet almoſt to the Quick, as ſome People do, who think thereby to prevent the ſo frequent Shooing of their Horſes. But if you know that your Horſe's Hoofs are ſmooth and tough, you may with the more confidence pare his Soles reaſonably near.

The Foot thus pared, you muſt fit a Shoe to it, which muſt be neither too broad nor too narrow in the Web, neither muſt its Spunges extend any far-

ther than the Heel, (the Spung is that part of the Shoe next to the Heel) but muſt follow the exact compaſs of the Foot, juſt to the corners of the Fruſh, and they muſt not appear much upon the outſides of the Hoofs at the Heels neither; as thoſe Smiths who pretend to be very underſtanding, would make us believe, by ſaying, that it preſeryeth and ſupporteth the Heel: But the middle of the Spunge muſt be placed juſt upon the middle of the end of the Quarter which touches the corner of the Fruſh, and is called the Heel, and which it is to be ſuppoſed you have not pared; for as I told you, the Heels muſt never be pared. Now the middle of the Spunges being placed upon the extremities of the Quarters, which form the Heel, and touch almoſt the Fruſh, muſt not reach any further, and then your Horſe will be ſhod both for his own eaſe, and the benefit of his Foot; for he will never become Hoof-bound, neither will he over-reach, by reaſon of the Spunges of his Fore-feet-Shoes being ſet equal with his Heels, and not ſuffer'd to exceed them.

Thoſe who make the Spunges of their Horſe's Shoes too long, not only fatigue and weary them, and make them over-reach, but alſo ruin and ſpoil their Feet, and are the occaſion of their becoming Hoof-bound: Thoſe again that are too ſhort, make a Horſe go leſs at his eaſe; but your Horſes Shoes will never be too ſhort, if they follow the whole compaſs of his Feet, to the ends or corners of their Fruſhes and no further.

The Shoe ſhould not preſs upon the Sole at all, but ſhould reſt equally and exactly round the whole Foot upon the Horn, which is about the thickneſs of a ſmall Finger's breadth, taking notice, that if the Shoe, upon the outer edge of that ſide next the Horſe's Foot, have any riſing or unevenneſs in it, and that if you beat it not down, and make it level with the reſt before it be ſet on, it will reſt upon the

the Horn, and certainly ſpoil the Hoof; for that raiſed edge being higher than the reſt of the Shoe, there will no other part of it reſt upon his Hoof but it, which will certainly ſpoil it. The Horn round the Foot is at moſt no thicker than a ſmall Finger's breadth, which is alſo generally the thickneſs of the reſt of the Hoof.

If the Shoe reſted upon any other part of the Foot but the Horn, it would make the Horſe to halt, and then you would be neceſſitated immediately to take off his Shoe, as it will often fall out when the Shoe reſts upon the Sole, eſpecially if the Sole be thin and weak; but if the Sole be thick and ſtrong, altho' the Shoe reſt upon ſome part of it, yet will not the Horſe halt, as you may remark in Shooing with the Panton-ſhoes hereafter deſcribed, which Shoes reſt almoſt always upon the Sole, or upon the corners of the Fruſh; and which being thick and ſtrong, is the reaſon that the Horſe but very ſeldom halteth with them.

Having thus fitted the Shoe, you ſhall drive two Nails in it, and then let his Foot go to the Ground, to ſee if the Shoe be right placed, then you ſhall drive the reſt of the Nails equally, and not the one higher than the other (which is called *Driving muſically*) obſerving nevertheleſs, that the Nails of the Heels of the Fore-feet be low enough driven, for fear of meeting the Quick, which in the Hinder-feet is juſt contrary, for there the Heels are ſtrongeſt.

The Nails being driven, and cut over with the Pincers or Nippers, before that you rivet them you muſt take the Cutting-knife, which is a piece of Steel about half a Foot long, having the one edge ſharp, and the other about the thickneſs of two Crowns, with which you muſt cut the Horn that over-paſſes the Shoe, by ſtriking with the Hammer upon the back of the Cutting-knife, until you have

taken away all the Horn you deſire. The Nails being driven and cut over, before that you rivet them take the Cutting-knife again, and cut away the ſmall pieces of Horn which the Nails have made to riſe in driving, to the end that the Rivets may be equal with the Horn; for beſides that it makes the Foot to appear handſomer, the Nails alſo faſten better, ſo that the Horſe can never cut himſelf with the Rivets, which will often happen if you obſerve not this Method.

As the Shoe weareth, the Nails by degrees ſink into it, ſo that the Rivets looſen and appear more above the Hoof, and if care be not taken to cut them as they riſe, they will lame the Horſe.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of low Heels, tender Feet, and other kinds of bad and imperfect Feet.

WHen you are paring a Horſe's Feet which hath low Heels, you muſt only pare the Toe without touching in the leaſt the Heel, and alſo it is good not to touch the Fruſh, unleſs it be beginning to corrupt, and then you muſt pare it flat; you muſt alſo cut the Toe with the Cutting-knife or Raſp only, and not with the Butteris.

People make only uſe of the Butteris, for to give the Shoe a ſeat after they have cut the Toe with the Cutting-knife, for Example, the breadth of one Finger or Thumb, if the Foot be too long at the Toe; in which caſe, you muſt alſo pierce the Shoe near the edge at the Toe, for fear of pricking, and ſo placing the Shoe after that faſhion, you will force the too great nouriſhment which went to the Toe, to ſtrengthen the Heels, and in twice or thrice Shooing, the Foot will come to take a good ſhape, and

and form, and also in the time that you restrain the Toe by cutting it, the Heel will strengthen. Now these kind of Feet growing only at the Toe, all the nourishment of the Foot goeth there, and so the Heel becometh always narrower, and daily weaker; but if you observe that which I tell you, to cut the Toe with the Cutting-knife, having only as it were blanched or cleaned the Sole with the Butteris, and that you put the Shoe at the Toe a Finger's breadth or an Inch back, according as the Toe is too much sprung, and that afterwards you cut away the Horn, I assure you the Foot will take quite another form or shape, which will be a great deal better, and the Heels will also strengthen.

But if your Horse's Heels be low and not narrow, and that the Frush be large or fat, with great difficulty will you keep it from touching the Ground, and then your Horse will be in danger of halting, especially when he is riding upon hard Ground.

To prevent it, I think there is no other Remedy than to give him Calkins, after the fashion of the point of a Hare's Ear, which is done by turning the insides of the Spunges the whole breadth of the Shoe, and making them after the fashion of Calkins; now these kind of Calkins will not do great harm to his Feet, and he will also go the more firmly with them upon the Street, or in slippery Ground; so by this means you will hinder his Frush to touch the Ground. It is not that I approve of Calkins, after whatever fashion they are made, the great Calkins are the worst, and those which spoil most a Horse's Feet; but these after the fashion of the point of a Hare's Ear are the least dangerous; and if People could also dispense with the want of these, it would still be so much the better.

But if the Horse which hath low Heels, have them also narrow near the Shoe, although that his Frush be large (which is not ordinary) you must

then give him no Calkins, neither after the faſhion of a Hare's Ear nor any other, but you muſt ſhoe him with *Panton*-ſhoes, with a narrow Spunge, and very thick in the inſide, that is to ſay, that it muſt ſlope very much from the inſide of the Shoe next his Foot to the outer edge, and place the ſpunge of the *Panton*-ſhoes upon the Heels, ſo that the thick edge of the Spunge may enter within the corners of the Fruſh, to preſs them out when they grow; cut his Toe with the Paring-knife, according as you ſhall find occaſion for it; and after he is ſhoed, keep his Feet in his Dung, being a little moiſten'd with Water, until he leave halting, for he will for a few Days have pain in his Feet until he be accuſtomed to wear theſe kind of Shoes, afterwards you may work him, for in a ſhort time he will be accuſtomed to them; and after thrice ſhooing, the Heel, and alſo the whole Foot, will have taken a good form or ſhape.

The Horſe-Courſers, to cover this Imperfection of having low Heels, make the Spunges of the Shoes great and thick, to ſupply the want of the Heels, which is indeed a very good Invention to ſpoil the Heels for good and all, for it is good for nothing but this, that it maketh thoſe who are ignorant buy ſuch Horſes, without taking notice of their having low Heels; and the Horſe-Courſers have no other deſign by it but this, when they ſhoe their Horſes after that faſhion; it doth, however, well enough for ſuch Horſes which have their Heels but a little low, to beat down the ends of the Spunges with a Hammer, to thicken and ſquare them beneath, for it will raiſe their Heels, and make them go better in the Streets while their Shoes are new, but that will not give their Feet a good ſhape: In a word, low Heels with a very large Fruſh, are thoſe kind of Feet which People cannot help by ſhooing, and I look upon them as the worſt of all Feet, becauſe they

they cannot at all, or but very rarely, be recovered.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of flat Feet, and such as have their Soles round and high.

THose Horses which have Flat-feet, if they be young, their Feet will always spread, and so be in danger of growing ill-shaped, therefore they should be Shoed after the manner following, to keep them insensibly from spreading, especially if the Horse be worth your pains: Above all things, if your Horse hath flat Feet, you should bar the Pastern-Veins: This operation is good, but however it is not absolutely necessary, unless your Horse hath his Soles round and high, yet this is not to say, but that the doing of it contributes very much to the amendment of Flat-feet; for to do it, you must know, that in the Pastern there are two Veins below the Joint, the one upon the inside, and the other upon the out; which Veins must be barred, that so you may put a stop to the superfluous Humour, which falleth down upon the lower part of the Foot, and causeth the Sole to grow round and high; and also the Coffin-bone or little Foot, which is the Bone in the middle of the Coffin, to push it self down, which, through time, maketh the Foot become round at the Sole; the Veins in the Fore-legs being stopped in four places, and the Wounds beginning to heal up, which will be seven or eight Days after you have barred the Veins, you must do what followeth.

But first, to bar the Pastern-Veins right, you must only tye them near the Joint with a fine Thread, to the end that you retard not their cure; a little Silk

is

is very good for that purpoſe: then cut the Vein beneath and let it Blood; if it bleed too long, you may bind up the Orifice with a large Band and a Compreſs.

If for Flat-feet you bar the Veins, you will come ſooner to your purpoſe than if you had omitted it; but that doth not hinder this following Method to be very good, although you had not barred them.

You muſt then forge according to the following Figure, A. C. D. F. (*See Plate third, Fig.* 9.) Shoes very ſtrait in the Quarters, and which do not turn in a Circle, nor follow at all the ſhape of the Quarters of the Foot, but whoſe branches from the Toe A. D. to the Spunges, C. F. muſt be very ſtreight, and you muſt pierce the Holes, G. H. I. L. very near the edge: You muſt alſo place thoſe Shoes ſo, that you may have about the thickneſs of two Crowns of Horn to take away at the Toe A. D. with the Cutting-knife, and they having their branches ſtreight, there will without doubt be a good deal of Horn to take off at the ſides A. B. C. and D. E. F. which are retrenched by the ſhape of the Shoe within the pointed Line, as you may ſee in the Figure.

Having then a Shoe made after this faſhion altogether flat, and the branches near ſtreight, pare his Foot very gently, and fit the Shoe to it; for although it reſt a little upon the Sole it matters not, (becauſe by no means you muſt make your Shoe vaulted or hollow) and faſten the Shoe with very thin Nails, taking but a ſlender hold for fear of preſſing the Vein, or meeting with the quick; your Horſe being ſhod with this kind of Shoe which I have been ordering, put a Reſtrictive in his Foot 'made of Chimney-ſoot and Turpentine boiled to-'gether upon a ſlow Fire, always ſtirring it until 'it be pretty thick, and apply it ſcalding hot, with

'Hurds

'Hurds above it; and becauſe when the Shoes are 'not vaulted, you will have difficulty to get in 'thin ſlices of Wood to keep faſt the Reſtrictive, '(becauſe the Shoe will almoſt touch the Sole) there-'fore after you have put in the Hurds, you muſt tye 'a Cloth about his Foot to hold all faſt: This Re-ſtrictive will help to put a ſtop to the too much growing of the Sole, and will alſo contribute very much (with the ſtopping of the Paſtern-Veins) to put a ſtop to all the ſuperfluous nouriſhment which went to the Sole and Coffin-bone; put alſo upon the Coronet, by way of a Plaiſter ſome Hoof-ſalve ſpread upon Hurds, applying it to the onſet of the Hoof to cauſe his Foot to grow, and renew the Plai-ſter every four Days, which doth a great deal bet-ter than only to anoint his Feet every Day, becauſe the Ointment being tyed on with Hurds, and al-ways remaining upon the Horn, hath more time to moiſten it and cauſe it to grow, than the ſimple anointing of it.

You muſt not work your Horſe for five or ſix Days, that ſo he may be uſed to his Shoes, which will at the firſt preſs his Feet; but if after that time he mean it, you muſt then let him alone until he be wholly accuſtomed to them: And if he halteth extraordinarily, it's like that he may be then prickt, to which you muſt take good notice, and cure it, as I have taught you in the *Second Part*. You muſt continue to ſhoe him after this method every New-Moon, always by degrees making the Shoes ſtraiter, not much at the Quarters, but conſiderably at the Toe, A. D. which you muſt retrench and keep ſhort by all means imaginable, as you ſee it marked in the Figure by the circular Line A. D. which is marked with Points: After three or four Shoeings your Horſe will have changed the ſhape of his Feet, which was unpleaſant, into a better: Now it is a certain Rule, that you muſt always make uſe of this

way

way of Shooing, three or four Days after the change of the Moon, to cauſe your Horſe's Hoof to grow the better, which is what we deſire.

If the Feet which grow too much at the Sole, have the Heels ſtraiter nearer the Shoe than above, then you muſt not retrench the ſides of the Foot, A. C. D. F. as I deſired you before, but you muſt ſhoe them with Panton-ſhoes to enlarge their Heels; for beſides, that theſe Shoes will open the Heels, they will alſo hinder the Sole to grow ſo much downwards, and ſo the Foot will take a better ſhape: When you ſhoe with a Panton-ſhoe, it muſt follow the circumference of the Foot, and the Branches muſt not be ſtreight; you muſt alſo keep the Sole ſtrong, without taking any thing almoſt from it, otherways your Horſe will halt; you are therefore to take nothing from the Sole, Heels, nor any other part when you ſhoe him, but only the Cruſt, or that which riſes like a ſcurf, and you muſt always ſhorten the Toe by cutting it with a Cutting-knife, proportionably as you ſhall find occaſion: Make the Shoe altogether flat, without vaulting it, for although it reſt a little upon the Sole it matters not, becauſe you are to force the Foot to grow leſs: His Fore-feet being ſhod, cauſe him to ſtand with them all Day long amongſt his own Dung, being a little moiſtned, and let him not work for eight or ten Days, until he be accuſtomed to thoſe kind of Shoes; afterwards you muſt ſtep him abroad upon eaſie Ground, to ſtrengthen his Feet.

The reaſon why the Foot being reſtrained with this kind of Shooing, taketh its right ſhape again, is becauſe thoſe Horſes which have Flat-feet, and round Soles, have too much nouriſhment in their Soles, and particularly at their Toes, and too little at the upper part of their Feet: now that the Paſtern-Veins furniſh this ſuperfluous nouriſhment, is evident when People take out a Horſe's Sole, becauſe

cauſe to ſtop the Blood, which in great abundance floweth from the Foot, People are neceſſitated to tye the Paſtern with a Cord, that is, they preſs thoſe two Veins, which I have before ordered you to bar, and that tying ſtoppeth the Blood, which being ſtopped, and having no more paſſage to go to the under part of the Foot, which it did too much nouriſh and moiſten, it followeth of neceſſity that the Sole muſt dry and ſhrink in, to which the Panton Shoe will contribute very much; becauſe the opening the Heel near the Shoe, will alſo conſtrain the ſuperfluous nouriſhment, which went to the Sole and Toe, to remain above, and nouriſh the Heel which was dried; and by means of the Hoof-ſalve the Foot will be moiſten'd, and the nouriſhment kept there, which is what we deſired; and in the mean time the Heel enlarges, and the Toe and Sole ſhrink in, and grow leſs: This Method is alſo good for *Flanders* Horſes, whoſe Feet change the Horn, for in the time that their Feet alter, it giveth them a good ſhape, but if their Feet be already bad, you muſt take another courſe with them.

If the Horſe's Sole be round and lower than his Hoof, which happeneth more to ſome than to others, ſo that ſome will have their Foot ſo ill-ſhaped that it will reſemble an Oyſter-ſhell, and is juſt renverſed in a manner, ſo that it is impoſſible to ſhoe them without hollowing or vaulting their Shoes, which will make them go uneaſily, and alſo through time cauſe their Feet at the Soles to become round, like the ſegment of a Ball. The ſhorteſt and beſt remedy for ſuch Feet is to barr the Paſtern-Veins, and ſeven or eight Days after the operation to make him Panton-ſhoes with ſtrait Spunges, and extraordinarily thick on the inner edge; they muſt alſo be altogether flat, and not vaulted; for it is to be remarked, that almoſt all the round or high-ſoled Horſes have narrow Heels

near

near the Shoe, and the Smiths thinking to make them go eaſily, make them hollow Shoes, which reſt only upon the Horn in the out-ſide of the Heel, and by that means, becauſe the Shoes by degrees conſtrain the Foot, they make it grow daily ſtraiter at the Heel; the little Bone alſo which is in the middle of the Coffin preſſes downwards towards the Sole, the Toe grows long, and ſo the Feet become ill-ſhaped and unſerviceable; now to help and rectify all theſe Inconveniencies, the *Panton*-ſhoe being forged and pierced near the edge of the Toe, as I told you, you ſhall cut more or leſs from the Horſe's Toe with a Cutting-knife, as you ſhall think fit; then fit the Shoe ſo, that the ſlopings or thick parts of its Spunges may enter within the corners of the Fruſh, and being flat at the Toe that it may reſt upon the Horn; but although it reſt a little upon the Sole it matters not, and faſten it with thin Nails; alſo put into his Foot a Reſtrictive made of Chimney-ſoot and Turpentine boiled together, and anoint his Hoof with Hoof-ſalve; then let his Feet ſtrengthen and be eaſed of the Pain, which that new manner of Shooing will occaſion, and that for the ſpace of twelve Days or more until he leave halting; afterwards let him work by degrees, and after three or four Shoeings, if the Horſe be not old, his Foot will take a good ſhape. This which I ſpeak is not by ſpeculation, but founded upon a great many Experiences.

It is a great abuſe to vault Shoes when People may forbear it (and it may for the moſt part be omitted) becauſe the Foot being nailed and made faſt to the Shoe, it groweth and taketh the ſhape or form of the Shoe; and Nature finding that paſſage open, through the inclination which ſhe hath to furniſh a ſuperfluous nouriſhment to the under part of the Sole, preſſeth always that way, and is alſo helped by the hollow Shoe to give that round form

to the Feet, which rendreth a Horſe unſerviceable for the Street or upon hard Ground; ſo that People are neceſſitated to ſend them to draw the Plough, which had they wanted that fault, would have been good, and might have ſerved for a Coach.

It happeneth alſo that when a Horſe travelleth upon vaulted Shoes, he treadeth only upon the middle of the Shoe, for it cannot all equally touch the Ground, becauſe of its roundneſs, ſo that it hindreth the Horſe to go ſo firmly as otherwiſe he would, and alſo maketh him ſlip.

The ſureſt way therefore, is to rectifie ſuch bad Feet in the beginning, and eſpecially in the time when Horſes alter or change their Horn, which is the firſt ſix Months after they come from *Flanders*.

But ſuppoſing that your Horſe's Feet be yet in a condition to be helped, you muſt reſtrain their growth in the Soles, as I have ſhewn you for the Flat-feet; or if his Heels be narrow, ſhoe him with a Panton-ſhoe, and after the former faſhion, without vaulting or hollowing it; you muſt alſo pare but little from his Feet, and leave his Sole ſtrong, ſhorten his Foot at the Toe, and put theſe Panton-ſhoes upon him. If his Heels, I ſay, be narrow near to the Shoe, then put the Reſtrictive into his Foot which I ordered before; or otherwiſe let him ſtand with his Feet being ſhod after the faſhion I have been ſhewing you, in his own Dung, being kept a little moiſt that it may not heat, and let him ſtand ſo until he halt no more, always keeping the Dung moiſt upon which he ſtandeth; at the ſame time put about his Foot a Charge or Softner reaſonably warm, or Hoof-ſalve, as I have before ordered you. You muſt alſo renew, two or three times, the Application of the Reſtrictive, and the Charge or Hoof-ſalve, keeping him always ſhod after the former manner; but if his Foot, after Shooing be very high and round ſoled, you muſt then let him ſtand eight or ten Days upon his Litter.

If

If the Horſe have his Sole but a little raiſed, or that it be not as yet abſolutely round beneath, after twice or thrice Shooing it will be helped; but the more it is out of ſhape, the more time it will take to rectifie it: It is to be obſerved, that Flat-feet, at leaſt the moſt part of them, have their Heels narrow near the Shoe, ſo that the Smiths hollowing or vaulting very much their Shoes, make them reſt upon the out-ſides of the Heels, and by that means make them become narrower: Now quite contrary to this method, you muſt ſhoe your Horſes with *Panton*-ſhoes, ſo that cauſing their Heels to open, you will contribute to the ſhrinking in of the Sole and under part of the Foot, as I have told you before, and cannot tell you it too often.

But if your Horſe's Foot be extraordinary high or round in the Sole, you muſt, without delay, bar the Paſtern-Veins, which will be the only means to give a good ſhape to thoſe flat kind of Feet; for without this operation any other will have no great effect; becauſe the main deſign is to put a ſtop to that ſuperfluous nouriſhment which goeth to the Sole, and to force Nature to furniſh that nouriſhment to the upper part of the Foot, which the ſhooing with Panton-ſhoes will do, even without retrenching and cutting his Hoofs at the ſides, if you but only with the Cutting-knife cut and retrench his Toe, and that you keep his Sole ſtrong without almoſt taking any thing from it; ſo that being ſhod with Shoes that are not vaulted, although they reſt a little upon the Soles, yet they will not cauſe him to halt much, even though they be *Panton*-ſhoes: Afterwards fit the Shoe, and providing it reſt not altogether upon the Sole, it is enough, ſeeing you left the Sole expreſly for that purpoſe ſtrong enough, and faſten the Shoe with very thin Nails. "When he "is ſhod, you ſhall fill his Feet with Tar ſcalding "hot, or with the Reſtrictive before-mentioned, "or

" or otherwiſe keep them amongſt his moiſten'd Dung.

It's true, this is to keep the Horſe a long time without having any ſervice of him, but oftentimes for not taking that care of him, and giving that reſt, he becometh altogether unſerviceable, as I have ſeen a great many, for not taking notice of them in time: There are ſome which have ſuch kind of Feet that will yet be ſomewhat ſerviceable, but according as they need help, People take more or leſs care of them.

The firſt ſhooing of Coach-Horſes is of conſequence: So that you are then but to make the Horn level where the Shoe reſteth, and not to take any thing from the Sole, but as it were to clean and whiten it, becauſe it hath been already made too hollow; ſhoe him juſt, and pierce your Shoe a pretty diſtance from the edge, but you muſt drive your Nails low; for if you ſhould pierce your Shoe near the edge, the Nails would, in driving, ſplit the Horn, which hath been already too much weaken'd by the Horſe-Merchant, who had no other deſign but to make his Horſe's Feet appear hollow: you muſt then pierce your Shoe a pretty diſtance from the edge, ſo that the Nails may not eaſily ſplit the Horn; but for fear of pricking your Horſe, you are to drive them ſomewhat lower than ordinary, and drive a Nail juſt at the Toe, to the end that the Shoe may ſtay longer on without ſhifting it's place, and may remain ſtrait upon his Foot: You are not at all to retrench his Quarters nor open his Heels, but let the Shoe follow the compaſs of the Horſe's Foot, and by this means you ſhall preſerve his Feet, and they will be always good.

Thoſe Smiths who think to give eaſe to their Horſes, by enlarging their Shoes, or vaulting them a little, inſenſibly ſpoil their Feet, becauſe they follow the form of the Shoe, and ſo become miſhap'd;

for the more that you enlarge your Shoe at firſt, the more you muſt enlarge it the next Shooing, and that is the way abſolutely to loſe your Horſe; for it is far more difficult to rectifie your Horſe's Feet, and give them a good ſhape, when once deformed, than in the beginning, when they have good Feet, and their Horn altering, to preſerve them, becauſe they are then capable of receiving any form you intend to give them: Horſes which have big and large Feet, although they be not flat, yet are more ſubject to have them eaſily ſpoil'd than any other, if People take not care at every Shooing to retrench them, until the nature of the Horn be changed. This is what I thought good and neceſſary to be practiſed for this kind of bad Feet; I ſhall in the following Chapter continue to ſpeak of other ſorts of bad Feet than theſe I have already diſcourſed of.

CHAP. XXV.

How Horſes that are Hoof-bound, or narrow-heel'd, ſhould be ſhod.

I Have already ſhown, that a Hoof-bound Horſe, is a Horſe whoſe Heels ſo preſs the Bone within the Hoof, or the Coffin-bone, that they either make the Horſe to halt, or at leaſt hinder him to travel eaſily: To cure it, People take out the Horſe's Sole, and cleave his Fruſh, which ſhall be treated of in the *Second Part, Sect.* 2. or otherwiſe People remedy it by the help of Shooing; but when a Horſe is ill Hoof-bound, People oft-times gain time by taking out his Sole, provided that they cleave his Fruſh to facilitate it; but People, who have not had the experience thereof, can but with difficulty, at firſt, be perſuaded to make tryal of it.

The

The cauſes of this defect in the Feet are different; Horſes which have either ill-ſhaped, or too long Feet, are ſubject to grow Hoof-bound: they alſo become Hoof-bound when their Hoofs are too dry, and want nouriſhment to maintain the Horn; or if they be not right ſhod, their Heels will grow narrow, and ſo they will become Hoof-bound; after which they never go firmly, becauſe their Heels paining them, they endeavouring to eaſe themſelves as much as they can, and therefore go upon their Toes, which maketh the Back-ſinews to ſhrink, and their Legs, at the Knee or Paſtern-joint, to bend forwards, when they ſtand in their natural Poſture; and which, if you help not at the beginning, will make them halt to the Ground. It is diſcourſed at large in the *Second Part*, concerning the curing of Feet which are Hoof-bound.

To prevent and put a ſtop to this Infirmity, you muſt, when you ſhoe ſuch Horſes, take the Heels very much down without hollowing the Quarters, and pare the Fruſh flat; for all Horſes whoſe Heels are very much taken down, will not only never become Hoof-bound, but alſo they will have no *Bleymes* (which is an Inflammation occaſioned by bruiſed Blood within the Hoof, betwixt the Sole and the little Foot near to the Heel, where the Matter gathereth, and cauſeth the Diſorders which are explained in the *Second Part*) and alſo the Sinews of their Legs will be preſerved, eſpecially if they be Horſes which work in the Manage upon ſoft Ground.

You muſt alſo, beſides this Precaution, never open the Heels with the Butteris, as the Smiths do, who weaken the Quarters by preſſing the Butteris edge-ways forwards; they cut alſo the end of the ſaid Quarter or Heel, and take it away even within an Inch of the Hair, and they call that to open the Heels; but they are ſo far from doing that,

that, on the contrary, they take away the whole ſtrength of the Foot, which ſhould have been left altogether whole, and which is done if you open not the Heels, nor with the Butteris hollow the Quarters, but that you leave the Sole ſtrong, and let the Heel keep its full roundneſs: I ſhall have a great many People againſt me for maintaining this Propoſition, becauſe moſt Perſons, at leaſt all the Smiths, ſay that the Heels are to be opened; but that which they call opening the Heels, is downright taking away the ſtrength of the Heel, to weaken it, and put it in a condition to be ſoon Hoof-bound; but I would ask thoſe Gentlemen, if their Horſes ſhod after that manner do not become Hoof-bound, for I daily ſee thoſe Horſes Hoof-bound whoſe Heels have been kept very open after their faſhion; and I maintain, that of all the Horſes whoſe Heels I have cauſed to be taken down reaſonably, and afterwards ſhod, cauſing the Shoe to follow the roundneſs of the Foot, juſt to the corner of the Fruſh, and keeping their Soles ſtrong, not one of them became Hoof-bound. The proof of it is eaſie, and if you miſlike it, take you to your old method again; but I am ſure you will continue this manner of Shooing, when once you have made tryal of it: This which I affirm is grounded upon reaſon, for the Horn followeth the form of the Shoe, becauſe it is more ſolid than the Horn, and forces it to follow its ſhape when it grows: But if there be appearance that the Horſe's Heel will become narrow, then the ſureſt way is to ſhooe him with a half Panton-ſhoe, which is to turn the branch of the Shoe in towards the Horſe's Foot, as it is explained in the following Chapter, for that Shoe will keep his Quarters in a condition to open and become wider; the Horn growing, the Heel openeth, and therefore cannot ſtraiten, and ſo the Foot will continue well-ſhaped; for the Shoe which you put upon it will open the Heel,

Heel, becauſe either the Hoof muſt not grow, or the Heel will open, for the Spunge of the Shoe muſt follow the roundneſs of the Heel, and go no farther than the end of the Quarter; ſeeing then that the Shoe giveth the ſhape to the Foot, as without all doubt it doth, and the Shoe taking no other ſhape than it hath already, it being inflexible; and the Horn, by its flexibility, being capable of receiving any form, it follows neceſſarily, that the Shoe being a Half-panton Shoe, muſt force the Horn outwards, and ſo enlarge the Heel, which I ſhall explain in the following Chapter: But above all, you muſt take notice when you ſhoe after this method, that is to ſay, with Half-panton Shoes, that you keep always the Sole ſtrong.

Some People ſay, that the Fruſh ſhould not at all be pared, becauſe when it is entire it keepeth out the Quarters, and preventeth their coming together; truly, People ſhould not make the Sole hollow betwixt the Fruſh and the Quarters, but ſhould only pare the top of the Fruſh with the Butteris; which is called, to pare the Fruſh flat: If People did not at all pare the Fruſh, there would happen this inconveniency, that it would corrupt and become ſlinking, and ſo breed the *Teignes*, (which is when the Fruſh mouldereth away in pieces, as if the Moths had eaten it, and that it goeth the length of the Quick; for then the itching pain is ſo great, that it will often make a Horſe to halt: The word *Teigne* ſignifieth a Moth, becauſe when a Horſe hath that Infirmity, it looketh as if the Moths had gnawed his Fruſh) beſides that, there is no advantage in leaving it ſo high: We conclude then, that every time that the Foot is pared, the Heels and Fruſh ſhould be made flat without hollowing the Quarters, and that for the leaſt ſtraitning of the Heels, the Spunges ſhould be turned in towards the Sole, after the manner of the Half-Panton Shoe, as it is ex-

Plained in the next Chapter, (*See Plate* 3. *Figure* 11.) and the Heels very far from ſtraitning, will infallibly open and enlarge.

For thoſe Horſes which are Hoof-bound, after that you have pared their Feet, and left the Sole extraordinarily ſtrong at the Heels, you muſt have *Panton*-ſhoes, conform'd to the ſhape of *Fig.* 10. *Plate* 3.

I have called this Shoe the *Panton* or *Pantable-ſhoe*, to diſtinguiſh it from thoſe of any other faſhion or ſhape.

Now to forge a *Panton-ſhoe*, you muſt make the inner edge of the Spunge B, A, E, C, D, F, a great deal thicker than the outer edge I E, L F, ſo that betwixt A G, and D H, there may be two or three times the thickneſs that there is betwixt I E, and L F, as you may perceive by the thickneſs of the Spunge A B, C D. ſo that the Shoe riſes by degrees from G to A, and ſlopeth equally from A to E, the whole length A G, E I; and ſo you will find that the inner edge of the Spunge is a great deal thicker than the outer, for the thickneſs within marked A B, is three times thicker than E; it is the inſide of the Shoe, and that which toucheth the Sole which you ſee in the Figure; but there muſt be great care taken that the foreſaid thickneſs A B, C D, of the Spunge, diminiſh always towards G H, as you may perceive in the Figure, and all the reſt of the Shoe from I L, G H, round the Toe of the Shoe, be quite flat as other Shoes are, to the end that the Horſe's Foot may reſt upon it at eaſe: That which is repreſented to you by the Figure, is but the inſide of the Shoe next the Horſe's Foot, and the Spunges ſhould be ſtrait, or pretty near the other, that they may reſt upon the inſide of the corners of the Fruſh, and all the outſide of the Shoe, which is next the Ground, muſt be quite flat like to another Shoe, and then you ſhall have a right *Panton-ſhoe* for your Horſe. *See Plate* 3. *Fig.* 10.

It is neceſſary when you place the Spunges of this Shoe upon the end of the Heel, which is the extremity of the Quarter, that the ſaid extremity of the Quarter reſt upon the middle betwixt A E, D F, which is the ſloping part of the Spunge; but for all that, the inner edge of the Quarter A G, muſt not reſt wholly upon the Sole, although you kept it ſtrong enough, which ſhould be always done when you make uſe of thoſe kind of Shoes; for although People ſhould prevent as much as poſſible any Shoes reſting too much upon the Sole, yet they are ſometimes neceſſitated to ſuffer this Shoe, of this faſhion, to reſt a little upon the Heels, and even the inner edge of the Spunge almoſt always toucheth the Fruſh; therefore the Sole ſhould be always kept ſtrong, eſpecially at the Heels; afterwards anoint your Horſe's Feet, which are ſhod after this faſhion, with the Hoof-ſalve before-mentioned, or thoſe deſcribed in the Second Part, and keep his Fore-feet amongſt his moiſten'd Dung: If you continue this method, infallibly his Heels will open and enlarge; the Horſe at firſt, if you have weaken'd his Soles too much, may mean his Feet with theſe kind of Shoes, but his Feet will ſtrengthen through a little time and reſt: Theſe kind of Shoes are not fitted without a little Time and Pains; and the Smith muſt not be ſlothful to put the Shoe in the fire again, either to open or ſtraiten the Spunges, according as there is need for it, for that cannot be done at the very firſt; and there is no Smith that is able to fit and faſten two of theſe Shoes in leſs than an Hour, for the Shoe muſt follow exactly the ſhape of the Foot, as well at the Heel as at the Toe; and although the inner edge of the Spunge enter but the thickneſs of two Crown pieces within the Heel, it matters not; for, in a Months time, the Heel opening will cover it all; when the *Panton-ſhoes* are forged, fitted, and ready to be put on, they appear, to

thoſe who are ignorant, very ſtrait and narrow at the Heels, becauſe they follow the ſhape of the Foot, and therefore ſeem ridiculous to thoſe who know not the good of them.

The reaſon why the uſe of theſe kind of Shoes openeth the Heels, and helpeth Hoof-binding, is, that when the Heel groweth it is forced outwards by the Shoe, becauſe the Spunge which is thicker a great deal in the inner edge than in the outer, hindereth the Heel to cloſe and tend that way, and upon the contrary forceth it outwards, ſo that either the Hoof muſt not grow, or of neceſſity the Heels muſt enlarge and open, if the Shoes be right placed.

You muſt continue the ſhooing of him after this faſhion, until his Heels be well ſhaped and large, which will be infallibly after twice or thrice ſhooing; do it at the Change, or about the fourth or fifth Day of the new Moon: The uſe of theſe Shoes is admirable, in that they never ſhift upon the Feet, but remain firm in one place, being kept fixed by the thickneſs of the inner edges of the Spunges.

A Horſe ſhod after this faſhion, is many times unſerviceable for a little time, which muſt be allowed him to ſtrengthen his Feet, amongſt his moiſten'd Dung.

People muſt not think to travel with theſe kind of Shoes, at the beginning when a Horſe is ſhod with them, and before he be accuſtomed to them; for ſeeing they preſs the Foot, they would make him halt: but they may take the Air upon a Horſe ſhod after this faſhion, make him ride in the Manage, or do any other moderate exerciſe, providing it be upon ſoft Ground; and after the Horſe hath been a little accuſtomed with theſe Shoes, he will not halt with them, although you travel him.

If you have a Journey to make with a Horſe that is Hoof-bound, but doth not as yet halt with it, you

you must not at all take down his Heels when you shooe him, although I heretofore ordered you upon other occasions to do it; but, on the contrary, you must keep his Heels as strong as possible, and drive the Nails only in the Toe, for the Heel being high and narrow, you will not easily get them driven there, neither could your Horse suffer it; and then your Horse will travel with you as you please: Indeed this will not be the way to help his Hoof-binding, but, on the contrary, it will make it worse, it being only to make him perform his Journey that you do it.

If your Horse be so ill Hoof-bound that he halteth to the Ground with it, the best and readiest Cure is to take out his Soles, and put Shoes upon him which have long Spunges: The way of taking out the Soles is shown in the *Second Part, Sect.* 2. not but that these kind of Shoes, which I have been discoursing of, help, and will through time open his Heels, but that will be in four or five Months time; whereas if his Soles had been taken out, he would have been cured in three Weeks or a Month, providing that you took care to open his Heels, when the Sole was out, by cleaving the Frush, or by putting in a plate of Iron betwixt his Heels, so that it may keep them about two Inches, further asunder than they were before his Sole was taken out, and that by fixing that plate of Iron betwixt the two Quarters of the Foot near the Heel, because the Frush which is softer than the rest of the Foot, will yield and open, and so make the Heels in a condition to become large; but it is sooner done to give a stroke with an Incision-knife, and so to cleave and open the middle of the Frush down almost to the Pastern, to the end that that overture may make the putting in of some rolls of Linnen in the clift of the Frush (which must be first dipt in the healing Charge) the more easie to keep the Incision

ciſion very open; the Sole will grow again, which will keep out the Quarters; the Shoe which muſt be made large, to anſwer to the Foot which is already made large, will keep it ſo, and the Heels in growing will not cloſe or ſtraiten if the Horſe be right ſhod: This which I ſhow you is founded upon ſeveral Experiences I have made, which ſucceeded very well with me; for the Sole beginning to grow will keep out the Heels; and if there be need for it, you may afterwards ſhoe your Horſe with *Half-Panton* Shoes, as in the next Chapter.

There are ſome Horſes ſo very ill Hoof-bound, that although People have taken out their Soles, yet they can ſcarcely force out their Heels, to get that plate of Iron right placed, which ſhould keep them open and aſunder; for thoſe kind of Feet you muſt, when the Sole is taken out, force aſunder the Hoof at the Heels with the Nippers or Pincers, ſo that by forcing them, you may oblige them to ſeparate, but there muſt be great care taken in forcing the Quarters this way, that you do not ſeparate the Horn from the Heel, for then you would cauſe the Horſe to caſt his Quarters: After you have thus forced his Heels open with the Pincers, you muſt put in that plate of Iron, which reſembleth ſomewhat the blade of an old Knife, which will keep his Heels firm and open, until the Soles grow again, and ſo keep them out themſelves: But the abſolutely ſhorteſt way, is to cleave the Fruſh down almoſt to the very Paſtern, immediately after you have taken out his Sole; and after that the Shoe is faſten'd on, and the Charge or Apparel for cure put upon the Sole, you muſt fill that Clift very well with bolſters or rolls of Linnen, firſt dipt in the healing Charge, which muſt be put into it at the under part of the Paſtern, and afterwards tye all up with a cloath to keep them faſt, and keep always that clift very open until the Sole be wholly filled up again; after which,

which, if you ſhoe your Horſe with a *Half-Panton-ſhoe*, it will make his Heel become very large and well-ſhaped, which is eaſier done than to force the Quarters, by making uſe of the Plate of Iron abovementioned, although that method be alſo very good.

CHAP. XXVI.

How Horſes which have Clifts in their Quarters, commonly called Falſe-Quarters, are to be ſhooed.

FOr Horſes which have cloven or Falſe-Quarters, you muſt make a Shoe after the faſhion which I call the *Half-Panton-Shoe*, the uſe of it being good, I therefore thought fit to propoſe it to you; this method of ſhooing may alſo ſerve for Horſes whoſe Hoofs begin to cloſe and ſtraiten at the Heels, for it cometh near to the figure of the *Panton-ſhoe*, becauſe the Branch is turned upwards, which maketh the ſame ſlope that the *Panton-ſhoe* doth; but the ſide of the Shoe next to the Ground is not the ſame, becauſe there is but one edge of the Spunge, to wit, the outmoſt edge, which toucheth the Ground; whereas the under-ſide of the *Panton-ſhoe* is quite flat: Theſe kind of *Half-Panton-ſhoes* do not force out the Heels ſo ſuddenly as the whole *Panton-ſhoes*, and therefore are good to be made uſe of at firſt, to make the Heel ſpread.

The Shoe EF, GH, which is repreſented in the 11 *Fig.* of *Plate* 3. is a *Half-Panton-ſhoe*, which is to be put upon a Horſe which hath one or more Falſe-Quarters, and which conſequently hath narrow Heels; you muſt then make, eſpecially the whole Branches, and alſo the Spunges FB, DH, ſtronger than ordinary, afterwards turn them up ſo that AB, CD, may be higher than the outer edge EF, GH,

ſo

so you will find that betwixt AB and EF, the Shoe will slope outwards, also the other Branch CD, GH, will do the same; and the rest of the Shoe, FEGH, will be altogether flat upon the Ground as an ordinary Shoe; for I here represent to you the inner side of the Shoe, because the under side of the same Shoe, FEGH, must rest upon the Ground, the whole compass of the Shoe, FEGH: Now in vaulted Shoes the Spunges are turned quite contrary, for in them they are turned outwards towards the Ground, whereas in these they are turned into the Foot.

The Shoes for Hoof-binding, before-mentioned, have the inner edge of the Spunges a good deal thicker than the outer, whereas these have both the edges of equal thickness; but the dexterity is to turn the Spunges, so as to give them a right slope, and to make the Shoe hollow or vaulted next the Ground.

To set on and fit the *Half-Panton-shoe*, you must, when you pare the Foor, keep the Sole strong at the Heels, and so fit the Shoe, that the middle of the Heel, which maketh the extremity of the Quarters, may be set just upon the Spunges, FB, DH; always taking care that the inner edges of the said Spunges rest not wholly upon the Soles, but although they rest a little upon them it matters not; then drive your Nails neatly, and see that they be very thin in the shank.

When the Shoe is put on to remain, that is to say, when it is nailed and riveted, 'you must pour into his Foot Tallow and Pitch molten together, with 'Hurds and splinters of Wood above them, to keep 'all fast; and if you have the Oil of Bays, it will 'be very proper to put it alone scalding hot into his Foot, with Hurds and Splinters above it to keep it in, for it is such as we should have to penetrate, soften and stregthen the Sole, which People have a mind

mind to force the enlarging of, by the foregoing method of Shooing, or pour Tar ſcalding hot into his Foot; or, without making uſe of any of thoſe, keep his Feet amongſt his moiſten'd Dung, and let him always ſtand thus upon it until he leave halting, which will be within four or five Days, more or leſs; and during that time always anoint his Hoofs at the Coronets with Hoof ſalve; and although he perhaps halted before, becauſe of the pain which his Falſe-Quarter or narrow Heels gave him, yet this method of ſhooing will, from that time forwards, give him eaſe: The Falſe-Quarter or *Seyme* will ſolder and cloſe up to the very Hair, and the Horſe will recover; but if this method of ſhooing do not the buſineſs, have recourſe to the *Second Part*, where the cures of *Seymes*, or Falſe-Quarters are particularly treated of.

There are ſome Horſes, eſpecially your light kind of Horſes, which have unequal Heels, ſo that the one ſtandeth higher than the other, which is eaſily perceived, by looking to the Heels juſt at the Paſtern: There is no other help for them, but to make uſe of this way of Shooing with the *Half Panton-ſhoe*, or to take out their Soles and cleave the Fruſh to the very bottom; that ſo, when it groweth up again, you may keep the Heels at an equal height.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Shooing Horſes whoſe Fore-Legs, from the Knees to the Coronets go in a ſtrait line, and appear as if they were all of one piece; as alſo of thoſe, whoſe Paſtern joints bend ſo far forwards that they appear to be diſlocate.

THere are ſome Horſes, which when they are ſtanding in their natural ſituation, have their Legs from the Knees to the Coronets in a ſtrait Line, which muſt be recovered, either by Shooing, or, as, I ſhall ſhow you hereafter, and is done by taking the Heels very much down almoſt to the Quick, without hollowing the Quarters; which will force the Sinew to ſtretch, and the Paſtern-joint to retire into its place; if, when you take down the Heels, the Leg falleth not far enough back, and that the Horſe continueth to carry his Paſtern-joint too far forwards; you muſt then make the Shoe go beyond, or exceed the Toe half a Finger's breadth, and it muſt alſo be made thicker in that part than in any other; in the mean time, while you give him this kind of Shoe, anoint the back-ſinews of his Legs with the Ointment of Roſes, Ointment of Marſh-mallow, Ointment of Populion, and Honey, of each a like quantity mixed cold (which is called the Ointment of *Montpelier*, and deſcribed in the *Second Part*,) to make the back-ſinews ſtretch the more eaſily, and bring them to that condition wherein they ought to be: Horſes which have high Heels are more ſubject to this Infirmity than others.

When the Paſtern-joint goeth out of its place, by bending too far forwards, you muſt take down the Horſe's

Horſe's Heel to the very quick, without opening it, and give him a Shoe which muſt appear all round his Toe, two Fingers breadth without his Foot, as People ordinarily ſhoe the Mules, and anoint the back-ſinew of his Leg with the Ointment of *Montpelier*; for this way of Shooing ſtretcheth the Sinew, which violence would wrong it and occaſion ſome Swelling, if it were not aſſiſted by ſuch an Ointment as this, which hath the vertue to take away the Pain and ſoften it; and alſo at firſt, when he carrieth theſe kind of Shoes, it is proper to walk him up and down in ones hand, to aſſiſt the Joint to fall into its right place again, and not at all to travel him in hilly Ground, for in going up Hill the Sinew would ſtretch ſo much, that I aſſure you the Horſe would halt for having had it ſo violently ſtretched on a ſudden; you muſt therefore at firſt let his Sinew ſtretch by degrees upon plain Ground, and partly alſo in the Stable; but if the Joint be altogether advanced, with difficulty will he be cured of it, if it be not by cutting the Sinew, as I ſhall ſhew you hereafter, a little lower than the *Ars* (as the *French* call it) which is a Vein upon the inſide of each fore-Thigh a little below the Elbow, call'd the *Baſilick-Vein*, and by common Farriers the *Plat-Vein*.

If Horſes which have their Legs from the Knee to the Coronet in a ſtrait Line, and alſo thoſe which have their Paſterns already caſt forwards, do not recover by the method of ſhooing, which I have ſhown, you muſt then have recourſe to a manual Operation, which appeareth dangerous but is not: To perform which well, you muſt obſerve, that Horſes which are extreamly troubled with thoſe Infirmities I have been mentioning, have a Sinew or rather Muſcle, at the *Ars* or *Plat-Veins*, and a little below the place where they bleed Horſes in that part, which is near to the inſertion or joining of the Fore-Thigh with the

the Shoulder: That Sinew or Muscle is about the bigness of ones little Finger, very much stretched and stiff, and lieth strait up and down all along the Leg: Now, it is that Muscle or Sinew which maketh the motion of the Pastern joint, and being stretched after this fashion keepeth the Joint forwards, and hindereth it to be in its ordinary situation; a certain token that it doth so, is that those Horses which have neither of these two fore-named Infirmities, have not this Muscle stretched, but quite covered and hollow, so that People with difficulty can find it out; but in those who have them, this Muscle is found at the very first feeling, and it appeareth clearly to be stretched, and not as naturally it should. Having found out his Muscle, which is easily done, you must, with an Incision-knife, open the Skin downwards, four Fingers breadth below the *Ars* or Fore-Thigh Vein, then cut the Muscle or Sinew quite through cross-ways, not all at one cut, but by degrees, then turn your Incision-knife to the other side of it, and perfect the cutting of it by degrees, and not all at once, although you must at last cut it quite through; and after it is done, wash the Wound with Brandy, and put Salt in it, and work the Horse after he hath no more Swelling where you cut him, and that the Wound is healed up; and thus the Pastern will fall into its natural place by degrees, and if the operation hath been dexterously performed, the Horse will bleed but very little, and the Wound will also heal up of its own accord; there are some very sensible Horses which will be eight or ten Days without lying after this Operation, but People must not be surprized at it, seeing there is not the least hazard in it: Sometimes People in making this Operation, through carelessness, cut the *Ars* or Fore-Thigh Vein, when they have made the Incision too near the Vein, and then the Horse will bleed very much, but there is not the least

leaſt danger in it; let the Horſe bleed ſufficiently, then ſtop the bleeding, by filling the Orifice with Rabbet or Hare-wool, and afterwards ſow up the Skin in two parts; there will be gathered a little Matter, but by greaſing the Wound, in eight or ten Days the Horſe will be healed, and ſometime ſooner: Before that this Operation be made, the Horſe's Heels ſhould be very much taken down, and then ſhod with Planch-ſhoes, as the Mules are, and let him carry thoſe Shoes three or four Days before the Operation, and alſo walk abroad with them, that ſo he may be accuſtomed to them; after which you ſhall perform the Operation. And for the more ſecurity, that you may not cut the Fore-Thigh or *Plat-Vein*, you muſt be ſure to make the Operation four Fingers breadth lower than the Veins: Thus the operation will have more effect upon the Paſtern, and alſo you will not cut the Vein, and in eight or ten Days the Horſe will be recovered, the Wound healed up, and he will be in a better condition to travel than formerly.

People make the like operation upon Horſes which have their Paſterns altogether caſt forwards, by cutting them four Fingers breadth higher than the Knee, juſt upon the Fore-part of the Fore-Thigh; they firſt cut the Skin above the Sinew, which is very ſtiff and ſtretched upon the fore-part of the Leg, then they raiſe the Sinew with a *Shamoys*, or wild Goat's Horn, by putting it quite beneath the Sinew; afterwards they cut the Sinew with the Inciſion-knife, quite thorow to the *Shamoy*-horn, they fill the Wound with Salt, and put Hurds or courſe Flax, dipt into warm Turpentine, above it; and they hinder the Horſe to come at it with his Teeth; for to keep the apparel faſt, they wrap the part about with a Cloth, which muſt be ſewed, for fear of preſſing the Horſe's Leg too hard, which would make it ſwell; then they leave him in that manner,

and dress him not for some Days, but they blood him the very next, and anoint his whole Leg with the Duke's Ointment, described in the *Second Part*, and continue it every Day for eight Days; the Horse, during that time, may be walked up and down in ones hand, and the Pastern will fall into its place, so soon as ever the Wound is healed up: This Operation is more difficult than the former, and succeeds well enough with Horses which have their Pastern cast very far forwards, and as it were quite out of its place, which maketh the Sinew so stretched, that it is quite raised from the Fore-Thigh, and very much advanced, yet it is done without trouble or hazard; but if a Horse be but in a strait Line fron his Knee to the Coronet, and that the Sinew, we have been discoursing of, be not much raised from the Bone, and excessively stretched, it may in that case do prejudice, as I saw it done to a Horse, which had one of his Legs from the Knee to the Coronet, only in a strait Line, and in the other the Pastern was cast quite forwards; the Leg in which the Pastern-joint was quite cast forwards, the operation succeeded admirably well with it, for the Sinew was very much detached and elevate; but for his Leg, which was only in a strait Line from his Knee to his Coronet, the Sinew was not altogether raised from the Thigh, and so the Horse was two Months recovering.

Now People run not that hazard in making the other Operation, which is performed four Fingers breadth below the Fore-Thigh Vein, for it can never do any prejudice, although the Sinew be but very little raised and advanced; therefore except a Horse have his Pastern-joint quite cast forwards, I would not advise you to cut the Sinew a little above the Knee. This is enough upon this Subject.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Arched Legs.

WHen Horſes have Arched Legs, or their Legs bending forwards at the Knee, when they are ſtanding in their natural ſituation, People may alſo cut the abovementioned Sinew as they do to Horſes which have their Legs from the Knee to the Coronet in a ſtrait Line; and if they begin with the Shooing, as I have before ordered, the Operation will ſucceed well; for after all is done, you will ſee how neat the Legs will appear in compariſon of what they were before: You are to begin with the Shooing, and you cannot, in ſhooing of them, pare their Heels too low, that ſo you may force and compel the Sinews to ſtretch: At firſt when you make uſe of this Invention, the Horſe may halt with it, but you muſt anoint the back-ſinews with ſome ſoftning Ointment, ſuch as the Ointment of *Montpelier*, deſcribed in the *Second Part*, and anoint the Sinews twice a Week with it, having firſt warmed the Sinew by chafing it with your hand; this Ointment will ſoften the Sinews, take away the Pain, and ſo facilitate the extenſion of the Nerves.

If after having taken down the Heel, as I have told you, the Leg be not in that condition you would wiſh it, being ſtill very much arched at the Knee, you muſt then make for him a Planch-ſhoe, which muſt go beyond, or exceed the Foot at the Toe two or three Fingers breadth, and riſe alſo a little towards the edge; faſten it upon the Foot, and then anoint his Sinew with the foreſaid Ointment; let him ſtand after that manner, only walking him in your hand every day about an Hour, and in a ſhort time you will ſee the good effects of it.

If nevertheless it produce not that effect which you might expect, then cut the Sinew a little below the *Ars* or Fore-Thigh Vein, as I shewed you before; and if that makes his Legs swell, as it sometimes doth, be not surprized at it, but anoint him with an Ointment made of *Populion*, Honey, and black Soap, of each an equal quantity, mixed very well cold, with a small Glass full of Brandy, and continue to walk him every Day in your Hand; but you must observe never to cut that Sinew, until you have first taken his Heels very well down, and then shod him with Shoes which exceed his Foot at the Toe, as those do which are made use of for Mules.

CHAP. XXIX.

How to shoe Horses which tread only upon the Toes of their Hind-feet; as also those which trip or stumble.

SOme Horses tread upon the Toes of their Hind-feet, without resting upon their Heels at all. Young Horses are not so subject to it as old, and in time it becomes incurable. You are therefore to practice upon them a part of the Cure for Horses who have their Pasterns bending forwards as if they were out of joint. People ordinarily begin with taking down their Heels very much, and then give them Shoes a little longer than the Foot at the Toe, and anointing well the Sinew of the Hind leg, the Horse in a short time will recover: But you must continue to take down his Heels extraordinarily, and keep his Toes very long. Also, if it be necessary, you must make the Shoe exceed his Toe; but the surest way is to make it exceed his Foot at the Toe an Inch or two.

To

To ſhoe a Horſe which ſtumbleth, you muſt ſhoe him quite contrary to thoſe which tread only upon the Toes of their Hind-feet: For you muſt take down his Toe very much, and alſo ſhorten it, that he may not meet ſo eaſily with the Clods and Stones in the High-ways.

But if thoſe Horſes which ſtumble have their Sinews troubled, their Legs ſpoilt, or their Shoulders weak, you muſt then have recourſe to another Cure than ſhoeing, which you will find in the Second Part; where you have Receits that are all very good.

If your Horſe over-reach, the Spunge of the Shoe muſt follow the Turn of his Foot. It is commonly a ſign of Weakneſs when a Horſe is ſubject to over-reach; which is when with his Hind-feet as he is riding, he overtakes the Heels of his Fore. Some People turn up their Hind-feet-ſhoes at the Toe, to prevent the ſtriking off the Fore-ſhoe. Though it is certain the Rider is oftentimes the occaſion of a Horſe's over-reaching; becauſe through his ignorance he knows not how with his Bridle-hand, and by the fear of his Spurs, to keep his Horſe *Together* and firm under him. It is true, that an Action which is conſtrained cannot endure long, and far leſs the whole time of a long Journey, when wearineſs ſeizeth a Horſe. But a Man ſhould now and then advertiſe his Horſe; and if that prevent not his over-reaching, you may then freely ſay, that he wants Reins and Strength, or that he is quite ſpoiled.

CHAP XXX.

How to ſhoe Horſes which have been founder'd in the Feet.

THere are few Horſes that have been oftner foundred in the Body than once, which have not ſome of the Humour which occaſion'd the Foundring, fallen down in their Feet, which will diſfigure them, becauſe the Point, or that part of the Coffin-bone or little Foot which is moſt advanced, falleth down and preſſeth the Sole: And the middle of the Hoof above the Toe ſhrinks in and becomes flat, becauſe of the hollowneſs beneath it, occaſion'd by the falling down of the end of the Coffin-bone. And when the Bone of the Little Foot hath fallen down after this manner, and preſſeth the Sole outwards, the Horſe is then ſaid to have *Creſcents*; although thoſe *Creſcents* be really the Bone of the Little-foot, which hath left its place and fallen downwards, and the under-part of the Foot, to wit the Sole at the Toe, appears round, and the Hoof above ſhrinks in. Neither can it be otherwiſe; for the Coffin-bone or Little-Foot being, as I ſaid, fallen down, and left that place, wherein it is ſtayed, empty, the Hoof at that place not being ſupported by any thing, muſt of neceſſity ſhrink or fall in.

The ſame happens to Horſes which have had a great Numneſs in the Coffin; the Cauſe of which is almoſt the ſame as Foundring in the Feet, and the Symptoms the ſame, *viz. Creſcents*; and ſuch Horſes tread only upon their Heels, ſetting down their Toe a pretty while after their Heel; neither can they reſt upon any part of their Feet but the Heel.

Now, where the Foundring hath fallen down to the Feet, or that there be a Numneſs in the Coffin,

ſin, Horſes are a long time in recovering; ſo that a Years time will produce but little amendment: Therefore the beſt way is, to ſell them for the Plough, or to ſuch who live in a ſoft Country, where are few or no Stones.

Never pare a Horſe at the Toe that is foundred in the Feet, becauſe the Sole in that part ſhould be always kept ſtrong, to the end that if there be any appearance of a *Creſcent*, it may be prevented from coming any greater length. Neither muſt you take down his Heels much; for all the ſtrength of theſe kind of Feet lies in the Heels: And ſo ſoon as he is ſhod, pour into his Sole Oyl of Bayes ſcalding-hot, with Hurds or courſe Flax above it, and Splinters of Wood to keep all faſt, and continue to pour the ſaid Oyl into his Feet, for ſeven or eight times, once every other Day.

If you take out a Horſe's Soles, you ſhould not tarry above three Months after his foundring; and when you have out his Soles, the whole *Creſcent* ſhould be fired; that is to ſay, burn the whole end of the Little-foot which is looſe, that ſo it may fall away. But I think it far better not to take out ſuch Horſe's Soles at all, but to keep the Sole always ſtrong, and pour into it Oyl of Bayes.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Calkins.

Calkins ſpoil the Feet, occaſion Bleymes, which is a bruiſed Blood within the Coffin at the Heel, ruin the Back-Sinews, and make Horſes to tread upon the Toes only of their Hind-feet, and trip. Nevertheleſs in time of Froſt they are convenient, becauſe *Neceſſity hath no Law*; and it were better

the Horſe ſhould ſpoil his Legs, than the Rider ſhould be in continual hazard of breaking his.

When you are neceſſitated therefore to uſe them, make the Smith to pare the Horn a little low at the Heels, and turn down the inner Corners of the Spunge upon the Corner of the Anvil, and ſo faſhion a *Calkin* after the ſhape of the Point of a Hare's Ear, which will do little Prejudice; whereas the great ſquare *Calkins* ſpoil the Foot.

CHAP. XXXII.

How to ſhoe Horſes which Cut or Interfere.

THere are four things that make a Horſe to cut: The firſt is *Wearineſs*: The ſecond, *Weakneſs* in his Reins: The third, Not knowing how to go. And laſtly, his not being accuſtomed to Travel. To which might be added, his being badly or too old ſhoed. It hapneth more frequently behind than before, and is eaſily helped by ſhoeing, eſpecially if the Horſe be young.

When People ſee a Horſe which cuts himſelf, they ſhould not at firſt ſight condemn him for it, until they have examin'd whether it may not have been ſome Rivet of a Nail which hath occaſion'd it, or that the Shoe too much exceeds his Quarters on the inſides.

Every Horſe which after a long Journey hath not cut himſelf, giveth a favourable token and proof of his Goodneſs: For there are but few, which after a long Journey have not cut themſelves leſs or more.

It is eaſily known by the Skin being cut upon the inſides of the Paſtern-joints, and many times galled to the very Bone, ſo that the Horſe frequently halts with it, and hath his Paſtern-joints ſwelled. If

If a Horſe cut before, take off his two Fore-ſhoes, and take down the Out-quarter of each Foot very much, and place the Inner-edge of the Shoe ſo, that it may follow exactly the compaſs of his Foot, without any ways exceeding it towards the Heel. Then cut the Spunges equal with the Heel, and rivet the Nails ſo exactly into the Horn, that they may may not at all appear above it: Or burn the Horn with the point of a hot Iron, a little below the hole of each Nail, and then beat down and rivet them in theſe Holes.

If the Horſe, after this method of ſhoeing, continue ſtill to cut himſelf, you are then to thicken the Inner-Quarters and Spunges of his Shoes, ſo as they may double the thickneſs of thoſe upon the out-ſide, and always pare down his Out-Quarters very much, even almoſt to the Quick, without in the leaſt touching thoſe within: But be ſure always to rivet the Nails very juſtly and cloſe.

If he cut behind, unſhoe him, and pare down his Out-quarters almoſt to the Quick, give his Shoes *Calkins* only upon the inſides, and ſuch a Turn as may make them follow exactly the compaſs and ſhape of his Foot, without exceeding it, eſpecially in the Inner-Quarters; and above all, rivet the Nails exactly, for one ſingle Rivet will occaſion a great diſorder.

If notwithſtanding all theſe Precautions, your Horſe continue ſtill to cut, you muſt (beſides what I have already ordered) drive no Nails at all upon the inſides, but only make a Beak at the Toe to keep the Shoe firm in its place, and continuing this Method for ſome time, the Horſe will learn to walk, and interfere no more, although he be afterwards ſhoed after the ordinary faſhion. Some faſten little Boots of Leather or of an old Hat, about the Paſtern-joints; they are made narrower at top than bottom, and therefore are only made faſt at top. Others

thers wrap about the Paſtern-joint a piece of Sheep's-Skin, with the woolly ſide next the Horſe; and when it is worn out, apply a new one.

If he cut through Wearineſs, there is no better Remedy than giving him Reſt, and feeding him well.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Purging.

PURging ſhould never be attempted without great neceſſity, becauſe Horſes are eaſily inflamed, and require a great quantity of Drugs to purge them, which cannot poſſibly be given without imprinting a ſtrange heat in their Bodies, not ſoon extinguiſhed. And the Medicaments being commonly twenty four hours in their Bodies before they begin to operate, muſt, during that time over-heat or alter ſome of the Parts. So likewiſe there is great danger from miſtaking the nature of the Diſeaſe, or purging them unſeaſonably. For Example; in the heat of a Fever, and in the pains of a Cholick, it would be very improper to adminiſter a Purge, becauſe thereby a Man will ſoon have cured his Horſe of all Diſeaſes.

Some Medicines purge only by lenifying and ſweetning, ſuch as Oyls, Greaſe, and Butter, which by greaſing the Guts, facilitate the evacuation of the Excrement and other Humours. Others again by their abundance of Moiſture do ſo ſoften the Humours, that they glide along with them: Such as Whey, the Decoction of Beets, of Pellitory of the Wall, of Coleworts, of Spinage, *&c.* And ſo likewiſe Graſs in the Month of *May* purges by ſoaking and ſoftning the Humours, and cauſing them to paſs eaſily through the Bowels, by reaſon of their great humidity.

All

All sharp and piquant things do likewise irritate and excite the expulsive Faculty; such as almost all Salts, the Seed of Nettles, and many others. But all these Remedies are rather laxative and detersive, than true Purgatives.

All Purgatives have in them a kind of Malignity: therefore never give a violent Remedy for a small Indisposition. If People fail in any side, it should rather be in giving too weak than too strong Remedies; and if the Horse do not purge sufficiently, there is nothing lost, because it hath disposed the Humour; and by reiterating the Purgation some Days after, and making it a little stronger, you will find it succeed very well. You should also consider, that a Remedy given in Substance, for example, in Powder, should be given in less quantity than when it is only infused in some Liquor, and the solid Substance thrown away.

Generally speaking, no Infusion of any Drug whatsoever will purge a Horse, because it passes too quickly: For he is a Creature so difficult to be wrought upon, that although a Drug be given him in Substance, yet it will be twenty four Hours in his Body before it begin to purge, whereas an Infusion being liquid, passes in five or six, so that it hath little or no effect, unless you give him the Drugs and Infusion mixt together.

Never purge a Horse in the beginning of a Disease, because the Humour not yielding to the Remedy, is thereby over-heated, and brought to a Fermentation, which increases the Disease instead of diminishing it: And since in Horses we cannot observe any certain sign of Coction, and separation of bad Humours, which occasion the Disease, their Urines being almost always troubled, and not much unlike to one another, and the Excrements of the Belly almost the same; therefore we should delay it until the Horse be recovered: But this is to be only under-

derſtood of acute and violent Diſeaſes; for when the Diſtemper begins once to ſlacken, then the Humour which occaſioned it is concocted, ſeeing it cauſes no longer any ſymptom. And becauſe Nature many times neglects to expel the Humour ſhe has overcome, therefore it is that it muſt be evacuated by purging, leſt it ſhould ſpring up a new again, and occaſion a Relapſe: So that in Fevers, and other violent Diſeaſes, a Man ſhould never purge a Horſe, neither in their beginning, nor when they are at their height.

You are alſo, as much as poſſible, to forbear purging in time of exceſſive Heat or Cold. But if you are neceſſitated to do it in Winter, you are then to keep the Horſe well covered, in a warm Stable, from whence he muſt not ſtir during his Purgation; but if it be in Summer, then keep him in a temperate place, and when he begins to purge, walk him half an Hour in ones hand, every two Hours, and continue it for half a Day, to aſſiſt him to empty.

A Horſe that is to be purged, ſhould be kept four, five, or ſix hours without eating, before he take it, and as long after. You may alſo, for the more precaution, give him a Clyſter the Night before, which ſhall be compoſed according to the nature of his Diſeaſe.

From the time he took his Purgation, until it have done working, (which will be about forty hours) let him eat no Hay, but take him from the Rack at the end of every four hours, and give him about half a Peck of wet Bran.

When the Horſe hath done purging, you may, if you will, give him a Clyſter, to perfect the evacuation of that which the Medicament hath not brought away: After which you may feed and order him as formerly.

In

In making of Pills, after you have broken and beaten your Drugs courſly, mix the Compoſition with two Pounds of freſh Lard, or for want of it, the like quantity of freſh Butter; and having beaten and mixt all well together in a Mortar, make Pills about the bigneſs of ſmall Tennis-Balls, and when the Horſe has ſwallow'd them, give him, in a Horn, ſome White-Wine to carry them down to his Stomach, and to take away the bitterneſs from his Mouth.

If it be for a Drench, you are alſo to beat them courſly, and either mix them with a Decoction or with Wine, and letting it infuſe about a quarter of an hour, give it to the Horſe early in the Morning, with a Horn, after he has been tied up two hours to the Rack.

If you make uſe of a ſimple Infuſion, which hath no great effect upon Horſes, then the Drugs being infuſed all Night, the Liquor is to be poured off next Morning, amongſt which you are to diſſolve ſome kind of Electuary or Powder in a ſufficient quantity; and when the Horſe has taken it, rinſe the Horn with the remainder of the Decoction, or with Wine, and make him ſwallow it; after which waſh his Mouth with a little Wine, to take away its bad relliſh.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of Clyſters.

CLyſters are of ſo great uſe for the preſervation of a Horſe's Health, and curing of Diſeaſes, that we have no Remedy which equals them; for a Clyſter given in ſeaſon will ſave a Horſe's Life. Fevers, and the exceſſive beating of the Flanks, are rarely allayed but by the reiterated uſe of good Clyſters.

Clyſters. And if any time they make no ſenſible alteration to the better, yet at leaſt they refreſh and give eaſe; and never did Clyſter given orderly, and according to method, prove prejudicial to any Horſe whatſoever.

Common Farriers don't give above a Quart or three Pints of Decoction in a Clyſter, which has generally no great effect; for beſides that the Liquor is given in too ſmall a quantity, they alſo ſpare Drugs, and commonly mix nothing with the Decoctions, but ſalted Water, Honey, and Oil. I think a Clyſter ſhould have two or three Quarts of Decoction, or elſe it will moiſten and waſh but little: For as a Horſe drinks ten times more than a Man, and that People give alſo twenty times more than the Doſe for a Man to purge him, it follows that the ſame proportion ſhould be obſerved for Clyſters.

When you intend to purge a Horſe by Clyſter, put no kind of fat into it, becauſe Oils and Greaſe adhere to the Inteſtines, and ſo hinder the effect of the Purgatives; but rather uſe *Common-Salt*, *Sal-Gem*, *Polychreſt*, or warm *Urine*, all which prick and irritate the expulſive Faculty: whence it is that Country-Farriers make commonly their Clyſters of the Water in which Cod-fiſh or Herring have been ſteeped, which by reaſon of its ſaltneſs, cauſes a Horſe to empty well.

To make a Clyſter ſomewhat Purgative, a Man may infuſe all Night in a proper Decoction, an Ounce of *Sena*, and next Morning giving it a little boil, ſtrain it to make a Clyſter.

A Clyſter ſhould not be given till the Horſe's great Gut be cleared of its Dung, which by Farriers is called *Raking*. Cauſe ſome body who has a ſmall hand to anoint it with Oil or Butter, and thruſt it up into his Fundament, taking care not to ſcratch the Gut with his Nails, and draw forth all the

the Dung he can conveniently bring away. Or otherwiſe thruſt up into it about the bigneſs of a large Hen's Egg of *Caſtile-Soap*, anointed with Oil to make it enter with more eaſe; half an hour after which, the Horſe will empty; ſo that uſing this you need not Rake him, becauſe the Soap will do it ſufficiently of it ſelf. Having thus cauſed him to empty, place him with his Fore-parts a little lower than his Croup, and thruſting into his Fundament a Horn made for that purpoſe, open at the ſmall end, pour into it by degrees the Clyſter, which muſt be Milk-warm, and if it ſhould ſtop in the Horn, without paſſing down, you are to make the Horſe move his Tongue, and then ſtrike him gently with the palm of your hand upon the Reins, which will make it enter: This done, put him into the Stable again, tied up to the Rack, without moving him afterwards, contrary to the common practice of Farriers, who walk the Horſe while the Clyſter is yet in his Guts.

It is alſo fit that your Horſe be tied up to the Rack two hours before his Clyſter, and that he eat not until he hath render'd it, or about an hour after he hath taken it.

They that walk their Horſes after a Clyſter, make them render it too ſoon, whereas it ſhould be retained a reaſonable time: If he could be made to keep it a full hour, it would be ſo much the better; and therefore a large Syringe made on purpoſe is better than a Horn, becauſe the Horſe receives it better, without ſo much as needing to be taken out of the Stable, and being leſs moved after receiving it, he will have the leſs cauſe to render it too ſoon. It ſignifies but little to ſtop a Horſe's Fundament with Hay, or to tie down his Dock, to hinder him from rendring it, for none of theſe methods will prevent him from voiding his Clyſter, if he have an inclination to it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Blooding Horſes, and Pre-cautions to be obſerved therein.

BLooding is very profitable for curing of Fevers, the Farcy, Mange, Strokes of all ſorts, for Defluxions upon any part of the Body, the Eyes excepted, for the foundering in the Body, Vertigo, Head-ach, and many other Diſeaſes.

The firſt Reaſon for Letting-Blood is *Plenitude*, which is when the Veſſels are ſo very full of Blood that they can ſcarce contain it without burſting, or that there is more Blood than is needful for the entertainment of the Parts, ſo that Nature cannot govern it, *Omne enim nimium Naturæ inimicum.*

The ſecond Reaſon is, *The exceſſive heat of the Blood:* In this caſe blooding refreſhes and appeaſes the boiling of it.

The third Reaſon is, *That we may take away the corrupt Humours contained in the Veins, which by their Putrefaction can produce but bad effects: therefore Nature being eaſed by this evacuation, doth the more eaſily digeſt the reſt.*

The fourth Reaſon is, *That when the Blood hath not liberty enough to run and paſs freely through its Veſſels, blooding gives it vent, and ſo facilitates its motion.*

The fifth Reaſon is, *To make a Revulſion, by altering its courſe, when it carries it ſelf from one part to another with too great impetuoſity, and in too much abundance.* Now in this caſe, People endeavour to retard its courſe, or to procure another for it, quite another way.

The ſixth and laſt Reaſon for Blood-letting is, *To give eaſe and relief to any part that is over-charged with Blood*; which is performed by bleeding the part afflicted. Blood-

Blood-letting is neceſſary by way of prevention, for all Horſes which feed well and labour little. It ſhould be done twice a Year.

It hath alſo its Inconveniences, when practiſed unſeaſonably; for then it maketh a revulſion of the Spirits, which are the ſource of ſtrength and natural heat; and alſo takes away the aliment appointed for the nouriſhment of the Parts. You ſhould therefore conſult your Horſe's ſtrength, to know if he can endure Blood-letting, and to conſider if he be very weak; for then he would have more need to be made up by good feeding, than to loſe his Blood.

Young Horſes, as well as old, are to be bled as rarely as poſſible. I ſay the ſame of ſuch Horſes as paſs their Aliments without being concocted and digeſted; ſuch as thoſe who have much whole and undigeſted Oats amongſt their Dung, unleſs the Horſe ſwallow them without chawing, which is frequently done.

Neither are you to bleed cold and phlegmatick Horſes, nor thoſe which work in an exceſſive cold Country, nor in any Country in great Heats or exceſſive Colds, their Bodies then ſtanding more in need to be ſtrengthen'd than weaken'd.

People commonly bleed Horſes in the Jugular Veins, which lie on each ſide the Neck, for ſeveral Diſeaſes; as the Farcy, Mange, Repletion, and for Prevention.

For Bites or Blows in the Eyes they take Blood from the Temples with a ſmall Lance.

For Head-aches, or for being diſguſted or overheated by exceſſive Labour, or for Colicks and the Vives, they have a little Lance made purpoſely for opening the Veins beneath the Tongue.

Alſo for Colicks, Vives, and being much overheated, they bleed in the Griſtle of the Noſe, without regarding whether they hit the Vein or not.

When a Horſe is diſguſted, dull, haraſſed, and over-heated, they bleed in the middle of the Palat, above the fourth Bar, with a Lance or ſharp Horn.

If your Horſe loſe too much Blood, by a ſtroke thus given him in the Palat, you are to raiſe his Head very high, by tying a Cord about his upper Fore-Teeth, as if you were going to give him a Drench, and it will ſtop of its own accord.

I ſaw once a Horſe that died of a ſtroke thus given him in the Palat with a Horn, and the Blood could not be ſtopped neither with Vitriol, nor with a Button of Fire, or any thing elſe they could apply, ſo that the Horſe loſt all his Blood, and died. I have ſince fallen upon a Remedy that would have ſaved him, and which is but a Trifle: Take the half of a Walnut-ſhell, and applying the hollow ſide of it to the Orifice of the Wound, preſs it a little hard upon it, and ſo hold it for a quarter of an Hour; after which the Shell will ſtick of its own accord, and ſo ſtop the Blood, which perhaps no other Remedy could have done.

For Strains in the Shoulder, or the Mange in thoſe Parts, they take Blood from the *Baſilick* or Fore-Thigh Veins, but this is rarely done, and when it is, they do it commonly with Fleems, and not with a Lance.

For Strains and Infirmities in the Hams and Knees they take Blood from the Paſterns with Fleem or Lance.

For beating in the Feet, and Infirmities of the Legs, ſuch as Swellings and oppreſſions of the Nerves, Horſes are let Blood in the Toes with the Putteris or Drawing-Iron.

For Colicks, and ſometimes alſo for the Farcy, the Veins of the Flanks are opened with a ſmall Lance made for that purpoſe.

For Blows and Strains in the Haunches, Blood is drawn with Fleems in the flat of the Thighs.

For the Fever and Purfineſs, they bleed with a long Lance in the Tail or Dock.

When a Horſe is blooded, make a good large Orifice in the Vein, that the thick and terreſtrial Blood may be evacuated; becauſe when the Orifice is too ſmall, it is only the moſt ſubtil Blood that is drawn, ſo that the blooding doth more harm than good.

When you intend to bleed a Horſe, let him reſt the Day before, and alſo the Day following; and let him be tied up early in the Morning to the Rack, without Water or Combing, for fear of too much agitating his Spirits; then draw with a pair of Fleems, that ſhould be of a reaſonable breadth, for the reaſon before given, about three Pounds of Blood, and then leave him tied to the Rack for two hours.

After which you ſhall give him ſome ſcalded Bran, or the following Maſh: Take half a Peck of good well-ground Malt, and put it into a Pail by it ſelf; then take a Gallon or five Quarts of fair Water, and ſet it on the Fire, and when it hath boiled a little, put as much of it into the Malt as will moiſten it, working and ſtirring them with a piece of flat Wood; after which pour in the reſt of the Water, and mix all very well together: Then cover it cloſe and let it ſtand two hours. When the Horſe is ready to take it, cruſh and ſqueeze the Malt with your hand as much as poſſible, and give it him to drink luke-warm. I ſay, it muſt be little more than Milk-warm; and if it prove too hot or too thick, you may rectify both, by adding a little cold Water to it, but be ſure not to make it too cold nor too thin.

This Maſh is found to agree well with Horſes which are indiſpoſed or ſick, and is therefore here ſet down. The Author having given no directions

to make one, by reaſon, I ſuppoſe, that Malt is not much uſed in *France.*

The *Germans* gallop their Horſes before blooding, to the end, ſay they, that the bad Blood, which is as the Lee, may be mixed with the good, and ſo both drawn together. But they ſhould conſider, that Blood is not with the ſame tranquility in the Veins, as Wine is in a Hogſhead, whoſe Lee lies at bottom. And if the whole Maſs of Blood in a Horſe's Body, being about fifty Pounds, does circulate through the Ventricles of the Heart in about ſix Hours ſpace, as Experiments have diſcovered, it will follow, that there is no need of any violent agitation, but on the contrary, the Horſe ſhould be kept calm and quiet, for fear of loſing too many of his Spirits.

Thoſe who are very careful of their Horſes, not only let them reſt on that Day wherein they are bled, and the Day before and after; but alſo give them only Bran inſtead of Oats on thoſe three Days.

In taking Blood you are to regulate the quantity according as your Horſe is a great Feeder, and as his Veins are full and ſtretched, and accordingly as it iſſues forth with violence; having ſtill regard to the quality of the Diſeaſe, his Strength, Age, and the Seaſon.

It is a general Maxim, that without very good and preſſing Reaſons, a Man ſhould never make great evacuations by Blood-letting, becauſe there is made by it a too great diſſipation of the Spirits, as alſo Crudities formed in the Veins, which are the origin of ſeveral Diſeaſes.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How to judge of the Quantity and Quality of Blood.

ALtho' it is not the common practice of Farriers to receive a Horſe's Blood into a Veſſel, however, it is very neceſſary that a Man may thereby be able to judge of the Quantity and Quality.

A Quart of Water weighs about two Pound, and Blood is near of equal weight with Water: therefore firſt try how many Pounds of Water the Veſſel contains, and when you know how much ſpace two Quarts of Water will take up in a Veſſel, the ſame ſpace will be filled with four Pounds of Blood.

Obſerve if it run calmly and ſlowly, and without impetuoſity; as alſo if it cleave to your Fingers when you touch it, becauſe if it do, it is a ſign that it is viſcous, and apt to occaſion Obſtructions: therefore in that caſe you are to bleed your Horſe frequently.

Blood which froths much when receiv'd into a Veſſel at a pretty diſtance, betokens heat and agitation of the Spirits; from whence People conclude, that a Horſe is over-heated, either by ſuperfluous Nouriſhment, or too violent Labour; or otherwiſe, that he is of a vigorous Conſtitution: Such Horſes ſhould be let blood at leaſt twice in the Year, by way of Prevention.

When Blood coagulates ſoon and eaſily after itis drawn, and hath a great many Fibres in it, it is a ſign that its ſubſtance is thick and terreſtrial; but if it with difficulty congeal, then it is more fluid and ſubtil.

If the Blood be very ſerous, that is, Watery, it betokens a Weakneſs in the Reins, or an Obſtruction in the Veins.

Blood whoſe ſuperficies is yellow, but black beneath, betokens a great deal of Heat, and that Bile predominates.

Blood full of Phlegm and Water, is a ſign that the Horſe is of a cold and moiſt Complexion, and he ſhould be very ſeldom let blood except upon a neceſſity.

Blood of a plumbeous or earthy colour, betokens that a Horſe is Melancholick, and ſhould be but ſeldom bled. The Blood of Aſſes is of this colour.

In a word, If the Blood be very red, it is a ſign it is good; if yellow, that it is bilious; if pale and whitiſh, that it is not well prepared, and that it is charged with Phlegm; but if it be livid and greeniſh, that it is melancholick and terreſtrial.

To judge of the Quality of Blood after it is received into a Veſſel, you are to ſet it in a place where the Sun may not dry it, and without expoſing it to Smoke, Wind, or Duſt.

If Blood will not congeal and fix, it is a ſign the Horſe is full of bad Humours, and ſtands in need of reiterate blooding; and ſhould be purged alſo to take away thoſe corrupt Humours, which by their Putrefaction over-heat the Blood in the Veins, and thereby are the cauſe of all Diſeaſes. This kind of Blood is the worſt of any, and ſhould therefore be evacuated, only take care to do it by degrees, and not too much at one time.

When the Blood is viſcous and thick, ſo that when you break it with your Fingers it immediately rejoins and continues firm, it denotes Plenitude, and that the Horſe ſhould be frequently bled.

If you would judge of the Quality by its taſte that which is ſweeteſt is the beſt and moſt natural; if it be inſipid, it is pituitous and phlegmatick; if bitter it is bilious and cholerick; if acid and ſtyptick, it is terreſtrial and melancholick; but if ſaltiſh, then it betokeneth brackiſh Phlegm.

Whe

Fig:1.

Un Filet.
A Snaffle, small watering Bitt

Fig:4.

Un Canon à Gorge de Pigeon.
Around or Canon Mouth with ye Liberty aster the Forme of a Pigeons Neck.

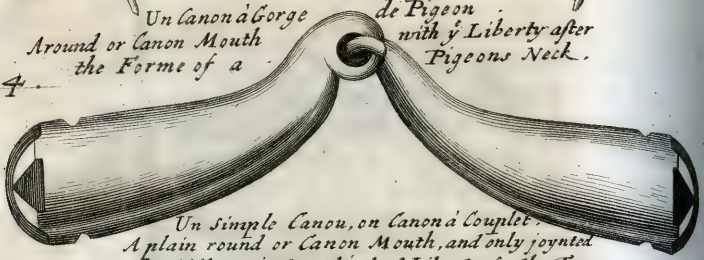


Fig:2.

Un Simple Canou, on Canon à Couplet.
A plain round or Canon Mouth, and only joynted in ye Middle, to make a kind of Liberty for the Tongue.

Fig:5.

Un Canon Montant.
Around or Canon Mouth with an Upset or Mounting Liberty.

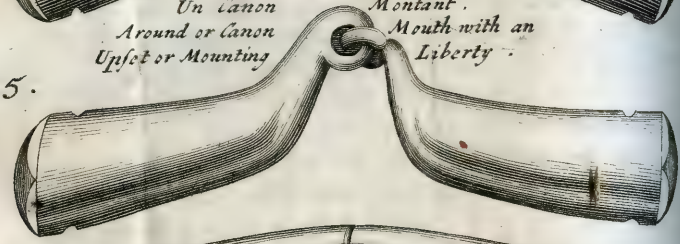
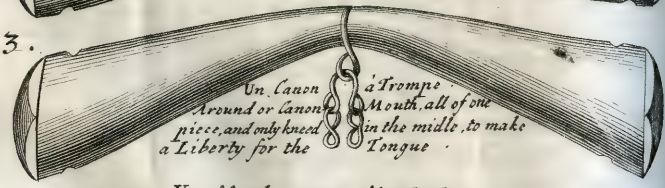


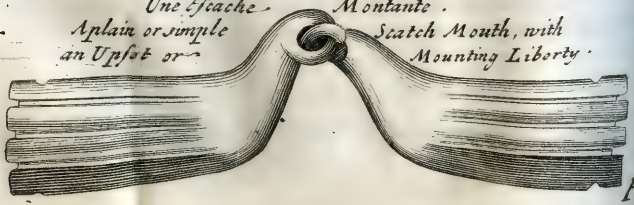
Fig:3.



Un Canon à Trompe.
Around or Canon Mouth, all of one piece, and only kneed in the midle, to make a Liberty for the Tongue.

Fig:6

Une Escache Montante.
A plain or simple Scatch Mouth, with an Upset or Mounting Liberty.



When Horſes ſtand equally in need of blooding and purging, it is fitteſt to begin with Bleeding, becauſe it cools, and may thereby hinder the Purgation from inflaming the Humours: Becauſe for the moſt part, a purgative Medicament ſtirreth up Humours, which it doth not evacuate; ſo that if you ſhould immediately take Blood, while the excited Humours are thus in agitation, the Veins would attract that ſtirred up Humour which was not evacuated, and which being once in the Veins, is capable of ſpoiling the reſt of the good Blood.

In fine, Blood-letting contributes much to the true knowledge of a Horſe's Conſtitution, and more than any other evidence, whether of Mark or Colour; alſo a Man may thereby judge of his Health and Vigour.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Bits.

TO Bit a Horſe is to give him ſuch a Bridle as is moſt proper to gain his conſent to thoſe Actions you require of him.

The Iron which is put in a Horſe's Mouth, is called a *Bit* or *Bit-mouth.*

In the middle of the Bit-mouth there is always an arched ſpace for the lodging of his Tongue, which is called the *Liberty.*

The Duke of *Newcaſtle* adviſes to put as little Iron into a Horſe's Mouth as poſſible; and we in *England* ſeldom make uſe of other than Snaffles, Canon-mouths jointed in the middle, Canon with a Faſt-mouth, and Canon with a Port-mouth either round or jointed: But our Author gives a deſcription of fifty ſix ſorts of Bits, and the Figures of eighteen of them in a printed Plate, moſt of which

he ſays, being very rude, and ſpoiling Horſes Mouths, are generally laid aſide: I ſhall therefore deſcribe ſuch of thoſe Bits only, as are at preſent moſt in uſe amongſt us: And firſt,

Of the Canon-mouth jointed in the middle. Fig 2.

This always preſerves a Horſe's Mouth whole and ſound; and altho' the Tongue ſuſtain the whole effort of it, yet that part is not ſo ſenſible as the Bars, which have their feeling ſo very fine, that they feel the preſſure of this Mouth through the Tongue, and thereby obey the leaſt motion of the Rider's Hand: If then the Bit-Mouth reſted wholly upon the Bars, it would be a ready means to turn a Horſe's Mouth deſperate. The larger it is towards the ends fixed to the Branches, the more gentle it will be, becauſe it will thereby be ſo much the leſs capable to conſtrain a Horſe. It ſhould be always held as a certain Maxim, that a Man ſhould make uſe of this Mouth to a Horſe as long as he can, that is, if with a ſimple Canon-mouth he can draw from a Horſe all the obedience he is capable of giving, it will be in vain for him to trouble himſelf to give him another, becauſe this is the very beſt of all.

Of the Canon with a faſt Mouth. Fig. 3.

Next cometh the Canon-Mouth all of one piece, and only kneed in the middle, to make a liberty for the Tongue. This is proper to make ſure thoſe Mouths, which being too ſenſible, tickliſh, or weak, chack or beat upon the Hand. This Bit will fix ſuch Horſes Mouths, becauſe it reſts always in one place, ſo that thereby deadning in a manner that part, it maketh the Horſe to loſe his apprehenſiveneſs, who in a little time will reliſh this Bit-Mouth better than the laſt, which being jointed in the middle, reſts upon the Bars unequally, ſometimes upon one ſide, and ſometimes upon t'other. This is

is nevertheleſs more rude, becauſe it is not jointed in the middle, but all of one piece. The greateſt dexterity in forging this Bit-Mouth is, to project the middle of it a little forwards, thereby to give the more play to the Horſe's Tongue, and cauſe the Bit to reſt rather upon the Gums or outſides of the Bars, than upon their very ridges.

Of the Canon with a Port-Mouth. Fig. 5.

A Port-Mouth is a Canon with an upſet or mounting Liberty, which is proper for a Horſe that hath a good Mouth, but a large Tongue. It worketh its effect upon the Lips and Gums, and becauſe the Tongue is diſengaged, it will ſubject a Horſe who hath his Bars high, and in ſome degree ſenſible. It is of excellent uſe, and if well made will never hurt a Horſe's Mouth.

Of the Canon-Mouth with the Liberty, after the Form of a Pigeon's Neck. Fig. 4.

When a Horſe hath too large a Tongue, ſo that by its thickneſs it ſo ſupports the mouth of the Bit, that it cannot work its effect upon the Bars, this *Liberty* will a little diſengage his Tongue, and thereby ſuffer the mouth of the Bit to meet with and reſt upon his Gums, which will make him ſo much the more light upon the Hand.

This is alſo good for thoſe who ſometimes make uſe of one Rein, becauſe they may pull it without hurting his Bars, which cannot be done with Mouths that have other kinds of Liberties.

Of a Scatch-Mouth, with an Upſet or mounting Liberty. Fig. 6.

Theſe are more rude than Canon-Mouths, becauſe they are not fully ſo round, but more edged, and are preferable to them in one reſpect, which is, that thoſe parts of a Canon-Mouth to which the Branches

Branches are faſten'd, if not well riveted, are ſubject to ſlip, ſo that a Man is then left to his Horſe's diſcretion: But the ends of a Scatch-Mouth can never fail, becauſe of their being over-lapped, and are therefore abſolutely moſt ſecure for vicious and ill-natur'd Horſes.

Of a Canon-Mouth with the Liberty after Mr. Pignatel's *faſhion.*

This is proper for a Horſe with a large Tongue and round Bars; ſeeing it is not at all ſupported by the Tongue, but only a little by his Lips. A Man ſhould take care never to work a Horſe with one Rein, ſo long as he is carrying one of theſe Bit-Mouths, becauſe he would infallibly break and ſpoil his Bars.

Sir *William Hope* deſcribes it in this manner: 'It is 'a Bit with a gentle falling and moving up and 'down, and the Liberty ſo low as not to hurt the 'roof of the Horſe's Mouth, which is the beſt Bit 'certainly for all Horſes which have any thing of a big Tongue, and therefore recommends that Liberty above all things in Bits, with the Branches *a la Coneſtable. Plate 3. Fig. 6.*

I ſhall paſs over the reſt of the Bit-Mouths mentioned by our Author, ſuch as thoſe with Pears, Balls, Melons, *&c.* there being no ſuch rude Bit-Mouths now to be ſeen, but inſtead thereof People now make uſe of ſtrong and hardy Branches.

Some are of Opinion, that there is no better way to fit a Horſe exactly with a Bit, than to have a great many Bits by them, and change them, until they fall upon that they would have: But be ſure at firſt to give him a gentle one, rather than a rude, and ſee that it be right lodged in his Mouth, that is, not ſo high as to make him frumple his Lips, nor ſo low as to reſt upon his Tuſhes.

This

This done, cauſe one to mount him, and let him try to pull the Horſe two or three ſteps back: you will know as he is going back, if his Head be firm, and if he perform it frankly, or only obeys with reluctancy, that ſo you may give him another Bit, which may gain his conſent.

If he incline to carry low, you are not to give him a Liberty for the Tongue, which will riſe too high, for that by tickling his Palat, would bring his Head down between his Legs.

Large Curbs, providing they be round, are always moſt gentle: Take care that it reſt in its proper place, a little above the Beard, for without this the Bit-Mouth will not have the effect you might expect from it.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Branches.

THE Branch is to be proportion'd according to the deſign a Man hath either of bringing in, or raiſing a Horſe's Head.

The Line of the Banquet is that part of the Branch whereby we judge of its effects, and which diſcovers to us its ſtrength or weakneſs. *See Plate* 3. *Fig.* 4.

A ſtrong or hardy Branch is that whoſe Sevil-hole at the lower end of it is placed upon the outſide of the line of the Banquet. *See Plate* 3. *Fig.* 4, 5, and 8.

A gentle Branch is that whoſe Sevil-hole is placed upon the inſide of the ſaid Line. *See Plate* 3. *Fig.* 1.

A rude and hardy Branch will bring in a Horſe's Head, proportionably as it is more or leſs hardy; whereas a gentle Branch, by diminiſhing the effect of the Bit-Mouth, makes a Horſe more eaſily to bear

bear the preſſure of it, who before could hardly endure it.

The further the Branch is from a Horſe's Neck, the greater ſtrength will it have in pulling, and will bring it beſt in, provided it be in the hands of a Perſon who underſtands to make uſe of it.

Short Branches are ruder than long, if they have both of them the ſame ſhape and turn; becauſe the effects of a long Branch coming from a diſtance, do not conſtrain a Horſe ſo ſuddenly as a ſhort, which beſides its great conſtraint is alſo unpleaſant.

The Branch muſt be proportion'd to the length of a Horſe's Neck, and one may ſooner err in chooſing one too ſhort than too long Yet after a little obſervation, a Man ſhall rarely fail when he ſees a Branch, to be able to ſay, that it is for a Horſe which hath ſuch a Neck: And when he ſees how any Horſe carries his Head, he will immediately diſcover what Branch is proper for him, becauſe he carries ſo and ſo, and hath ſuch a Neck.

I.

A ſtrait Branch after the form of a Piſtol.

See Plate 3. Fig. 1.

This is commonly the firſt given to young Horſes, to form their Mouths, and make them to reliſh a Bit.

II. Fig. 2.

A Branch after the Conſtable of France's *faſhion.*

This Branch is proper for a Horſe which naturally carries his Head well, and in as becoming a poſture as poſſibly he can.

III. Fig. 3.

A Branch after the form of a Gigot or Leg.

This is alſo proper for Horſes which naturally carry well; and will prevent him from carrying low when weary.

IV. *Fig.*

IV. Fig. 4.

A Branch after the form of a bent Knee.

This is proper for Horſes which arm themſelves againſt the operation of the Bit, which is done two ways:

1. By bringing in ſo very much their Heads, that the lower part of the Branches reſt upon their Breaſts or Counters: The common Remedy is to give them ſhorter Branches, which is ſo far from rectifying it, that it conſtrains them more, and thereby obliges them to arm themſelves more ſtrongly than they did at firſt. Now this ſort of Branch, tho' ten Inches long, yet is ſo turned, that it cannot ſo ſoon reach their Counters, as an ordinary Branch of ſix Inches long, becauſe inſtead of pulling down their Noſes, as other Branches generally do, this raiſes them.

2. The ſecond way of Horſes arming themſelves, is, that when a Man would reſtrain them, they turn in ſo very much their Heads, that they immediately touch their Necks with their Chins, and thereby render the Branches uſeleſs. There is no remedy for ſuch, but to place a Ball of Wood (covered with Velvet or any other thing, to make it appear neat) betwixt their Jaw-bones, upon the Chaul-band of the Bridle. The bigneſs of this Ball ſhould be proportioned according to the hollow between the upper parts of the Jaws, becauſe were it too little, it would be uſeleſs and without effect; and if it were too big, it would not only appear too much, but would alſo ſhift from one ſide to the other: But being ſo adjuſted, that the half of the Ball may enter between the two Jaw-bones, and the other half remain without, and meet with his Throat, it will then keep in its place, by reaſon that the hollow between the Jaw-bones ſtraitens as it deſcends, ſo that the Ball cannot be diſlodged, but

but muſt of neceſſity prevent the Horſe's arming himſelf.

V. Fig. 5.

A Branch after the French faſhion.

All Horſes do not arm themſelves, but many carry low; therefore the raiſing a Horſe's Head is one of the moſt difficult things we undertake, becauſe a Man may bring in a hundred, when he will not raiſe ſo much as one. However, the two Branches following will produce this effect, the one more, the other leſs.

The firſt is this Branch after the *French* Faſhion, which is hardy about a third of an Inch at the Sevil-hole, and kneed an Inch and three quarters at the Jarret or Ham, with the Eye of the Branch a little higher than ordinary, to give the more force to the Branch: It will therefore be proper for raiſing a Horſe which carries his Head low, becauſe the Sevil at the lower end of the Branch, inclining backwards towards the Neck, hath borrow'd a ſufficient ſtrength from the Ham, which is pretty much kneed in that part, to make it the more powerful for raiſing.

VI. Fig. 6.

Another Branch more hardy than the preceding.

The former Branch would raiſe a Horſe's Head, altho' but little, becauſe it is only hardy at the Sevil about a third of an Inch, whereas this Branch hath two thirds of an Inch at the Sevil-hole, and about two Inches at the Ham, and is therefore proper to raiſe a Horſe's Head that carries very low. The falſe Ham or part of the Branch which is bruiſed or advanced forward, more than the other part of the Branch to which it is ſoldered, is a great help to it, becauſe it augments the ſtrength of the lower part of the Branch: The Eye being of a good height, will alſo give ſtrength to the operation of the Branch, and the Shoulder which is ſo turned as not

to

to conſtrain too much, will likewiſe aſſiſt the Branch to raiſe.

VII. Fig. 7.

Another Branch which brings in a Horſe's Head more than the preceding.

This is hardy about two thirds of an Inch at the Sevil-hole, and hath a falſe Ham, that is, the Branch at that part is bruiſed or ſet forwards, ſo that the moſt advanced part of this Branch is about an Inch and three quarters.

The principal effect of this Branch is to bring in, it being hardy to the very Sevil-hole: The half Ham augments its ſtrength, and the lower part of the Branch which ſtands inclined towards the Horſe's Neck, makes it to raiſe a little; ſo that it will be good for a Horſe which carries his Neck ſtrait out, and hath therefore difficulty to bring in his Head to ſuch a becoming poſture as it ought.

This Branch brings in a great deal, and raiſes but little, which is juſt what we ſhould make uſe of for ſuch ſtrait ſtretched Necks, becauſe by bringing their Heads very much in, we oblige them to turn and bend their ſtrait Necks after the form of an Arch: but ſince it would be dangerous to bring them too much in, and thereby to bring their Heads betwixt their Legs, therefore the lower part of the Branch is made to incline backwards towards the Horſe's Neck, which raiſes and places their Heads in the moſt beautiful poſture ſuch Necks are capable of.

VIII. Fig. 8.

Another Branch more hardy than the preceding.

This Branch is hardy about an Inch and one ſixth part of an Inch, and being equally hardy at the Ham and Sevil hole, is proper for Horſes which carry their Heads high enough, but thruſt out their Noſes. If a Man make good uſe of his Legs, as he is pulling in hard a Horſe's Head, there are very few

few Horſes but what he will oblige to bring down their Noſes.

Theſe are all the different ways that Horſes carry their Heads or Necks, together with the Branches proper for them.

It remains that I diſcourſe of ſuch Necks as are too ſlender, and whoſe Mouths will not endure the preſſure of the Bit upon their Bars, nor conſequently any thing of a firm Hand. I told you the firſt Branch was proper for ſuch Horſes, but People having no fancy to give ſuch Branches to Journey-Pads, they may make uſe of the ſixth Branch, and render it more gentle at the Sevil-hole by half an Inch, which will make it proper for them. Note, that the further the Sevil-hole is without the Line of the Banquet, the harder and ſtronger the Branch is; and the more it approacheth, or even cometh on this ſide the ſaid Line, ſo much the more gentle it is.

CHAP. XXXIX.

A Diſcourſe of Breeding, and how to raiſe a good and beautiful Race of Horſes.

THE Goodneſs of Horſes depends much upon the trueneſs of the Race, the Quality of the Grounds where they run, their manner of feeding when houſed, and the method of governing them while young.

Among all the Authors who have written on this Subject, no one hath given ſuch exact Inſtructions as the Duke of *Newcaſtle*; but his Book being very ſcarce and dear, and treating of many curious things, more proper for a Maſter in the Art of Riding than for a private Gentleman, our Author thought he ſhould do ſervice to the Publick, by preſenting it with

with an Abſtract of what he wrote on this Subject, with ſome Remarks of his own; which the Reader will find diſtinguiſh'd by this Mark (') in the Margin.

The beſt Horſe for a Stallion is a good and beautiful Barb, or Spaniſh Horſe, free from thoſe Infirmities which are called Hereditary, ſuch as weak Eyes, Spavins, Purſineſs, Cheſt-foundring; as alſo bad Feet, with this diſtinction only, that ſuch Imperfections as happen by accident, are not accounted Hereditary.

'That which I have to ſay againſt the *Spaniſh* 'Horſes is, that they beget Colts of a leſs ſize than 'themſelves; neither do the Mares hold ſo eaſily to 'them as to the Barbs: For of ten Mares cover'd with 'a Spaniſh Horſe, the one half will not be with Foal, 'whereas they hold ſooner to the Barbs, if the Stal'lions be ſix Years old; for being younger they de'ceive the Mares.

I approve not of covering Mares in ones Hand, nor tying them with Ropes: For this Action of Nature ſhould be performed with Freedom and Love, and not with Reluctancy, and againſt their Will.

Neither do I regard whether the Moon be in her Decreaſe or Increaſe, or if the other Celeſtial Bodies be in ſuch or ſuch a Conjunction, as if Colts were to be begotten by Aſtronomy.

Nature is moſt wiſe in her own Works; amongſt which, the greateſt is the Act of Generation, whereby ſhe preſerves each Species to continue it to the end of the World: And we ſee that this wiſe Nature is ſo circumſpect in this Action, that although ſhe ſuffer two different kinds to mix by Generation, yet that which proceeds therefrom doth not afterwards generate; becauſe, were it otherwiſe, each true kind or Species would in time be loſt. Let us

therefore follow herein the Laws of Nature, who is moſt wiſe in the Act of Generation.

When you have choſen your Stallion, three Months at leaſt before the time he is to cover, feed him with good Oats, Peaſe or Beans, or with courſe Bread, and little Hay, but a good deal of Wheat-Straw, ſtepping him out twice a day to the Water; and after he hath drunk, walk him up and down an Hour, without making him ſweat. If he were not thus brought in wind before he covers, he would either become purſey and broken-winded, or run a great risk of being ſo; and were he not well fed, he could not perform the Task, or at leaſt the Colts would be but pitiful and weak; And although you nouriſh him well, yet you will take him in again very lean. If you give him many Mares he will not ſerve you ſo long, and his Mane and Tail will fall away through Poverty; and you will find it difficult to recover and bring him into a good Condition of body for the Year following: Give him Mares therefore according to his ſtrength, that is twelve or fifteen, or at moſt twenty.

We ſhould in *England* cover our Mares in the beginning of *June*, that ſo they may foal in *May*; in which Month there is plenty of Graſs, which will make the Mares have a greater abundance of Milk for the better nouriſhing of their Foals. 'Mares go 'with Foal eleven Months, and as many Days as 'they are Years old. For example; 'A Mare of 'nine Years old will carry her Foal eleven Months 'and nine Days; ſo that a Man may ſo order his 'Mares to be covered that their Foals may be 'brought forth at ſuch time as there will be abundance of Graſs.

You ſhould about the end of *May*, at which time there is commonly ſtore of Graſs, put your Mares into an Incloſure, which may be capable to feed them the whole time the Stallion is to be with them

or that they are in season, in which Inclosure all your Mares should be put together, as well those which are barren as others. Then lead forth your Stallion, having first taken off his Hind-Shoes; but his Fore-Shoes must be kept on for the preservation of his Feet: Then let him cover one twice in hand, to render him the more calm and gentle; after which take off his Bridle, and let him go freely to the rest, with whom he will become so familiar, and use them so kindly, that they will at last make love to him; so that not one of 'em will be hors'd but as they are in season. After he hath served them all, he will try them again, and will only cover such as willingly receive him. He knows very well when they desire no more his company, and will then beat at the sides of the Inclosure that he may be gone; at which time he is to be remov'd, and your Mares put into a fresh Inclosure.

These are the wise Means Nature makes use of, and I assure you, that of twenty Mares there will not three fail; whereas if they were cover'd in hand, the one half would not hold. There should be built in that Inclosure wherein the Stallion runs with the Mares, a little Lodge to retire and preserve him from the scorching Heats; in which there should be also a Manger, wherein you are to give him his Oats, Pease, split Beans, Bread, or what else he likes best: And he must be always thus had a care of while he is with the Mares, which will be about six or seven Weeks.

'You are to take care when you cover your 'Mares either in Hand or otherwise, that the Stallion and Mare feed alike; *viz.* if the Stallion be 'at Hay and Oats, which is commonly call'd *Hard-meat*, the Mare should be also at Hard-meat, o-'therwise she will not so readily hold. In like manner if the Stallion be at Grass, the Mare is also 'to be put to it. Mares which are very fat, hold

'with great difficulty; those which are but indifferently fat and plump, conceive with the greatest 'ease and facility.

'Mares retain a great deal better when they are 'hot or in season; this Heat excites the Horse, 'who upon his part performs that Action with the 'greater Ardour and Vigour. When the Mare is 'to be cover'd in hand, that she may the more certainly hold, let the Stallion and her be so placed 'in the Stable, as they may see each other, and so 'let them be kept for some time, which will 'animate them both; so that Generation will hardly fail.

'To bring a Mare in season, and make her to 'retain, you are to give her to eat for the space of 'eight Days before you bring her to the Horse, about two Quarts of Hempseed in the Morning, 'and as much at Night: If she refuse to eat it, 'mix it with a little Bran or Oats, or else make 'her to fast for a while; and if the Stallion 'eat also of it, it will contribute much to Generation.

As for the Age of the Stallion, he should not cover before he be six Years old, nor after he is fifteen: But as to this last you may regulate your self according to his Strength and Vigour. As to the Age of Mares, they should not be cover'd before they be three Years old; but the goodness of the Mares, and Foals which they shall bring forth, should regulate you as to this.

'It is a Maxim, that a Mare should never be 'horsed while she is bringing up her Foal, because 'the Foal to which she is giving suck, as well as 'that in her Belly, will receive prejudice by it, and 'the Mare her self will be also sooner spent: Yet 'People fancy it to be good Husbandry if a Mare 'bring forth yearly a Foal; whereas things rightly 'consider'd, there is more lost than gained. How-

ever,

'ever, if you will have your Mare cover'd, let it be 'seven or eight Days after she hath foaled, that so 'she may have time to cleanse; and if you can con-'veniently, do not give her the Stallion until she de-'sire him; and also increase by all means possi-'ble that Passion, as by strong feeding, *&c.* At 'least the Foal to which she gives suck will be 'better'd by this Method, and thereby receive the 'more strength to follow her at Grass, as also the 'Mare will more easily conceive, being brought thus 'in season.

'Those who desire to have Males, although the 'Duke cannot assent to it, may practise what fol-'lows; which may be experimented also upon o-'ther Creatures, such as Cows, Goats, Sheep, *&c.* 'You must then bring the Mare in season, and let 'her be cover'd very early in the Morning any time 'from the fourth Day of the Moon until it be full, 'but never in the decrease; and thus she shall not 'fail to bring forth a Male Colt; the truth whereof 'a little Experience will discover.

You may provide your self of young breeding Mares from your own Race; which as they are good, and of a good Breed, will bring you forth more beautiful Foals than any other, in respect that they have been engendred by a good Stallion, and that the same that covers them did also beget them; for there is no such thing as Incest among Horses. But you are not to make use of your Colts for Stallions, because they will much degenerate from the goodness of true Barbs; and if you should so make use of them from one Generation to another, they would at last become like to the natural Race of the Country wherein they are: Therefore I would never advise you to choose a Stallion from your own Breed, but rather that you would change him for a good Barb or Spanish Horse; but still make choice of the most beautiful Mares of your own Race to breed upon.

CHAP. XL.

When Foals are to be weaned or ſeparated from their Dames, and how they are to be order'd.

YOU ſhould have a Lodge large enough to contain all your Mares, that ſo upon occaſion they may be defended from the Injuries of the Weather; for there is no Creature to which Cold is a greater Enemy than to Horſes. Many are of opinion that Foals ſhould ſuck until they be a Year or two old: but this is a great miſtake, becauſe it makes them become dull and ill-ſhap'd, and makes you loſe the moſt part of that time for the fertility of your Mares.

You ſhould wean your Foals at the beginning of Winter, when it beginneth to grow cold, that is about *Martinmas*, or the middle of *November*, and wean them three Days before full Moon, and hang about their Necks upon a piece of Rope ſeven or eight Inches of the end of a Cow's Horn, to catch hold of them upon occaſion; after which bring them all into your Stable, with Racks and Mangers pretty low ſet.

'I rather think the reaſon why moſt Foals advance ſo ſlowly, and are not capable for Service until they be ſix or ſeven Years old, is becauſe they have not ſuckt long enough: Whereas, if they ſuckt the whole Winter over, they would be as good at four or five Years old, as they are now at eight. You may therefore judge by this if it be good Husbandry to wean ſo ſoon.

Let them all ſtand looſe together, and untied, with good ſtore of Litter, feeding them with good Hay and Wheat-Bran and ſometimes a few Oats; for it is a folly to ſay that Oats make Foals become blind, or their Teeth crooked.

'I am of opinion that Oats will wear their Teeth 'and make them ſooner to change, and alſo raze: 'Therefore the beſt way is to break them in a Mill, 'becauſe by endeavouring with their Jaws to bruiſe 'and chaw them, they ſtretch and ſwell their Eye 'and Nether-Jaw-Veins, which ſo attract the Blood 'and Humours, that they fall down upon the Eyes, 'and are many times the occaſion of loſing them: So 'that it is not the beating Quality of the Oats, which 'is the cauſe of this, but the difficulty they have in 'chawing them.

'It is further to be obſerv'd, that Foals thus fed 'with Grain, do not grow ſo high upon their Legs, 'but become broader and better knit than if they had 'eaten nothing but Hay and Bran, and will better 'endure fatigue.

When the Weather is good drive them forth into ſome incloſed place, where they may ſport themſelves. Put them to Graſs about the end of *May*, or as ſoon as there is Graſs enough to feed them, put all thoſe of one Year old together. You ſhould alſo have a Lodge capable to hold them all, the Door whereof ſhould be very large, that they may not hurt one another in going in or out.

'There are ſome Foals beneath ſix Months old, 'which although their Dames have abundance of 'Milk, yet decay daily, and have a Cough by rea'ſon of certain Pollicles or Skins that breed in their 'Stomachs, which obſtruct their breathing, and at 'laſt totally deſtroy them. The Remedy is to take 'the Bag wherein the Foal came forth of its 'Mother's Belly, and drying it, give as much of 'it amongſt Milk as you can take up with three Fin'gers. This Remedy is alſo good againſt all Diſeaſes 'that happen to them beneath ſix Years old. But if 'you cannot get the Bag, then dry the Lungs of a 'young Fox, and uſe it inſtead of the aforeſaid 'Powder.

At the end of a Year, in the ſame Seaſon, *viz.* about *Martinmas*, you are to take in the Foals again, which will now be a Year and a half old. Order, tie, and dreſs them as the reſt of your Horſes, and make them as gentle and familiar as poſſible. The next Summer, when they are two Years old, you may again put them to Graſs, or keep them in the Stable, that you may the more eaſily fit them for backing; but they are never to be backt until they be full three at leaſt.

'There are ſome Colts which having been well 'fed until they be a Year old, will attempt the co- 'vering the Fillies. This rarely happens at one Year 'old, but frequently at one and a half, and o- 'thers at two, and two and a half, according to 'their Conſtitution and Feeding. So ſoon as you 'perceive this, you muſt ſeparate them, leſt they 'ſhould ſpoil themſelves.

It is good to houſe your Foals every Winter, and to put them to Graſs every Summer until they be paſt three Years old, and they will be much the ſtronger and better ſhaped. It matters not what kind of Paſture they feed in, providing it be but dry, and have a watring place in it; for if they can fill their Bellies once in twenty four Hours it is ſufficient. The Secret therefore of raiſing fine Horſes in cold Countries, conſiſts in nothing elſe than keeping them warm in Winter, feeding them with dry Food, and turning them out in Summer to dry Paſtures.

Take two Colts alike well ſhap'd, begot by the ſame Stallion upon two Mares equally beautiful, and keep one of them warm in the Winter time, feeding him alſo with dry kind of Food until he be three Years old, and he will be almoſt as well ſhap'd as his Sire, which I ſuppoſe to be either a Barb or Spaniſh Horſe. Suffer the other again to run all Winter in the Fields until he be three Years old, and he

he ſhall have his Head and Neck big and thick, his Shoulders charged with Fleſh, and ſhall for his Stature or Size, be a moſt lubberly and perfect Cart-horſe: Whereby you may ſee how much dry Food and warm houſing do contribute to the Beauty of Horſes.

CHAP. XLI.

The ancient Method of preparing Running Horſes.

A Running Horſe ſhould be ſomewhat long Bodied, Nervous, of great Mettle, a good Wind, a good Appetite, very ſwift, and ſenſible of the Spurs. He ſhould be of an Engliſh Breed, or a Barb, of a little Size, with pretty ſmall Legs, but the Back-ſinews at a good diſtance from the Bone, ſhort-joynted, and neat well-ſhaped Feet; for large Feet are not at all for this Employment.

To prepare him for a Race, give him neither Hay nor Oats, but Bread made of half Barley and half Beans, baked in large and thick Cakes; let them be rather ſtale than new, three Pound at Noon, and three Pound at Night, is ſufficient in twenty four Hours. Inſtead of Hay give him Wheat-ſheaves unthreſhed, with the Ears upon them: Let his Drink be luke-warm Water mixed with a Handful or two of Bean and Barley-meal. Cover him well in a Stable without Light, and let him be well litter'd and kept warm Night and Day.

On the fifth Day in the Morning, after he has ſtood three Hours on the Bridle, take a Pound of Freſh-butter, before it be waſhed or ſalted, and mixing

mixing with it twenty five or thirty Cloves of bruiſed Garlick; make your Horſe to ſwallow it in Balls as big as large Wallnuts, with a Quart of White-wine, keeping him afterwards with his Head tied up in the Bridle pretty high, for three Hours, then feed him as before, with Bread, warm Water, and Wheat-ſheaves, but moderately of the laſt, becauſe you are not to fatten him, but on the contrary, (by diminiſhing and hardning his Fleſh) to increaſe his Wind and Vigour.

On the ſeventh Day air him abroad for the ſpace of an Hour juſt after Sun-riſing, and as much at Night before Sun-ſet, ſometimes racking or ſtepping, and ſometimes galloping him. But if he continue too fat, then do the ſame before Sun-riſing and after Sun-ſet. Then bringing him back, rub and cover him well, and feed him as before: And thus continue to air and exerciſe him every Day, giving him every fifth Day his Pound of Butter made up with Garlick into Balls; and alſo obſerving not to air or take him abroad on the Day that he takes his Balls, nor the Day following.

When he has taken three Doſes of his Garlick-balls; that is, fifteen Days after you firſt began to put him in keeping, you are to exerciſe him for two Hours in the Morning, and as much at Night, ſometimes at full Speed, then at a good Gallop, and afterwards at a Step, that he may recover his Wind: Remembring, as I have already told you, not to air him on the Day he takes his Balls, nor on the Day after: But upon the other Days when you have gallop'd him hard, diſmount, and lead him home in your Hand well cover'd; then rubbing and wiping him all over until he be perfectly dry, let him ſtand upon his Bridle with his Head tied up for three Hours, then give him his Water ſomewhat more than luke-warm, and feed him as before: And

thus

thus you are to order him for a Month, giving him his Garlick-Balls every fifth Day: But on the laſt five or ſix Days of the Month, you are to run and gallop him as ſharply as his Wind will allow him, giving him *Liſtenings* now and then in his Running, to take his Wind. Let his Exerciſe be for two Hours in the Morning, and as much at Night, leading him always back to the Stable in your hand, having firſt well covered him, and then rubbing and drying him, give him his Water and Meat as I have directed.

If after all this his Dung be ſtill ſlimy and viſcous, it ſhews that he is not as yet prepared; you muſt therefore continue his Balls, and Exerciſe, until his Dung come from him pretty dry, and without humity.

Two Nights before the Match he ſhall be put in the Muzzle all Night, and about two in the Morning give him three Pints of Sack, wherein twenty or twenty five new laid Eggs are beaten, then tie him up to the Rack two Hours, after which mount him, and put him to a gentle Gallop, then to a full ſpeed as long as his Wind will allow it; afterwards to a Gallop again to give him Wind; and thus you are to exerciſe him three Hours, then cover him, lead him home in your Hand, and rubbing him and drying him, tie him up with the Bridle to the Rack for three Hours; then give him his Water, but it muſt now be as hot as he can drink it, and then feed him as formerly.

On the Day of the Match give him his former quantity of Sack and Yolks of Eggs well beaten together, two Hours before he is to run; and he muſt be alſo tied up to the Rack ſix Hours before you give him his Sack. And on that Day, and the Day preceding, he is to eat but half his allowance of Bread at each Meal, and but half the Wheat-ſheaves you were accuſtomed to give him.

Upon

Upon the Days your Horſe is not to run, you are to feed and exerciſe him as I have told you: But if you find him exactly prepared, then give him Garlick-balls every ninth Day only.

If in the time of his dieting, or afterwards, the Horſe ſhould diſguſt or become coſtive, give him good Clyſters made of two Quarts of Milk and a Pint of Sallad-Oil, the whole being well mixed and luke-warm.

Theſe kind of Horſes are never to be rid but with very ſmall Snaffles, for fear of hindring their Breathing and Wind, which one of our great Bits would certainly do. The Rider is to lean a little forward, to prevent the Wind taking too much hold upon his Body, a Cap inſtead of a Hat, very ſmall and ſharp Spurs, and he is to Spur near to the Flank with little ſtrokes, becauſe ſtrong and great ſtrokes do rather hinder than augment his ſpeed.

The Method here ſet down by Monſieur *Solliſel*, concludes the firſt part of his Book: But he having never made tryal of it himſelf, (his Countrymen being generally great Strangers to this Diverſion) he gives it only upon the recommendation of an *Engliſh* Jocky. I thought therefore it would not be amiſs, that ſince it differs ſo much from the manner of preparing Race-Horſes uſed at this time, to ſubjoin the modern way of preparing Horſes for a Courſe, collected from the beſt Authors who have treated on this ſubject.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

The modern way of preparing running Horſes.

A Horſe deſigned for Racing ſhould be tractable, and no ways Reſty or Skittiſh. His Head ſhould be ſmall and ſlender, with wide Noſtrils and a large Throple. Let him have alſo a pretty large reach, and good Feet. His Age ſhould be ſix Years at leaſt, no Horſe under that Age having ſufficient ſtrength for a four Mile Courſe, without running the hazard of being over-ſtrained.

The next thing to be conſidered is the limitation of time for preparing a Horſe for a Match; and it is generally agreed by judicious Horſemen, that (unleſs the Match be for an extraordinary Sum) two Months is ſufficient. But herein you are to have regard to the eſtate of your Horſe's Body.

As *firſt*, If he be very fat, foul, or taken from Graſs.

Secondly, If he be extreamly lean and poor.

Thirdly, If he be in good caſe, and hath had moderate exerciſe.

Now for the firſt, you muſt take two Months at leaſt to bring him into order: For he will require much Airing, great carefulneſs in Heating, and diſcretion in Scouring.

For the ſecond, that is, very poor, get as long time as you can; and let his Airings be moderate, and not before or after Sun; feeding him liberally, but not ſo as to cloy him.

For the third, a Month or ſix Weeks may be ſufficient.

In the next place, you muſt conſider his particular Conſtitution; as if he be fat and foul, yet of a free and waſting nature, apt quickly to conſume and

and loſe his Fleſh; in this caſe, you muſt not have too ſtrict a Hand, neither can he endure ſo violent Exerciſe, as if he were of an hardy diſpoſition, and would feed and be fat upon all Meats and Exerciſes.

Again, If he be in extream Poverty, and yet by nature very hardy, and apt ſoon to recover his Fleſh, and long to hold it, then by no means ſhould you have ſo liberal and tender a hand, nor forbear that exerciſe which you would uſe to a Horſe of a tender Conſtitution, weak Stomach, and free Spirit.

The firſt Fortnights Feeding of a Horſe who is fat, foul, or newly taken from Graſs.

Aſſoon as his Body is emptied, and the Graſs voided, which will be within three or four Days at moſt, you ſhall every Morning at break of Day, put on his Bridle, being firſt waſh'd in Ale, or Beer; and after you have dreſſed him, cover him according to the ſeaſon of the Year. Then clap on his Saddle, and girt the foremoſt Girt pretty ſtrait, and the other ſomewhat ſlack, and wisp him on each ſide of his Heart with pretty ſoft Wiſps between the two Girths, that both of them may be of equal ſtraitneſs; then put before his Breaſt a warm Breaſt-Cloth, and let it cover both his Shoulders. Then (if you have taken no Tobacco) ſquirt a little Ale or Beer out of your Mouth into the Horſe's, leaving ſome body to trim up the Stable in your abſence. For your Horſe muſt always ſtand upon good ſtore of dry Litter, Night and Day, and it muſt be either Wheat-Straw or Oat-Straw; for Barly-Straw, and Rye-Straw are unwholſome, the firſt cauſing Heart-burning, the laſt Scouring.

When you are mounted, walk him a foot-pace, which we call Racking, for a Mile or two (for you muſt neither Amble nor Trot, becauſe they are both

both prejudicial to ſpeed) upon ſmooth and equal Ground, and if it have a gentle Riſing ſo much the better: There gallop him gently, afterwards walk him ſoftly, that ſo he may cool as much one way as he warms another. And when you have thus exerciſed him a pretty ſpace, and the Sun is newly riſen, rack him down to ſome freſh River or clear Pond, and there let him drink at his pleaſure. After he hath drunk, bring him gently out of the Water, and rack him away very eaſily, and not as ignorant Grooms do, who as ſoon as a Horſe comes out of the Water, force him into a Gallop, which either teaches him to run away with you as ſoon as he is water'd, or maketh him refuſe to drink, fearing the violence of his Exerciſe which is to follow: When you have thus walked him a little calmly, put him into a Gallop gently, and exerciſe him moderately as you did before: Then walk him a little ſpace, after which offer him more Water: If he drink, then gently gallop him again; if he refuſe, then gallop him to occaſion thirſt, and thus always give him exerciſe both before and after Water.

When you think he hath drunk ſufficiently, bring him home gently without a wet Hair, or the leaſt Sweat upon him, and when you are come to the Stable-door provoke him to Piſs if you can, by ſtirring up ſome of the Litter, which is at the Door, under him. If he do not Stale at firſt, no matter, a little cuſtom will bring him to it, and is good for his Health, and will keep the Stable clean.

This done, tie his Head up to the Rack in his Bridle, then rub down his Legs with hard Wiſps, as ſtrongly as you can; looſe his Breaſt-cloth, and rub his Head, Neck, and Breaſt with a dry Cloth; then take off his Saddle, and rub him all over, eſpecially his Back where the Saddle ſtood, then cloathing him according to the Seaſon, girt on his Surcingle,

cingle, and ſtop it with ſmall and ſoft Wiſps, which will make it the eaſier. Stop his Feet with Cow-dung, or his own Dung a very little moiſtned with freſh Water, then throw into the Rack a little bundle of Hay well duſted and wrapt hard together, and let him eat it ſtanding upon his Bridle. When he hath ſtood ſo an Hour, take it off, and rub his Head and Neck very well with a Hempen or Hair-Cloth, then drawing his Bridle, make clean the Manger, and put a Quart of ſweet, dry, old, and clean dreſs'd Oats, into a Sieve that may keep the good and full, and let the light Oats go through it; and if he eat them with a good Appetite, let him have again the ſame quantity, and ſo let him reſt till Eleven a Clock with the Windows cloſe, for the darker you keep him the better, becauſe it will make him lie down and take his reſt, which otherwiſe he would not ſo readily do. At Eleven a Clock rub his Head and Neck as before, and give him another Quart of Oats; then leave him in the dark Stable till One after Noon, at which time rub him and feed him as before, giving him alſo another ſmall bundle of Hay, and leave him dark till watering time.

Watering time being come, dreſs him as in the Morning, then Cloath, Saddle, lead him forth and urge him to empty; then mounting him, rack him abroad, but not to riſing Ground as in the Morning, if you can find other that is plain and level, and there Air him in all Points as you did in the Morning, galloping him gently before and after his Water, rack him home to the Stable-door, and in your way let him ſmell upon every old and new Dung you meet with, to provoke him to empty. Being alighted, do as you did in the Morning, both without Doors and within, and ſo let him reſt till Nine at Night.

At Nine rub down his Legs well with Wisps, and his Head and Neck with a clean Cloth; then turning up his Cloathes, rub all his hinder Parts, and give him a Quart of sifted Oats, and then a little hard bundle of Hay, and toss up his Litter, so leave him till next Morning.

And thus you shall keep him constantly for the first Fortnight, which will so take away his foulness, and harden his Flesh, that the next Fortnight you may adventure to give him some gentle Heats. But whereas it may be objected, that many Horses that have good Appetites, would be half starved or become very weak, if they were scanted to a Quart of Oats at a Meal. To this I answer, that I set not down this proportion as an infallible Rule, having told you, that if he eat it with a good Stomach you may give him another; so leaving the proportion to your own judgment and discretion.

The second Fortnights Feeding.

In this Fortnight you shall do all things as in the first; only before you put on his Bridle, you shall give him a Quart or better of clean sifted Oats, then bridle and dress him, Cloath, Saddle, Air, Water, Exercise, and bring him home as in the first Fortnight; only you shall now put no Hay into his Rack, but give it him out of your Hand, handful after handful, and so leave him on his Bridle for an Hour: Then after Rubbing, *&c.* sift another Quart of Oats and set them by. Then take a Loaf of Bread that is three Days old at least, made after this manner.

The first Bread.

Take three Pecks of clean Beans, and one Peck of fine Wheat, mix them together, and grind them into pure Meal. Then bolt it pretty fine, and knead it up with great store of fresh Barm and Lightning, but with as little Water as may be: Labour it well in a Trough; break it, and cover it warm that it may swell: Then knead it over again, and mould it into big Loaves, and so bake them well, and let them soak soundly. After they are drawn from the Oven, turn the bottoms upward, and let them cool. At three Days old you may give him this Bread, but not sooner; for nothing is more apt to surfeit than new Bread. If it be dank or clammy, so that the Horse takes distaste thereat, then cut the Loaf into thin Shives, and lay it abroad in a Sieve to dry, and then crumbling it small amongst his Oats, you may give it him without danger. When you give him this Bread, chip it very well, and crumbling it pretty small, mix it with the Oats you had sifted and set by. You may give him as much Bread as may countervail the quantity of Oats, or more if you think fit, and so leave him till eleven a Clock, and then give him the same quantity of Oats and Bread, and let him rest till the Afternoon.

At One Afternoon, if you intend not to give him an Heat the next Day, feed him with Bread and Oats as in the Forenoon, and so every Meal following for that Day.

But if you intend the next Day to give him an Heat, then you shall only give him a Quart of clean sifted Oats, but no Hay, and so let him rest till Evening. At four a Clock give him the like quantity of clean-sifted Oats; and after he has eaten them, Bridle, Dress, Cloath, Saddle, Water, Air, Exercise, bring home, and order him as before shewed; only give him neither Hay nor Bread among

among his Oats for that Night. After he hath ſtood about an Hour upon his Bridle, give him another Quart of Oats, and when he hath eaten them, put a ſweet and clean Muzzle upon him, and ſo let him reſt till nine at Night. At nine give him another Quart of Oats, and when he hath eaten them, put on his Muzzle again, toſs up his Litter, and leave him till next Morning.

The Muzzle is to keep the Horſe from eating up his Litter, from knawing upon Boards and Mud-walls, *&c.* They are made ſometimes of Leather ſtampt full of Holes; but theſe are unſavoury and unwholſome; beſides they are too cloſe and too hot, and both make a Horſe ſick, and cauſe him to forbear Reſt. But the beſt Muzzles for Winter or Summer are the Net-Muzzles, made of ſtrong Packthread, and knit very thick and cloſe in the bottom, and then enlarged upwards to the middle of the Horſe's Head; at which place they are bound about with a Tape, and have alſo a Loop and String, whereby they are faſtned to the Horſe's Head.

The next Morning come to him before Day, if he be ſtanding on his Feet; but if be laid, by no means diſturb him. Take a Quart of well-ſifted Oats and rub between your Hands with ſome ſtrong Ale or Beer, but let them not be too moiſt for fear of offence; and when he hath eaten them, dreſs and ſaddle him as formerly. Then being ready to go forth, draw his Bridle-Rein over the top of the Rack, ſo as you may draw his Head aloft. Then take a new laid Egg or two, and breaking them in his Mouth, make him to ſwallow them down, waſhing his Mouth after it with a little Beer or Ale, and ſo lead him out, not forgetting to provoke him to empty at the Door: Then mount and rack him gently to the Courſe, making him by the way to ſmell at every Horſe's Dung you ſhall meet with.

When you are come within a Mile or thereabouts of the Starting-Poſt, diſmount and take off his Body-Cloth and Breaſt-Cloth, and girt on the Saddle again: Then ſending away your Groom with thoſe Clothes, and the dry Rubbing Clothes, let him ſtay at the end of the Race till you come. This done, rack your Horſe gently up to the Starting-Poſt, if there be any, making him ſmell at it, that ſo he may know the beginning and end of the Courſe. There ſtart him roundly and ſharply, and give him his Heat according to the following Directions.

Some few Things to be obſerved in giving of Heats.

Firſt, Two in a Week are ſufficient for any Horſe.

Secondly, That one of them ſhould always be given on that Day of the Week on which your Horſe is to run his Match, and that alſo ſtill to be the ſharpeſt for encreaſing of his Swiftneſs; the other being only a ſlow galloping over the Courſe, more to encreaſe Wind and cauſe Sweat, than to improve Speed. As ſuppoſe your Match is to be upon a *Munday*, then your Heating-Days muſt be *Mondays* and *Fridays*, and the ſharper Heat to be upon the *Monday*: If the Day be *Tueſday*, then *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*: If *Wedneſday*, then *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, by reaſon of the *Lord's-Day*: If *Thurſday*, then *Thurſdays* and *Mondays*, and ſo of the reſt.

Thirdly, You ſhall give no Heat (but in caſe of neceſſity) in Rain or foul Weather, but rather defer Hours and change Days; for it is unwholſom and dangerous. And therefore in caſe of ſudden Showers and uncertain Weather, you ſhall have for your Horſe a Hood lined quite thorow to keep

out

out the Rain. Nothing being more dangerous than cold Wet falling into the Ears, and upon the Nape of the Neck and Fillets.

Fourthly. Give your Heats, (the Weather being ſeaſonable) at the break of Day, but by no means in the Dark, as being unwholſom and dangerous.

Fifthly, When you begin your Heat, ſtart your Horſe roundly and ſharply, at near a three-quarters-Speed; and if it be on the Day of the Week that his Match will fall on, then according to his Strength, goodneſs of Wind, and chearfulneſs of Spirit, run him the whole Courſe thorow; and by no means do any thing in extremity or above his Wind; but when you find him a little to yield, then draw a little, and give him eaſe, that he may do all with Pleaſure, and not with Anguiſh: For this manner of training will make him take delight in his Labour. The other Heat in each Week muſt be more gentle, the deſign of it being only to encreaſe Wind and cauſe Sweat, that ſo the Scouring you are to give him after his Heat may have ſome looſe Greaſe to work upon and bring away. You ſhould therefore let him go over the Courſe at a ſlow and gentle Gallop; for if both the Heats were ſmart, the Horſe would not be able to hold out, there being ſo ſhort an Intermiſſion between them for him to reſt and recover his Vigour. Alſo in courſing you ſhall obſerve upon what Ground he runs beſt; as whether Up-hill or Down-hill, upon Smooth-ground or Rough, Wet or Dry, a Level or Ground ſomewhat riſing, that you may manage him for your advantage.

When you have finiſh'd your Heat, and gently gallop'd him up and down (the Groom being ready) ride him into ſome warm Place or Corner, and

with your Scraping-Knife, made of a broken Sword-blade, or a thin piece of old hard Oak, ſcrape off the Sweat from every Part (Buttocks excepted) until you can make no more ariſe, moving him a little now and then, leſt his Limbs become ſtiff; then with dry Clothes rub him all over; take off his Saddle, and having ſcraped his Back, and rubbed it near dry, put on his Body-Cloth and Breaſt-Cloth, and girt on the Saddle again; then mount and gallop him gently, now and then wiping his Head, Neck and Body as you ſit upon his Back. Laſt of all, walk him about the Fields to cool him; and when you find him begin to dry apace, rack him homewards, ſometimes ſtepping, ſometimes galloping: But bring him not to the Stable till you find him throughly dry. When you are come to the Door, intice him to empty, then tie him to the Rack, and (having prepared it your ſelf before, or at leaſt one for you againſt your coming) give him one of theſe Scourings following.

Two excellent Scourings for Running-Horſes; either of which may be ſafely given after a Heat, to bring away molten Greaſe, or other Foulneſs in a Horſe's Body.

Take a Pint of Syrup of Roſes, or for want of it, a Pint of ſtrong honyed Water, and diſſolve into it of Caſſia, Agarick, and Myrrh, of each an Ounce, ſhaking them well together in a Glaſs; then being mull'd and made warm upon a gentle Fire, and the Horſe newly come from his Heat, give it him luke-warm.

Another.

Take a Pint of Canary, Malaga, or Sherry, and pulverizing an Ounce of the fineſt Rozin, put it therein; which being incorporated, add to them ſix

fix Ounces of Oil-olive, and two Ounces of brown Sugarcandy beaten to Powder, with an Ounce of the Juice of Savin, or Powder of Rhubarb, mix or brew all together, and warming it over a gentle Fire, give it the Horſe luke-warm.

How to order him after his Scouring.

As ſoon as you have given it to him, rub his Legs well, take off his Saddle, and if his Body be dry, run ſlightly over it with a Curry-comb, then a Bruſh; and laſtly rub him over very well with a dry Cloth, and cloath him up warm, throwing alſo over him, if the Weather be cold, a looſe Blanket. Let him faſt full two Hours after taking the Scouring; and during that time go not out of the Stable, but keep him awake by making a noiſe, and ſtirring him now and then.

After he has faſted upon the Bridle two Hours, take a Handful of Wheat-ears, and coming to him feel the Roots of his Ears, and under his Clothes next to his Heart, and upon his Flanks; and if you find any new Sweat ariſe, or Coldneſs, or that his Flank beat, or Breaſt move faſt, then forbear to give him any thing, it being a ſign there is much Foulneſs ſtirred up, on which the Scouring is working with a conquering Quality, which makes him a little ſick: So that you ſhall only take off his Bridle, put on his Collar, toſs up his Litter, and abſent your ſelf (the Stable being dark and quiet) for two Hours, which is commonly the longeſt time that Sickneſs will continue: But if you find no ſuch Indiſpoſition in him, then give him the Ears of Wheat three or four together; and if he eat one handful give him another, and ſo until he eat three or four Handfuls, but no more: Then drawing his Bridle and rubbing his Head well, give him a little Bunble of Hay well duſted; about an Hour

after give him a Quart of clean Oats with two or three Handfuls of ſplit Beans amongſt them, and break alſo into them two or three Shives of Bread clean chip'd, and then leave him for two or three Hours.

At Evening, before you dreſs him, give him the like quantity of Oats, Beans and Bread, and when he hath eaten them, Bridle, Dreſs, and Cloath him; but you ſhall not air him abroad this Evening, becauſe the Scouring yet working in his Body after the Heat, he muſt not have any Water at all. After he is dreſs'd and hath ſtood two Hours on his Bridle, give him three Pints of clean Oats waſhed in Beer or Ale, which will inwardly cool him as if he had drank Water, and you are ſure he can receive no prejudice by it. After he has eaten all his waſht Meat, and reſted upon it a little ſpace, you ſhall at his feeding times, which have been ſpoken of before, with Oats and ſplit Beans, or Oats and Bread, or all together, or each of them by it ſelf, according to the liking of the Horſe, feed him that Night in a plentiful manner, and leave a Knob of Hay in the Rack when you go to bed.

The next Day early, firſt Feed, then Dreſs, Cloath, Saddle, Air, Water, and bring him home as at other times; only have a more careful Eye to his emptying, and obſerve how his Greaſe and Foulneſs waſteth. At his feeding times, feed him as was laſt ſhewed you, only very little Hay, and keep your Heating Days and the preparation the Day before, as hath been declared. Thus you ſhall ſpend the ſecond Fortnight, in which your Horſe having received four Heats Horſeman-like given to him, with four Scourings, there is no doubt but his Body will be inwardly clean. You ſhall therefore the next Fortnight order him according to the Directions following.

The Third Fortnight's Feeding.

The third Fortnight you ſhall make his Bread finer than it was formerly; as thus:

The Second Bread.

Take two Pecks of clean Beans, and two Pecks of fine Wheat, and grind them well together; then bolt and knead it up with Barm or Lightning, and make it up as you did the former Bread.

With this Bread, having the Cruſt clean cut away, and Oats and ſplit Beans mix'd together, or ſeverally if you think fit, feed your Horſe at his uſual Meals, as formerly, only with theſe few differences.

Firſt, you ſhall not give the Heat which falleth upon the Day of the Week the Match is to be run upon, ſo ſmartly and violently as before, that he be not overſtrained and made ſore before the Match. Next you ſhall not after his Heats give him any Scourings; but inſtead thereof inſtantly upon the end of his Heat, after he is a little cooled and cloathed up, and in the ſame place where you rub him give him one of the following Balls as big as a Hen's Egg.

The true Receipt of Mr. Markham's *famous Cordial Balls, ſo much eſteemed by the Generality of our* Engliſh *Farriers.*

Take Anniſeeds, Cummin-ſeeds, Fennegreek-ſeeds, Carthamus-ſeeds, Elecampane-roots, and Colts-foot, of each two Ounces, beaten and ſearced very fine, as alſo two Ounces of the Flour of Brimſtone. Then take an Ounce of the Juice of Liquoriſh and diſſolve it on the Fire in half a Pint of White-wine:

wine: Then take of the Chimical Oyl of Anniſeeds one Ounce, of Sallad-Oyl, Honey, and Syrup of Sugar, or for want of it *Moloſſus*, of each half a Pint; mix all with the former Powders, and with as much fine Wheat-Flour as will bind and knit them together; work them into a ſtiff Paſte, which keep in a Gally-pot cloſe covered, and give as you find occaſion.

If to prevent Sickneſs; anoint a Ball all over with Freſh-Butter, and give it him as a Pill in the Morning faſting: Then ride him a little after it, or let him ſtand upon his Bridle for an Hour, Feeding and Watring according to cuſtom; and do this three or four Mornings together.

If for a Cough or violent Cold, or to fatten a Horſe, then give them for a Week together, or longer if needful.

If your Horſe has an inward rattling by reaſon of a Cold or Rheum, diſſolve a Ball in a Pint of Sack, and give it him warm. Or if you diſſolve it in warm Water, it will have the ſame effect, and fattens exceedingly. A Ball in the Morning before Travel will prevent his wearying too ſoon; in the heat of Travel will refreſh his Spirits; and after Travel will recover Wearineſs and prevent Sickneſs.

The Fourth and laſt Fortnight's Feeding.

For the fourth and laſt Fortnight you ſhall make your Bread much finer than either of the former.

The laſt and fineſt Bread.

Take three Pecks of fine Wheat and one Peck of Beans, grind and bolt them through the fineſt Bolter you can get; then knead it up with new ſtrong Ale and Barm beaten together, and the Whites of twenty Eggs or more, and no Water at all, but inſtead there-

thereof a ſmall quantity of new Milk; then work it up, bake, and order it as the former; and with this Bread, having the Cruſt firſt cut away, clean Oats, and ſplit Beans, all mixed or ſeveral, feed your Horſe at his ordinary Feeding times, as you did in the Fornight before: Only you ſhall obſerve theſe few Directions following.

Firſt you ſhall keep your Heating-Days the firſt Week of this Fortnight; but the ſecond or laſt Week you ſhall forbear one Heat, and not give your Horſe any five Days before his Match, but inſtead thereof long and ſtrong Airings and Water-courſes, to keep him in Wind.

You need not in this Fortnight to give him any Scouring at all: and if Morning and Evening you burn Frankincenſe in the Stable, it is wholſom for the Horſe, and he will delight therein.

In this Fortnight, when you give him any waſht Meat, waſh it not in Ale or Beer, but in the Whites of Eggs or Muskadine, being more wholſom and leſs purſey. This Fortnight give him no Hay, but what he takes out of your Hand after his Heats, and that but in little quantity and clean dufted.

The laſt Week of this Fortnight, if he be a foul Feeder, you muſt uſe the Muzzle continually: But if he be a clean Feeder, and will touch no Litter, then three Days before the Match is ſufficient.

On the Morning the Day before your Match, feed well before and after Watring and Airing; and water as at other times before Noon; and after Noon diminiſh his Portion of Meat a little.

Before and after Evening Airing, feed as at Noon, and water as at other times; but be ſure to come home before Sun-ſet.

This Evening you are to trim and ſhoe your Horſe, taking care not to hinder his Feeding, nor to interrupt his Reſt: For I have heard Horſemen ſay, that when they had ſhod their Horſes with

with light Shoes or Plates, the Night before the Courſe, their Horſes have taken ſuch notice thereof, that they would neither eat what they gave them, nor lie down to take any reſt all the Night following: But a Horſe muſt be old and long experienced in this Exerciſe to make ſuch ſubtil Obſervations. However, I adviſe that things of neceſſity be done upon this Day, rather than upon the Morning of the Courſe, becauſe on that Morning he ſhould have nothing to trouble him.

Late at Night feed as you did in the Evening, and give him what he likes beſt, according to his Stomach, only as little Bread and Beans as poſſible; then putting on his Muzzle, and toſſing up his Litter, leave him quiet till next Morning.

The next Morning (being that of the Match Day) come to him before Day, take off his Muzzle, rub his Head well, and give him a pretty quantity of Oats waſhed in Muskadine if he will eat them, or elſe in the Whites of Eggs. If he refuſe both, then try him with fine dreſs'd Oats, dry and mix'd with a little Wheat: After he hath eaten them, if he be a ſlow emptier, walk him abroad, and in the places where he uſed to empty, there entice him to it, which, as ſoon as he hath done, bring him home, put on his Muzzle, and let him reſt until you have warning to make ready. But if he be a free Emptier, then you need not ſtir him, but let him lie quiet.

When you have warning to make ready, take off his Muzzle, and having waſhed his Snaffle in a little Muskadine, bridle him up. But before you bridle him, if you think him too empty, give him three or four mouthfuls of the waſh'd Meat laſt ſpoken of. Then bridle up and dreſs him. Afterwards pitching your Saddle and Girths with Shoemakers-Wax, ſet it on his Back and girt it gently, ſo that he may only feel the Girths, but have no ſtraitneſs: Then lay

lay a clean Sheet over the Saddle, and over it his ordinary Cloaths, then his Body-Cloth and Breast-Cloth, and wisp him round with soft Wisps. And being ready to draw out, give him half a Pint of the best Muskadine in a Horn, and so lead him away.

In all your leading, use gentle and calm motions, suffering him to smell upon any Dung, and where you find Rushes, long Grass, Heath, or the like, walk in, and entice him to Piss; but if you find no such help, then in some certain places where you lead him, and especially near to the place where you are to mount; and having accustomed him to it before, break some of the Straw wherewith he is wisped, under him; and thus intice him, if you can, to Stale or Piss; and if any white or thick Foam or Froth arise about his Mouth, with a clean Handkerchief, wipe it away; and, carrying a Bottle of clean Water about you, wash his Mouth now and then with it.

When you are come to the place of Starting, before you uncloath the Horse, rub and chafe his Legs well, then pick his Feet, and wash his Mouth with Water, mount his Rider, and having adjusted the Stirrups, let him walk him softly to the Starting-Post, and there starting fair, let him run him to the best advantage.

Some useful Observations while a Horse is preparing for a Match.

If his Dung be neither so thin that it will run, nor so thick but that it will a little flatten on the Ground, and of a pale yellow colour, then is the Horse clean and well fed. If in round Pellets, and blackish or brown, it shews inward Heat. If greasie, it shews foulness. If red and hard, then he hath had too strong Heats, and Costiveness will follow.

follow. If it be pale and looſe, it ſhews inwa
coldneſs of Body, or too moiſt feeding.

If his Urine be of a pale yellowiſh colour, rath
thick than thin, and of a ſtrong Smell, it ſhe
Health. If it be of a high complexion, clear a
tranſparent, like old *March-Beer*, then is he i
flamed in his Body, and hath taken ſome Surfe
If it be like Blood, or inclining to Blood, he ha
had too ſore Heats, been over-ridden, or ridden to
early after Winter-Graſs. If green, it ſhews a Co
ſumption of the Body. If with bloody Streaks, a
Ulcer in the Kidnies. If black, thick, and cloud
it preſages Death.

If he Sweat ſtanding ſtill in the Stable, or walk
ing a Foot-pace, or the like; or if his Sweat b
white and frothy, like Soap-ſuds, then is he fo
and wants Exerciſe. But if the Sweat be blac
and as it were only Water thrown upon him, the
is he luſty and in good caſe.

Altho' I have given no Directions for Waterin
in the Evening after a Heat, yet you may in th
three laſt Fortnights (finding your Horſe clean, an
the Greaſe quite conſumed) ſomewhat late a
Night give him a reaſonable quantity of Wate
made Milk-warm, and faſting about an Hour afte
it. Alſo if the Weather be unſeaſonable, you ſha
at your Watering-Hours, Water in the Houſe wit
warm Water, throwing into it a handful of Whea
Bran, or Oat-meal, but Oat-meal is the beſt.

CHA

CHAP. XLIII.

Of Ambling.

THere are many different Methods uſed in teaching Horſes to Amble; ſuch as Ambling by the help of a plowed Field; by Weights; by Hinder-Shoes, with long Spurns or Plates at the Toes; by the help of fine Liſts, *&c.* all of which are defective, and have great Inconveniences attending them. I ſhall therefore ſhew you the trueſt and eaſieſt way to make a Horſe to Amble, which is this.

Mount his Back, and try with your Hand, by a gentle and deliberate Racking, and preſſing of the Horſe forward, by helping him in the Weeks of his Mouth with your Snaffle (which muſt be ſmooth, big, and full) and correcting him firſt on one ſide, then on the other with the Calves of your Legs, and ſometimes with the Spur. Now if you can make him of himſelf to ſtrike into an Amble, though ſhuffling and diſorderly, there will be much labour ſaved. But if you find he can by no means apprehend the Motion you deſign to teach him, ſtruggle not with him, but make uſe of the Tramel in manner following.

The form of a Tramel.

Firſt, for the *Side-Ropes*, they muſt be made of the beſt, fineſt, and ſtrongeſt Pack-thread, twiſted by the Rope-maker into a ſtrong Cord, not above the bigneſs of a ſmall Jack-Line, with a Nooſe or Loop at each end, ſo ſtrong as is poſſible to be made. Neither muſt they be twiſted too hard, but gently, and with a yielding quality, for that will bring on the motion more eaſily, and keep the

Tramel

Tramel from breaking. Now theſe Side-Ropes muſt be juſt thirty ſix Inches in length for an Horſe of an ordinary Stature, and longer or ſhorter according to the ſize of the Horſe.

Secondly, The *Hoſe*, which muſt be placed in the ſmall of the Fore-Leg, and the ſmall of the Hinder-Leg, above the Paſtern-Joints, they muſt be made of fine, ſoft, and pliant Girt-Web, lined with double Cotten: Over the Girt-Web muſt be faſten'd ſtrong Tabs of white Neats-Leather well tallowed, and ſuted to an even length, and ſtamped with Holes at equal diſtance, which Tabs ſhall paſs through the Nooſes of the Side-Ropes, and be made longer or ſhorter at pleaſure with very ſtrong Buckles, and which Hoſe are to be made faſt about the Horſe's Legs with ſmall Buckles. Now theſe Hoſe of Girt ſhould be four Inches in length, and the long Tabs with the large Buckles ten.

Thirdly, The *Back-band* being of no other uſe but to bear up the Side-Ropes, ſhould (if you tramel all four Legs) be made of fine Girt-Web, lined with Cotten; but if you tramel only one ſide, then an ordinary Tape will ſerve, being ſure that it carries the Side-Ropes in an even line, without riſing or falling; for if it riſe, it ſhortens the Side-Rope; and if it falls, it endangers tangling. In ſhort, the *Side-Ropes* muſt be firm, without yielding a jot; the *Hoſe* muſt be ſoft, lie cloſe, and not move from their firſt place; and the *Back band* muſt be flat, light, and ſo defended from the Fillets that it may not gall.

Having brought your Horſe into an even ſmooth Path, having the Hoſe made faſt about his Legs, untie the long Tabs of the near Fore-Leg, and the near Hinder-Leg, then put to them the Side-Rope, and ſee that he ſtand without ſtraitning or enlarging his natural ſituation, and in that even and juſt length ſtay the Side-Rope by a ſmall Tape faſten'd up

up to the Saddle: Then with your Hand on the Bridle, ſtraitning and pulling his Head, put him gently forward; and, if need be, have the help of a By-ſtander to put him forward alſo, and ſo force him to Amble up and down the Road, with all the gentleneſs you can, ſuffering him to take his own leiſure; and tho he ſnapper, or ſtumble, or perhaps fall now and then, yet it matters not: do you only ſtay his Head, give him leave to riſe, and with all gentleneſs put him forward again.

And that this may be done with the more eaſe and leſs amazement to the Horſe, it is not amiſs (at his firſt Trameling) to give your *Side-Ropes* more length than ordinary, that the Twitches may be leſs ſudden, and the Motion coming more gently, the Horſe may ſooner apprehend it. But as ſoon as he comes to a little Perfection, then put the Side-Ropes to their true length; for an Inch too long is a Foot too ſlow in the Pace; and an Inch too ſhort, cauſes rowling, twitching up of the Legs, and indeed a kind of plain halting.

When the Horſe will thus Amble in your Hand perfectly, being Trameled on one ſide, you ſhall then change it to the other ſide, and ſo from one ſide to another, till with the Half-Tramel he will run and Amble in your Hand without ſnappering or ſtumbling, both readily and ſwiftly. When this is attained to, which, if he be tractable, cannot be above two or three Hours labour, you may then put on the whole Tramel, with the broad, flat, Back-band, trameling both ſides equally, and ſo run him in your Hand along the Road, at the utmoſt length of the Bridle; then pauſe, cheriſh, and to it again; and when he is perfect in this, then put him upon rough ways, where there are Clots, hollowneſs, and falſe Treading.

When he is thus perfect in Hand, ſet a Boy or Groom upon his Back, making the Horſe to Amble

under him, whilſt you lead and ſtay his Head to prevent danger, or to ſee how he ſtrikes. Then mount your ſelf, and with all gentleneſs increaſe his Pace more and more, till you come to Perfection. And as you did before in Hand, ſo do now on his Back, firſt with the Half-Tramel, then with the whole, and change from one ſide to another, and alſo alter Grounds; and this you muſt do twice or thrice a Day.

When you have brought him to Perfection, you may take away the Tramel and exerciſe him without it; but let it be done upon the High-way, and not in a private ſmooth Road, which affords but a coſening Pace, and will be left upon every ſmall wearineſs: Therefore pace him on the High-way, three, four, or five Miles in a Morning, and if you find him willing to forſake his Pace, put on the Half-Tramel again.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Vices in Horſes, and how to prevent, correct, and remedy them.

IF your Horſe carry his Head and Neck awry, obſerve to which ſide he inclines it, and ſtrike him twice or thrice with the contrary Spur: But if he be very ſtiff-necked on the right ſide, and plying or bending on the left, then hold the right Rein ſhorter than the other, and when you perceive him to incline that way, give him ſudden checks, having a ſharp Wire faſten'd in the Rein, that ſtriking in his Neck, he may be obliged to hold it ſtrait, obſerving to check him upwards, leſt he get a habit of ducking down his Head.

If your Horſe duck down his Head, check him ſuddenly with the Bridle, and ſtrike him with the Spurs, that he may be ſenſible of his Fault. If he be ſtanding, make him bring his Head into its right place, as he ſtands; if going, let it be whilſt he is moving; and when he obeys, be ſure to cheriſh him, and he will ſoon underſtand the meaning.

If your Horſe be ſubject, upon the leaſt occaſion, to ſhake his Head and Ears, or move the latter when he intends to kick, or bite, or caſt you, ſtrike him on the Head with your Wand, and at the ſame time give him a check with your Bridle, and a ſtroke with your contrary Spur, putting him ſuddenly out of his Pace, and then make him ſtop, that he may have leiſure to underſtand your meaning; and the like do when he ſtarts, or when he winches, which is a ſign of his intending to bite, or ſtrike with his Heels.

If he be *Reſty*, that is, will not go forwards, the way then is to pull him backwards, and perhaps

he will then go forwards; this ſeldom fails: but if it ſhould, then make uſe of your Spurs to the purpoſe, and let another Perſon on Foot whip him forward; and altho' he rebel a long time, the Whip and Spurs will perſwade him at laſt, if they be given ſharply, ſoundly, and in time; and when once you begin, you muſt continue them until he yield; provided it proceeds from Stubborneſs, and not from Fainting or Sickneſs.

If he *rears an end*, that is, riſes ſo high before, as to endanger his coming over upon his Rider, you muſt give him the Bridle, and leaning forward with your whole weight, give him both your Spurs as he is falling down; but Spur him not as he is riſing, for that may cauſe him to come over upon you.

If he be apt to *fall down upon the Ground, or in the Water*, nothing better than a pair of good Spurs, applied as ſoon as you perceive him going about it, which will put him from thinking more of it: But if he deſiſts, then correct him no more at that time: For bad Horſemen are the cauſe of moſt of theſe Vices, by correcting out of time, whereby they are ſo far from making a Horſe ſenſible of his Fault, that they fright and put him into confuſion, and make him at laſt become Reſty.

If he be apt *to run away*, you muſt get a gentle Bit, with a ſlack Curb, and keeping a gentle and eaſie Bridle-hand, firſt walk him without *ſtopping*, but only *ſtaying* him upon the Hand by little and little, and then trot him a while, and put him again from a Trot to a Walk, ſtaying him by degrees, and always cheriſhing him when he obeys you. When you find him thus far peaceable, put him from his Trot to a gentle Gallop, and from that to a Trot, and from a Trot to a Walk, ſtaying him by degrees with a gentle hand, and uſing this method for a while with Patience and Judgment, you may probably prevent his running away.

But

But ſuppoſe he do run away, what is to be done then? for it is certain, that the more you pull the Bridle-Reins and hurt him, by ſtraitning the Curb, the more he will pull, and run the faſter. In this caſe, if you have Field-room, when ever you find him begin to run, let him go, by ſlackning the Bridle, and giving him the Spurs, continually, ſharply, and ſoundly, until he begin to ſlack of his own accord; and uſing him in this manner whenever he runs away with you, I dare undertake that at laſt you will cure him, there being no Remedy like this for a Run-away Horſe.

If your Horſe be skittiſh and apt to ſtart, ſo that you are never free from danger whilſt on his Back; if it proceed from a weak ſight, whereby things are repreſented to him otherwiſe than they are, give him time to view them well, and then ride him up gently to them. But if he be naturally fearful, and apt to ſtart at the hearing of any ſtrange Sounds, you muſt accuſtom him to the noiſe of Guns, Drums, and Trumpets, and in time he will take delight in them.

A Compendious

TREATISE

OF THE

Art of Riding.

Collected from the beſt Modern Writers on that Subject.

LONDON,
Printed in the Year MDCCI.

THE PREFACE.

YOU have in the preceding Part, all that any Gentleman needs to know either as to Buying, Keeping, Shoeing, Bitting *and* Breeding, *all kinds of Horſes, for whatſoever Service they are deſigned. But there being little or nothing of the* Art *of* Riding *contained in it, I have annexed to it the following Treatiſe of* Horſemanſhip, *collected from the Duke of* Newcaſtle, *Sir* William Hope, *and the beſt modern Writers on this Subject.*

The deſign of the enſuing Treatiſe is not to inſtruct ſuch who were never initiated in the Art of Horſemanſhip: *No Reading in the World being capable to make a Man Maſter of any* Practical Art, *without having firſt had ſome Ex-*

Experience in it. But as it is not intended for Persons altogether ignorant of Riding, so I dare be bold to promise a great deal of success to such as shall diligently practise these Directions; which is all that can be reasonably expected from the best Book that can be written upon any Practical Art *whatsoever.*

A Com-

A Compendious Treatise of the Art of RIDING.

CHAP. I.

Of what Stature and Age a Horse should be that is designed for the Manage.

HOrses of a middle size have commonly most Strength, Spirit, and Agility, and not one in a hundred but proves good; when of large Horses not one in a thousand. Make choice therefore of a short trussed Horse, well coupled, with good Feet and Legs, lively, full of Spirit and Action. And altho' great Masters say, that if a Horse have a great Head, thick Neck, and fleshy Shoulders, he will be hard on the *Hand*; yet the Duke of *Newcastle* observes, that he had known more *Thick Heads*, *Necks*, and *Shoulders*, to be light on the *Hand*, than he had known of *fine shaped* and *slender Fore-hands*: And that 'tis neither the one nor the other that causes it, but meerly the strength of his *Chine*. For if a Horse that hath a great Head, thick Neck, and fleshy Shoulders, have also a good *Chine*, he will be light on the hand: Provided there be no Imperfection in his *Legs* or *Feet*, especially *Before*, for then he will lean on the Hand, to ease the grief of his Legs: And the *Farrier* must cure him and not the *Horseman*. For the *Art* of *Riding* will not make a lame Horse *sound*.

As

As to the Age moſt proper to begin to work a Horſe for the *Manage*, let him not be too young: Not only becauſe his Underſtanding (if we may ſo call it) is not yet come to him, but alſo that a Horſe of three Years old, being but a Griſtle, frequent *ſtops* and *going back*, will ſpoil him, by ſtraining his *Back*, and ſtreſſing his *Hams*. Nay, altho' your Horſe be ſix, ſeven, or eight Years old, you ſhould not ride him above once a Day: For a Horſe being Fleſh and Blood, cannot endure ſo much Labour with ſo little Reſt; and no Exerciſe is more violent for a Horſe than the *Mannage*: And if you ride him twice in one Day, he will not recover it in two or three: For if he oppoſe his Rider, which all Horſes will do at firſt, you muſt correct him ſoundly, and ride him ſo long until he obey you in ſome ſmall meaſure; and by that time you will have rid him ſo violently and ſo long, that he will hardly be fit for Riding next Morning, much leſs to be rid any more that Day. Nor can you ever give him his *Meat*, *Water*, or *Reſt* in order; the want of which muſt make him ſick, and ſubject to many Diſeaſes. Whereas if you ride him moderately, and when you find him to obey you, then to take but a little of him that Morning, that he may be incouraged to do the ſame again, he will then be lively and vigorous, take pleaſure in you and the *Mannage*, and learn more in *one* Month, riding him but once a Day, than he ſhall do in *three*, riding him *twice*.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

A Description of the Natural *Paces of a Horse.*

NO Man can make a Horse to go perfectly in *Ayres* or *Artificial* Motions, unless he first exactly understand the *Natural* Paces or Motions of a Horse's Legs, which are three, *viz.* a *Walk*, a *Trot*, and a *Gallop*: to which may be added an *Amble*, because some Horses naturally have it, and such are commonly the swiftest Amblers of any. And first,

Of the Walk.

In a *Walk* a Horse lifts two Legs of a side, one after the other, beginning with a *Hind-Leg* first, as if he lead with the Legs of his right side; then the first Foot he lifteth, is his *far Hind-Foot*, and in the time he is setting it down (which in a *Step* is always short of the tread of his *Fore-Foot* upon the same side) he lifteth his *far Fore-Foot*, and setteth it down before his *near Fore-Foot*: Again, just as he is setting down his *far Fore-Foot*, he lifts his *near Hind-Foot*, and sets it down again just short of his *near Fore-Foot*, and just as he is setting it down, he lifts his *near Fore-Foot*, and sets it down before his *far Fore-Foot*. And this is the true Motion of a Horse's Legs upon his *Walk*.

Of the Amble.

The difference between a *Walk* and an *Amble* is only this, that in a *Walk* he lifts two Legs of a side *one after the other*, whereas in an *Amble* the two Legs of a side are raised at the *very same time*. For if your Horse be *Walking*, and you would have him to *Amble*,

Amble, you must stay him well upon the Hand, and work him forwards with the Calves of your Legs, one after the other, and thereby force him to set down the *Fore-Foot* of that side wherewith he leads, sooner than otherwise he would, which makes it just to answer the motion of the *Hind-Leg* of that side: as for example, If he lead with the *Far-side*, he removes his *Hind-Leg* and *Fore-Leg* of the same side at one time, whilst the other two Legs of the *Near-side* stand still, which is two of a side in the Air, and two upon the Ground at the same time. *See Plat* 5. *Fig.* 9.

Of the Trot.

A *Trot* is two Legs in the Air and two upon the Ground at the same time cross-wise, or in the form of a St. *Andrew*'s Cross. And as in the *Amble* you staid your Horse upon the Hand, and pressed him forwards with the Calves of your Legs *one after the other*, so on the contrary, if your Horse be *Walking* and you would have him to *Trot*, you must *slack* your Bridle-hand, and press him on with both your Calves at *one and the same time*, which will force him to advance the *Hind-Leg* of the side wherewith he did not lead, sooner than otherwise he would, and so move at the very same time with the *Fore-Leg* of that side wherewith he began to lead; which is the true action of the *Trot*, that is *Hind-Leg* of one side, and *Fore-Leg* of the other at one and the same time.

Of the Gallop.

A Horse in Galloping strait forwards, may lead with which Fore-Leg he pleaseth, altho' Horses do it most commonly with their right Fore-Leg: But with what-ever Fore-Leg they lead, the Hind-Leg of

of the same side must follow it, otherwise their Legs are said to be *disunited.*

To bring a Horse's Legs right which are *disunited,* you must stay him a little upon the hand, and help him with the Spur upon the contrary side to that in which he is disunited: For example, If he be disunited on the *right* side, help him with the *left* Spur; and if he be disunited upon the *left*-side, then unite him with the *right* Spur, by staying him as I said, a little upon the hand, and also helping him at the same time with the Calves of your Legs.

Altho' in Galloping strait forwards a Horse may lead with which Fore-Leg he pleases, yet in a *Circle* he is confined to lead always with his Fore-Leg within the *Turn,* otherwise he is said to gallop *false,* but in both cases the Hind-Leg of the same side must always follow. And thus much of the *Natural* Paces.

CHAP. III.

Of all the Artificial *Motions which a Horse can make.*

THe *Artificial* Motions are seven, *viz. Terra a Terra,* a *Demy-Air* or *Demy-Volt,* a *Corvet,* a *Capriole,* a *Croupade,* a *Balotade,* and a *Step* and a *Leap,* of all which in order.

Terra a Terra is nothing else but a short and prest Gallop with the *Croup in,* in which a Horse's Legs do move more quick than in an ordinary Gallop, and mark but two times, as *Pa, Ta,* and not four as in the Gallop. *See Plate 5. Fig. 2.*

A *Demy-Air* or *Demy-Volt* is an *Air* in which the fore-parts of the Horse are more raised than in *Terra*

ra a Terra: Alſo the motion of the Horſe's Legs is more quick in *Terra a Terra* than in the *Demy-Volt*.

A *Corvet* is an Air wherein the Horſe's Legs are yet more raiſed than in the *Demy-Volts*, being a kind of Leap-up and a little forwards, wherein the Horſe raiſeth both his Fore-Legs at once, equally advanced, (that is when he is going ſtrait forwards, and not in a Circle) and as his *Fore-Legs* are falling, he immediately raiſes his *Hind-Legs* as he did the *Fore*, that is, equally advanced, and not one before the other, ſo that all his four Legs are in the Air at once, and as he ſets them down he marks but two times with them. *See Plat* 5. *Fig.* 5.

A *Capriole* is when a Horſe at the full heighth of his *Leap* yerks or ſtrikes out his Hind-Legs as near and even together, and as far out as ever he can ſtretch them, in which Action he makes a noiſe or *Claque* with them. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 7.

A *Croupade* is a Leap, where the Horſe pulls up his Hind-Legs, as if he drew them up to his Belly. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 8.

A *Balotade* is a Leap wherein the Horſe offers to ſtrike out with his Hind-Legs but doth it not, only making an offer, and ſhewing the Shooes of his Hind-Feet, but does not ſtrike. Of theſe three laſt Leaps the *Capriole* is moſt eſteemed, being the moſt perfect Leap of all.

A *Step* and a *Leap* is as it were three Airs; the Pace or Step is *Terra a Terra*, the raiſing is a *Corvet*, and then the *Leap* finiſhes it.

CHAP.

t and most modern Fashion
Cavezon, For the Pillars.

C L.

CHAP. IV.

Of the true Seat a Man ſhould keep on Horſeback.

BEfore you come to practiſe the Artificial Motions of the laſt Chapter, it will be neceſſary that you ſhould underſtand a true Seat, without which it will be impoſſible to perform any of them well.

Firſt then, approaching your Horſe's left Shoulder, obſerve if the Bridle be well placed in his Mouth, the Curb right, and Girts faſt, and every thing in good order; then taking the Reins of the Bridle in your left Hand, together with the Pommel of the Saddle, or a lock of his Mane, lay your right Hand faſt upon the hinder part of the Saddle, and placing your ſelf eaſily in the middle of the Saddle, you muſt ſit upon your Twiſt, advancing your Belly towards the Pommel as much as you can; keep your Shoulders a little backward, your Legs ſtrait down, as if you were on Foot, and your Thighs and Knees turn'd inward, griping faſt with both; plant your Feet firmly in the Stirrups, and keep them almoſt parallel to the Horſe's ſides, your Heels a little lower than your Toes, which ſhould not paſs thorow the Stirrups above two Inches; your Hams ſtiff, and Legs not too far from the Horſe's Sides, nor yet ſo near as to touch them.

The Reins of the Bridle being, as I ſaid, in your left Hand, your Thumb upon them, and little Finger ſeparating them, your Elbows a little diſtance from your Body, the Bridle-Hand juſt over the Neck of the Horſe, and about three Fingers above the Pommel, and two before it.

When a Horſe makes any rude Motion, you muſt oppoſe it by acting quite contrary to what he doth: that is, you muſt meet that which comes to you: as for Example, If the Horſe riſes before, then you muſt incline your Body a little forward to him: In like manner, if the Horſe ſtrike out behind, or raiſes his Croup, you muſt put your Body backward, which is contrary to the Horſe's motion; for did you follow the Horſe, you would put your Body forward, and ſo be in danger of being thrown. The beſt way therefore is to ſit ſtrait as much as poſſible, and then the Action of the Horſe will keep you upon your Twiſt.

CHAP. V.

The true Method of ſuppling a Horſe's Shoulders, or firſt riding him upon Circles.

TO make a Horſe obey the Hand and Heel of his Rider, is the only aim of the whole Art of Horſemanſhip; and to make him obey your Hand, you muſt firſt ſupple his Shoulders. Now it is always the inward Rein of the Cavezon, and inward Leg of the Rider, with the outward Rein of the Bridle which doth this: Therefore practiſe your Horſe upon this Leſſon of the Cavezon's Rein and Leg of a ſide, until you find him very ſupple and eaſie to turn, and alſo very light. This muſt be done upon large Circles, of one Piſte or Tread: But I ſhall firſt ſhew you how to fix your Cavezon.

Take one of the Reins of your Cavezon (which is alſo to have a Headſtal and Chaulband) which muſt be of a good length, with a Ring at one end of it; through which draw the other end of the Rein, until you make a Nooſe or Loop at that end of

of the Rein next to the Ring, which Loop put over the Pommel of the Saddle, making the reſt of the Rein to come down between your Thigh and the fore-bolſter of the Saddle, and then put the reſt of the Rein through the Ring of the Cavezon upon that ſame ſide, and bring the end of it back again toward you, either to hold in your Hand (which I would always adviſe you to do, ſo long as you are ſuppling of a Horſe's Shoulders) or to faſten with a Buckle to the Pommel of the Saddle, there to remain fixt, ſo long as you intend to ride him to that hand upon which the Rein of the Cavezon is made faſt; and when you have done with riding him to that hand, do the ſame with the Rein upon the other ſide.

Your Cavezon being thus ordered, and the Reins of the Bridle in your left Hand, if you go to the right, pull with your right Hand the inward Rein of the Cavezon low, and towards your Knee, within the Volt or Circle, helping him alſo with your Leg within the Turn, to bring in his outward Shoulder, which is Rein and Leg of a ſide; and this is to be done firſt upon a Step, the Bridle-hand ſomewhat low, and a little upon the inſide of the Horſe's Neck; but now and then you muſt carry it upon the outſide, and then immediately bring it again to its place, which is a little upon the inſide; afterwards again place it upon the outſide as you ſhall find occaſion for it: Now this pulling of the inward Rein of the Cavezon, and helping alſo with the inward Leg or Spur, giveth a Horſe a good Plye; and altho' the principal aid of the Bridle ſhould be always with the outward Rein, which is to carry the Hand a little upon the inſide of his Neck, yet the inward Rein is alſo made uſe of (which is to carry the Bridle-hand upon the outſide of his Neck) to enlarge the Circle, and prevent a Horſe's ſtraitning or cloſing it too much. It alſo gives him an

Apuy, by making him endure the Bit, for this makes it both work upon his Bars and places of the Curb.

If you continue a little upon a Step, this Leſſon of Rein and Leg upon a ſide, you will find your Horſe to grow eaſie upon it, which will prepare him for a good Trot, and to gallop large upon Circles of one Piſte or Tread, his Croup always out, which will ſupple his Shoulders extreamly, eſpecially that without the Turn, ſo that it may paſs for the beſt of all Leſſons; the ſuppling of the Shoulders being the foundation of a good Manage, and that which all good Horſemen ſhould at firſt chiefly aim at.

However, the working thus with Rein and Leg of a ſide, the Horſe's Croup out, doth at firſt put a Horſe very much upon his Shoulders, and makes him alſo to preſs a little too hard upon the Bit; but in five or ſix Days riding he will be no more upon his Shoulders, but upon the contrary, he will begin to ply his Haunches, and endure to be kept upon them, if you ſupport him a little with the Bridle, and ſtay him upon the Hand now and then, and immediately ſlack it again.

You muſt alſo know, that in performing this Leſſon, if you do not bring in the Horſe's outward Shoulder with it you do nothing; and therefore to bring it in, you muſt cauſe the inward Shoulder to come back within the Turn, as it were towards you, that ſo it may be preſſed, and carry the whole weight of the fore-parts of the Horſe, while at the ſame time the outward Shoulder is at liberty that it may ſupple; ſo that altho' you are now and then to carry your Bridle-hand without his Neck, yet you muſt immediately replace it again within, and work with the outward Rein of the Bridle, that you may bring in his outward Shoulder; for if a Horſe's Shoulders be not very eaſie and ſupple, it will not only be a means to make him reſiſt and defend him-

ſelf

ſelf againſt you, but it will alſo make him uncapable to perform any thing in the Mannage as he ought, and nothing doth more ſupple them than this Leſſon of Rein and Leg of a ſide with the Cavezon.

Now if you perform this Leſſon exactly, the Horſe's Hind-Legs will make two Circles conſiderably larger than thoſe made by his Fore, and altho' his Croup be very much out, and that he inclines and leans ſo very much upon his inſide, as may make you apprehenſive that he will fall, yet it is ſo much the better, and he goeth alſo ſo much the more ſecure; therefore give him no other Leſſon than this upon the Trot and Gallop, either in large or narrow Circles, until his Shoulders be well ſuppled, and that you find him gallop light: But do not begin to gallop him until you find him ſo light and ready that he offer to gallop of his own accord, when he is trotting after this manner; and uſing this method, you ſhall firſt ſupple him upon a Walk, next upon a Trot, and then upon a Gallop. *See Plate* 4. *Fig.* 6. but there the Cavezons inward Rein is pulled high, and croſs the Horſe's Neck as it were, and not low towards the Knee, and therefore is more proper for a ſhort Trot than ſuppling of the Shoulders, altho' it be very good for both. Now what hath been ſaid of going to the right Hand, may be eaſily applied to going upon the left, the difference being only this, that you muſt hold your Bridle with your right Hand, and pull the Cavezons inward Rein with the left.

CHAP. VI.

How to ſtop a Horſe, and make him go back.

AS to Stopping, you ſhould at firſt practiſe it but ſeldom, and very gently, and ſtop him rather by degrees, and with two or three Falcades or times, than all at once and upon a ſudden; for this weakens the Reins and Back of a young Horſe very much who hath not been accuſtomed to it. Therefore when you intend to make a Stop, put your Body and Shoulders a little back to make the Horſe ply his Haunches, and griping him ſomewhat hard with your Thighs, pull the inward Rein of the Cavezon, and make him in this poſture to form pretty firm Stops, at the ſame time helping him with your outward Leg; but you muſt never attempt ſuch Stops until your Horſe begin to be light and eaſie upon his Trot; and when you find that he begins to ſupple and gallop light, his Head in and Croup out, then accuſtom him to frequent ſtopping; to perform which exactly, you muſt pull hard, as I ſaid the inward Rein of the Cavezon, and make your outward Leg by approaching it near his ſide, bring in your Horſe's outward Hind-Leg, otherwiſe he cannot ſtop upon his Haunches, becauſe his outward Haunch would be without the Volt. You muſt alſo take care, when you are firſt teaching him to ſtop, not to make him advance or riſe before, for this hath ſpoiled many a Horſe, making them at the leaſt pull to riſe ſo high before, that they are in danger of Renverſing, or coming over upon their Rider. Therefore never teach your Horſe to riſe before after you ſtop him, until he be well ſetled upon the hand; for indeed the raiſing of a Horſe before, or upon Peſates, ſhould be one of the

the laſt things a Man ſhould teach his Horſe, or he may happen to ſpoil him. *See Plate* 4. *Fig.* 7.

If you would have your Horſe go back upon a ſtrait Line, then leaning back a little with your Body, and ſlacking your Thighs, pull equally both the Reins of the Cavezon, one being in each hand very ſtrongly, to ſee if you can force him back but one ſingle ſtep or two at firſt; for if you can bring him to perform that, he will in a ſhort time do more; but if he altogether oppoſe you, by fixing his Fore-Legs upon the Ground, and remaining immovable as a Rock, then pull hard the Reins of the Cavezon one after the other, as if you were ſawing of Wood, and this perhaps will make him yield to you. But if notwithſtanding this he ſtill reſiſt you, then it is a ſign his Shoulders are not yet ſupple enough for it, therefore continue to ſupple them yet better, and then he will certainly comply with you.

Thus you muſt do to make your Horſe go back in a ſtrait Line, which is the moſt uſeful; but if you would make him go back in a Circle, then make uſe of the inward Rein of the Cavezon, and outward Leg, juſt as you was ordered to do upon a Stop, and ſo make him go back in a round, which will help alſo to put him upon his Haunches. Note, That altho' I adviſed you to make but gentle Stops at the beginning, yet I do not ſay the ſame of going back, becauſe the ſooner you accuſtom him to go back, the ſooner will he be put upon his Haunches.

After you have ſuppled his Shoulders ſufficiently, and you ſtill find him hard on the hand, by not being upon his Haunches, then trot him upon large Circles of one Piſte or Tread, of at leaſt twenty four or thirty Foot Diameter, and ſtop him often with pretty hard ſtops, helping him always with your outward Leg, to bring in his outward Haunch; and your Shoulders and Body a little back, ſtop him

thus when he leaſt thinks of it: But if he incline to ſtop of himſelf, then preſs him forward without ſtopping of him, and then upon a ſudden ſtop him again when he is not expecting it. Repeat this often upon the Trot and Gallop, which will both ſettle him on the hand, and put him upon his Haunches: But after you have gained this point, you muſt not practiſe this Leſſon ſo frequently as before, becauſe it pinches a Horſe too much on the back, and makes him afraid to go frankly forwards: Therefore your Diſcretion muſt guide you, and, as I have told you, you muſt accuſtom him to ſtop upon a Walk and Trot before you adventure to ſtop him upon a Gallop, otherwiſe you may pinch his Reins, ſtrain his Back-ſinews and make him utterly to diſguſt the Manage.

CHAP. VII.

How to make a Horſe ſenſible and obedient to the Heels, or to anſwer exactly the Spurs.

HAving in the two preceding Chapters ſhewn you how to work and ſupple a Horſe's Shoulders, with the Cavezon Rein in your Hand, and not tied to the Pommel of the Saddle, which is the better half of your work; I will now teach the other half, which is to make him obey your Heels, and to work Shoulders and Croup together, the Cavezon's inward Rein being ſtill kept in your hand, and not tied to the Pommel.

Pull the inward Rein of the Cavezon with your hand to bring in his outward Shoulder, and preſs him upon the inſide of the Turn, that his Legs without the Turn may be at liberty to lap over his inward Legs, which is called by Horſemen *Paſſaging*, and is performed for the moſt part with the outward Rein

Rein of the Bridle, and outward Leg, that ſo a Horſe's Legs may have the more liberty to lap the one over the other, however the inward Rein is ſometimes to be made uſe of to ſtay him, if his Shoulders go too far before his Croup. The firſt Leſſon you ſhall give him upon Paſſaging, muſt be with his Head to a Wall or Paliſade, pulling the inward Rein of the Cavezon to whatever hand you are going hard to you, and helping at the ſame time with your outward Leg, to make him go ſideways, and with the half of his Shoulders always before his Croup; if he do not obey your Heel, give him the Spur gently upon that ſide. You may alſo ſometimes give him this Leſſon in the open Fields. *See Plate* 4. *Fig.* 9.

If your Horſe will not anſwer your Heel, by putting in his Croup, but throweth it always out, and upon your Spur, then his Head being to the Wall, pull the outward Rein of the Cavezon from the Turn, helping him alſo with your outward Leg, and ſpur him alſo if there be need for it: Now this will infallibly force in his Croup, but then he will go falſe, becauſe the outward Rein of the Cavezon being pulled, will make him look from the Turn, and ſo his Croup will go before his Shoulders, than which nothing can be more falſe: Therefore after you have wrought him thus falſly, to cure his Vice, fall to the true way of Riding again.

When your Horſe obeys your Heel upon the Paſſage along a Wall, then work him with the ſame Leſſon upon large Circles, pulling, as I ſaid, the Cavezon's inward Rein hard to you, to bring in his outward Shoulder, bending his Neck extreamly, and helping with your outward Leg, which is Leg and Rein of contrary ſides, taking always care that the half of his Shoulders go before his Croup, and if he do not anſwer your Heel, then give him the Spur with your outward Leg; alſo whatever hand you

teach

teach him to Paſſage upon firſt, make him do as much to the other, which is but changing Bridle-hand, Cavezon-Rein, and Leg, and when you find him obedient in Paſſaging upon large Circles, his Croup in (which will put him upon his Haunches) then make him go the Paſſage in little Circles, whoſe Diameter is little longer than his own length. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 1.

Your Horſe being perfect in the aforeſaid Leſſons of Paſſaging along a Wall, and in Circles upon a Trot to either hand his Croup in, then put him to a ſhort or ſlow Gallop upon large Circles his Croup in, after this manner; pull the Cavezon's inward Rein hard to you on the inſide of his Neck, and help him with your outward Leg, poiſing or reſting a little more upon your outward Stirrup than upon the inward, taking alſo care to advance your outward Shoulder, to whatever hand you are going; and thus bend his Neck extreamly, that he may be preſſed upon the outſide of the Turn, and his Legs at liberty within the Turn, which is moſt proper for the ſhort Gallop his Croup in, or *Terra a Terra*, which are near the ſame. Help him alſo now and then with your Voice, and make him form good Stops. *See Plate* 4. *Fig.* 8.

When your Horſe is perfect in theſe Leſſons, by the help of the Cavezon's inward Rein held in your Hand, I would then adviſe you to fix it with a Buckle to the Pommel of the Saddle, and to work a little more with the Bridle, that he may underſtand its operation upon his Bars, and the place of the Curb a little better than he hath done hitherto; and ſo work him upon all the former Leſſons, but now more upon a Square than upon a Circle, and ſee that you make him round the Angles well: For it is found by Horſemen that a Circle ſubjects a Horſe's Croup too much, therefore make uſe of a Square, with Cavezon-Rein and Leg of a ſide, and helping for the moſt

moſt part with the outward Rein of the Bridle to ſupple his Shoulders; or Rein and Leg contrary, to put him upon his Haunches; and preſſing him upon the outſide of the Turn, give his Legs liberty within, helping him for the moſt part with the inward Rein of the Bridle and outward Leg, and ſometimes alſo with the outward Rein of the Bridle, when his Shoulders go too far out, and his Croup too much in.

Another good Leſſon is this; make your Horſe go ſideways, or Paſſage him upon one Hand, then put him forwards twice or thrice his own length; then make him go ſideways upon the other Hand, and put him forwards again, and ſo ſideways and forwards from Hand to Hand, which will make him very attentive to the motion of your Hand and Heels: But the open Fields are more proper for this performance, than a cloſe or covered Manage.

The inward Rein of the Cavezon being tied to the Girths, or pulled low within the Turn towards the Rider's Knee, worketh a Horſe's outward Shoulder, preſſes his Legs within the Turn, and leaves his Legs at liberty without the Turn, is excellent in Trotting or Galloping upon Circles of one Tread; for this ſupples his Shoulders his Croup being a little out, which brings in his outward Shoulder more: It is alſo excellent in Paſſaging his Croup a little in, to make him with the more eaſe lap one Leg over another, becauſe by the help of it his outward Shoulder is brought in; But if you ſhould preſs his Croup too much in, it would be impoſſible for him to go, becauſe the Rein being tied to the Girths or pulled low, worketh and bringeth in his outward Shoulders, and by putting his Buttock too much in, you put back his outward Shoulder, which is a quite contrary Action, and cannot be done at the ſame time. This inward Rein is alſo excellent for Corvets upon Circles, becauſe it brings in the Horſe's outward Shoulder,

der, and conſequently gives liberty to the Croup. Now in all theſe Leſſons if his outward Shoulder come not in enough, you muſt then turn your Bridle-hand a little within his Neck, which will work the outward Rein, and conſequently help to bring in the outward Shoulder, and make your Horſe ſupple and eaſie to Turn.

But as this tying of the Cavezon's inward Rein to the Girths, or pulling it low, makes an oblique Line within the Turn, and therefore worketh the Horſe's outward Shoulder; ſo ſecondly, the ſame Rein tied faſt to the Pommel of the Saddle, makes an oblique Line croſs the Horſe's Neck, which Line, with the help of the Rider's outward Leg, puts back the Horſe's outward Shoulder, and forwards his inward Shoulder, and ſo preſſes him upon the outſide of the Turn, and gives his Legs liberty within the Turn, which is moſt proper for *Terra a Terra*, or the ſhort Gallop, his Croup in, but is nought for Corvets, becauſe it ſubjects his Croup too much; yet it works his *Croup* mightily, either *Leg and Rein* contrary, his *Croup out*, or in *Paſſaging* his *Croup in*, upon narrow Circles of his own length or a little larger. Therefore when you have a Horſe's Head to the Wall, if you would work his *Shoulders*, pull the *Cavezon's inward Rein* low, and towards your *Knee*; but if you would work his *Croup*, then pull it croſs his *Neck*, with your *Nails* up, and towards your *outward* Shoulder.

Having now ſhewn you the different Operations of the *Cavezon's inward Rein*, when tied to the *Girths* and pulled *low*, or tied to the *Pommel* and pulled *high* and croſs the Horſe's Neck, which is of great conſequence to be exactly underſtood by any Perſon who deſigns to be a compleat Horſeman; I ſhall now ſhew you to what degree of ſtraitneſs that ſame *inward Rein* ſhould be drawn, when firſt to be made faſt to either *Pommel* or *Girths*: You muſt then draw the

the *Rein* no ſtraiter, than to make your Horſe look with one Eye into the *Turn*, that is only juſt ſo ſtrait as that he may not look out of the *Turn*, becauſe if you ſhould draw it ſtraiter, he not being as yet accuſtomed to it, it would make him to turn round almoſt in one place, inſtead of going forward, and be a ready means to make him become *Reſty*; therefore ſhorten the Rein of the *Cavezon* proportionably, as you ſhall find your Horſe well accuſtomed to ride with his *Neck* thus plied and bent, ſo that at length you will come to make him look with almoſt both his Eyes into the *Volt* or *Turn*, which will make his Body ply, and form a part of the *Circle* wherein he is Riding, which is the true and exact Poſture of Body of a *Ready Horſe*, in going his *Manage* upon a *Volt* or *Circle*, his *Croup in*.

Your Horſe being perfectly well accuſtomed to perform all his Leſſons with the *Cavezon's inward Rein*, thus tied to the *Pommel* of the *Saddle*, perfect him with the *Bridle* alone, working him ſtill upon a *Square*, making him to point a little out with his Head at each corner or *Angle*, and then to round them well.

There is no leſſon comparable to *Paſſaging the Croup in*, to make a Horſe obey the *Hand* and *Heel*, and to raiſe him now and then upon *Peſates*, and then *Paſſage* him again: But as I have already told you, your Horſe muſt be well advanced before you adventure to make him riſe before, or you may happen to ſpoil him.

I ſhall conclude this Chapter with a few very uſeful Directions as followeth.

If your Horſe preſs forward too much, ſtay him well upon the Hand or pull him back: If he offer to go back preſs him forward: If he go ſide-ways againſt your will to the right Hand, put him ſide-ways upon the left; and ſo on the contrary. If he put his *Croup* too much out, by throwing it upon your

your outward Heel, then with your *outward* Spur put it in; and if he put it in too much, by throwing it upon your *inward* Heel, then with your *inward* Spur force it out again. If he go too much upon his Shoulders, then *ſtop* him frequently, and make him *go back*, and alſo ſtay him well upon the *Hand*, as you are *galloping* him; but if he go upon his *Haunches*, then continue him ſo. If he *riſe before* when you would not have him, then as he is falling, give him the Spurs; and being thus put from his own Will to yours, he will become a *Ready Horſe*.

CHAP. VIII.

The true and exact Method to make a Horſe go Terra a Terra.

THe *Square* for *Terra a Terra*, is preferable to a Circle; therefore work your Horſe always upon a pretty large Square of twenty four or thirty Foot Diameter, and do you ſit ſtrait in the Saddle, poiſing a little more upon your *outward* Stirrup than your *inward*, but do not lean too much upon it, only the *outward* Leg to be a little longer than the *inward*, and the inward Leg to be a little before it, and but a very little neither. You muſt reſt all upon the *Twiſt* and *Stirrups*, and ſit as near to the Pommel of the Saddle as you can, your *outward* Leg cloſe to the Horſe, with the Knee of it turned inwards, and ſtiff in the *Ham* to bring the Calf of your Leg the nearer to the Horſe's ſide. Then for the *Bridle-Hand*, if you are going to the *Right-Hand*, put your Hand upon the outſide of his *Neck*, turning up your little Finger to make it reſpect your *Left-Shoulder*, which will pull the *inward Rein* that lieth above your little Finger, your Arm being a little oblique from your Body, and your *Left-Shoulder* turned a little in, which

which will make your Body reſpect a little the *Right-Side*; and this poſture will of neceſſity make the Horſe go a little *couched* upon his outſide. You muſt turn your Head and look upon the inſide of the *Turn* to the inſide of the Horſe's *Head*, which will be a means to keep your Hand ſteady; for did you look to your *inward* Shoulder, it would remove your *Bridle-Hand* too much within the *Turn*, and did you look juſt between the Horſe's Ears, your *outward Shoulder* would not come in enough, ſo that neither it, nor you, nor the Horſe, would be oblique as you ſhould; your *Bridle-Hand* in rounding the corners or *Angles* of the Square, muſt be carried *circularly* with the Horſe, and *ſteadily*, but yet only ſo as to feel him.

Now the Horſe being thus *couched* upon his *outſide*, by the poſture of your Body, the pulling of the *inward* Rein of the Bridle enlarges him *before*, by pulling as it were his *inward Fore-Leg* from the *outward Fore-Leg*; which puts his *inward Hind-Leg* near to his *outward Hind-Leg*, which narrows him *behind*, making him to bow in the *Gambrels*, eſpecially in his *outward Hinder-Leg* whereon he reſteth moſt, and thruſts his *inward Hind-Leg* under his Belly, which with all the helps above-mentioned, makes him go very much upon his Haunches: For the Horſe being thus preſt upon the outſide, muſt of neceſſity look within the *Square* or *Turn*; and his *Fore-Parts* being enlarged, will make him embrace the *Corners* of the *Square* the better when he is to round them: His *Hind-Legs* alſo being within the Lines of his *Fore-Legs*, he muſt needs be upon the Haunches; and his *inward Fore-Leg* being in a manner pulled from his *outward Fore-Leg*, his *inward Fore-Leg* with which he leads will appear to be longer than his *outward Fore-Leg*, and make the firſt and largeſt *Circle* or *Square*, which is right, and ſo his *outward Fore-Leg* will make the ſecond, and his *inward Hind-Leg* the third, becauſe it is thruſt ſo much before his

outward

outward Hind-Leg, and under his Belly; and then his *outward Hind-Leg* will make the fourth and leaſt *Square* or *Circle*, becauſe it is ſo much plied in the *Gambrel* by reſting upon it.

Remember that you keep not your *Bridle-hand* too high, but low, that ſo your Horſe may go low and preſt, becauſe he will always go according to the heigth of your Hand: now *Terra a Terra* ſhould always be low and preſt. But I muſt alſo tell you, that the pulling the *inward Rein* of the *Bridle* preſſes the Horſe upon the *outſide*, weighs him up, and puts him upon the Haunches, eſpecially upon his *outward Hind-Leg*, ſo that all his Body leaneth upon the *outſide*, and he cannot bring in his *outward Shoulder*, for it is bound up as it were, to give his *Fore-Leg* within the *Turn* liberty to lead. Now you may know by his *Neck*, whether he is couched or leans upon his *outſide* or not; for if he do, his *Neck* will lean all on the *outſide*, and your Body, if you follow the motion of the Horſe, will incline to be *concave* on the *outſide*, and *convex within*, which would be very unbecoming, and therefore you muſt, as much as poſſible, prevent it; ſo that the Horſe being thus preſt and couched upon the outſide, bringeth in his Haunch as he ſhould do, and hath three Legs in the Air at once, to wit, his two *Fore-Legs* and his *inward Hinder-Leg*, with a *leap* forward *low* and *preſt*.

The ſame directions muſt be obſerved for the *left Hand* as for the *right*, only altering the *Bridle-hand*, *Body* and *Legs*; and for the *Bridle-hand* it is neceſſary, that when you *go on the left Hand*, you ſhould put your Hand on the contrary ſide of his Neck, which is without, your *Arm* cloſe to your *Body*, and Knuckles of your *Bridle-hand* turned towards his Neck, which will pull the *inward Rein* of the *Bridle* for the *left Hand*, becauſe it lies under your little Finger, and this will make both your Body and the Horſe's oblique, and alſo make every thing elſe

elſe anſwer, as well in going to the *left Hand*, as it did in going to the right.

But if you intend to change Hands upon *Terra a Terra*, then your Body being ſtill oblique with the Horſe's, and your Knuckles towards his Neck, and upon the *out-ſide* of it, to which Hand ſoever you are going let his *Shoulders* firſt come in a little before you change him, and then help him with that Leg, which was the *inward* before you changed, and then holding him up with your *Bridle-hand* upon the out-ſide of his *Neck*, put him forwards. Now why his *Shoulders* ſhould come in a little before you change him, is, to fix his *Croup* that it may not go out. Remember alſo to be always ſtiff in the *Hams*, and to keep your Heels down, that ſo you may bring the Calves of your Legs to him; the ſame is to be obſerved in changing upon *Demy-Volts*. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 2.

CHAP. IX.

Of changing upon Demy-Volts.

YOu muſt ſit oblique, your *Hand* on the outſide, your *outward* Leg cloſe to him, the Knuckles of your *Bridle-hand* towards his *Neck*, and when he makes his *Demy-Volt*, let him go a little more than half a Turn, to fix his *Croup* before you change him; and then help him with the *inward Leg* firſt, and then hold him up with your *Hand*, and a little on the *outſide* of his *Neck*. This *from* the *Wall* is beſt, but *by* a *Wall* it cannot be; for you cannot go through the Wall, and therefore by a Wall it can be but a juſt *Half-Turn* or *Demy-Volto*, which you may help with the *inward* or *outward Rein* at pleaſure, ſo you keep his *Croup* to the Wall, that he may keep his Line, and not falſifie his *Demy-Volto*. Make

uſe always of the *outward Rein* when you would bring in his *outward Shoulder*. I ſhould next proceed to ſpeak of *Corvets*, but becauſe a Horſe ſhould be perfect in *Peſates* before he comes to *Corvets*, I ſhall explain them to you.

CHAP. X.

Of Peſates.

A *Peſate* is when a Horſe riſes handſomly *before*, and upon his *Haunches*, and at the ſame time bends his *Fore-Legs* up to his Body: Now this is ſo neceſſary an Action, that without a Horſe can do it perfectly, he ſhall never go well in any *Ayr*: The *Cavezons inward Rein* being in your Hand, or tied to the Pommel, help him with the *outward Rein* of the Bridle, and in *Paſſaging* raiſe him as high as you can, and hold him there gently, without giving him occaſion to fret; then walk him a little, and raiſe him again, and do this quite round the *Volt* or large *Circle* you are working him upon, which will make him in a ſhort time to form a true *Peſate*. Now, altho' your Horſe muſt be perfect in *Peſates* before you offer to put him upon any *Ayre*, yet they ſhould never be taught him at firſt Riding, before he is pretty far advanced in the *Manage*, and be rendred obedient to the *Hand* and *Heels*.

If your Horſe do not encline to riſe eaſily *before* upon *Peſates*, when you are upon his Back, then put him between the *Pillars*, as in *Plate* 5. *Fig.* 4. helping him with two Rods upon the outſide of his *Fore-Thighs*, and in a ſhort time he will come to do it. Now I do not think that the Pillars ſerve for any other uſe but this, neither would I ever adviſe you to make uſe of them but in this caſe; and ſo ſoon as ever you find your Horſe to riſe eaſily, then take him

him quite from them, with a resolution never to put him betwixt them again; for I assure you, they constrain and subject a Horse's *Croup* too much, and also make him to go by *Rote*, which is what a Man should shun as much as any one thing in the managing of a Horse: But the use of the *Cavezon* doth absolutely help this, for with it he cannot go by *Rote*, because with it, neither the *Eyes* nor *Ears* do any thing, but the Horse meerly obeys the *Hand* and *Heels* of his Rider, which maketh all Horses go perfectly, and rarely fails.

Never force or press your Horse too much to any thing, as *Going back*, *Stopping*, or *Rising before*, especially *young* Horses, which should never be much prest, nor stopt too hard or short at first; for if you do, you may give them such a *Crick* or *Taint* in the Back as they may never recover. The *Stop* upon a *Trot* should be hard and on a sudden; the *Stop* upon a *Gallop*, with two or three little *Falcadoes*: and never stop and raise him together, but stop first and raise him afterwards.

CHAP. XI.

For Corvets strait forwards.

YOur *Seat* must be the same as in *Terra a Terra*, only not altogether so stiff nor so *oblique*, the *Bridle-hand* even with his Neck, and your *Knuckles* towards his *Neck* on which hand soever he goes, but the *Hand* still just over his Neck, two or three Fingers above the *Pommel*, and a little forward, without any other *Help* but to stay him a little upon the Hand; for every Horse will take his own time better than you can give it him, but quick it should be from the Ground, and then stay him in the Air upon the Hand, your Body always going to that end

of the Horſe which comes to you, that is, bend a little to him as he riſes, but ſo inſenſibly that the *Spectators* may not perceive it: You are alſo to ſit as forward to the Pommel as you can, your Body being ſtrait, and your Thighs and Knees as cloſe as if they were glued to the Saddle, but your *Toes* a little down and low, that you may have your *Nerves* weak from the *Knees* downwards, and ſtrong from the *Knees* upwards, and do not help him with your Legs at all, unleſs he put *in* his *Croup* too much, which muſt be put *out* with your *inward* Leg; or put *out* his *Croup* too much, which muſt be put *in* with your *outward* Leg: But except in theſe caſes, or that he go not forward enough at each time, never help him with your Legs, but leave his *Croup* free and at liberty to follow his *Fore-Parts* which lead.

To make him go in *Corvets ſtrait forwards*, or along a Wall, tie the *Cavezon's Rein* which is from the Wall, to keep that *Hind-Leg* near to the other *Hind-Leg* which is next the Wall, and begin with two or three *Peſates*, and then walk him forwards a little, then *Corvet* him again; and if you feel him on the Hand, and that he alſo go forward with it, he will quickly be dreſt; but if he preſs forward too much, then cauſe him to make his *Corvets* in one place, and then put him on again. But to make this more plain, ſuppoſe it be your *right Shoulder* that is next the Wall, then you muſt tie the *left* Rein of the Cavezon to the *Pommel*, which doth not only keep back the *Hind-Leg* upon the ſame ſide the *Cavezon-Rein* is tied, but alſo ſupples and prepares him to go *Corvets* upon the *Volts* to the left-hand. Again, if it be your *left Shoulder* which is to the Wall, tie the *right* Rein of the *Cavezon* to the *Pommel* for the ſame Reaſons firſt walking him, and then raiſing him upon *Corvets*, until you make him continue his *Corvets* without intermiſſion the whole length of the Wall. And as for the *Bridle-hand*, you muſt remember that in *Corvets*

vets forward you are always to help with the Rein next to the Wall or *outward* Rein, to enlarge him before, and to narrow him behind, becauſe he leads with his *Fore-Parts*, and his *Hind-Parts* follow to keep the Ground which his *Fore-Parts* have got, his *Fore-Parts* being at liberty, and his *Hind-Parts* preſt.

If your Horſe beat upon the *Hand*, it is becauſe he does not endure or obey the *Curb*, and in that caſe you muſt raiſe him very high upon *Peſates*, and hold him there, which will put him upon the *Curb*, and make him endure it; but if this will not do, then *Gallop* him upon a ſtrait Line by a Wall, or otherways, and from his *Gallop* ſtay him upon the Hand, and then let him go in *Corvets*; or let him gallop forward a ſhort *Gallop*, then *ſtop* him and *raiſe* him three or four *Peſates* very high, and hold him on the Hand when he is up; and this in all probability will cure him; if not, then *trot* him, and *ſtop* him with good hard *Stops*, and alſo pull him back ſometimes, and this will ſettle him upon the Hand: Your Stirrups muſt be of an equal length, and rather a hole too ſhort than too long. And ſo much for *Corvets forwards*. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 5.

For Corvets ſideways.

Help, as I ſaid, with the *Bridle* only, and not with your *Legs*, and putting his Head to the Wall, if you go to the *right-hand*, help with the *outward Rein*, and let the Horſe go ſideways, that is, the half of his *Shoulders* before his *Croup*; and let him thus make three or four *Corvets* ſideways; then walk him again ſideways, and *Corvet* him again, and thus *walk* him and *Corvet* him ſideways, by degrees diminiſhing his Walk, and augmenting his *Corvets*, until he go all in *Corvets*, which he will ſoon do. Uſe the like helps for the *left* as for the *right*.

For Corvets backwards.

Firſt pull him back, and cauſe him to make three or four *Corvets* in one place; then pull him back again, and *Corvet* him in one place; and thus pulling him back, and *Corvetting* in one place, diminiſhing the *pulling back*, and augmenting the *Corvets*, he will at laſt *go backwards* in *Corvets* perfectly. But you muſt remember to help always with the *Bridle-Rein* next to the Wall, to narrow him *before* and enlarge him *behind*, that ſo he may be there at liberty, becauſe his *Hind-Parts* lead and his *Fore-Parts* follow, to keep the Ground which his *Hind-Parts* have got; therefore his *Hind-Parts* being at liberty, and his *Fore-Parts* preſt, your *Bridle-hand* muſt be low, that the Horſe may not go too *high*; and your *Body* a little *forward* to give his *Hinder-Parts* the more liberty to lead, and do not help with your Legs at all, but with your *Bridle-hand* pull him back every time he falleth to the Ground, and with theſe *Aids* he will come to *Corvet* backwards perfectly well.

For Corvets upon the Volts.

To put a Horſe upon *Corvets* in a *Circle* or *Volt*, the *Cavezon's inward Rein* muſt be at firſt tied to the *Pommel*, and his *Croup* muſt not be put in too much: But he ſhould rather at firſt teaching go upon *Circles* of one *Tread*, for here to keep out the *inward Hinder Leg* is the main buſineſs; help therefore a little with the *outward* Rein of the Bridle, and raiſe him three or four *Corvets*, then walk him upon the *Circle*, and *Corvet* him again, and ſo diminiſh your *Walk* and augment your *Corvets*, until he make a whole *Turn* or *Volt* upon *Corvets*; and when he is perfect upon them in Circles of one *Piſte* or *Tread*, then let him go upon *Corvets* with his *Croup a very little* upon

upon the *Volts*, which is the perfection of *Corvets* upon them. You must always in *Corvets* upon *Volts* help with the *outward Rein*, but give him no help with your Legs at all.

To *change* upon *Corvets* do thus; If your Horse be going to the *right-hand*, and you would change him, then put your *inward* or *right* Leg gently to him, and hold him a little up with your Bridle-hand on the *inside* of his Neck, your Knuckles always down, upon which Hand soever you go; and as soon as he hath changed, take your *right* Leg from him, and help no more with your *Legs* at all, only the poise of your Body, upon changing, is to be a little upon the *outside*: The same very Helps are to be made use of when you change from the *left*, viz. *Left Leg* and *outward Rein*. Now the reason why upon changing I begin first with the *Leg* and not with the *Bridle-hand*, is this; If I should begin with the *Hand*, he would *stop*, and if I turned my Hand to the *inside*, his *Croup* would go too much out and be lost, because I should have no feeling of it, and therefore I begin with the Leg, but instantly hold him up with my Hand, so that the two *Helps* are done so quickly after each other that none can perceive it: But if his *Shoulders* do not come *in* enough, then turn well your Hand to the *inside*, and help with the *outward Rein*.

For the Cross and Saraban *upon* Corvets.

Help with the *outward Rein*, which is to be pulled first upon the one side and then upon the other, after every Corvet from side to side, helping, as I said, with your *Bridle-hand* only, and your *outward Shoulder* always following it, without any help from your Legs at all.

Horſes that are very *Dull*, or very *Fiery* are improper for *Corvets*, being the moſt difficult *Ayres* that a Horſe can go, and require a great deal of *Judgment* in the *Rider*, as well as *Patience* in the *Horſe* to perform them.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Capriole, Croupade, Balotade, *and a* Step *and a* Leap.

I Have already told you in the third Chapter, what they are, ſo ſhall not need to repeat them, but proceed to ſhew you how they are to be performed.

Firſt then for *Capriols*, you muſt ſit ſtrait, your Thighs and Knees as cloſe as if you were glued to the Saddle, your Stirrups a little ſhorter than ordinary, a hole or thereabouts, for too ſhort would throw you out of the Saddle, and too long would diſorder your Seat and make you loſe your Stirrups; you muſt alſo keep your Toes a little down, to ſlack your *Nerves* from the *Knees* downwards, or elſe the Horſe would bolt too much forwards each Leap, for a leaping Horſe ſhould never go forward above a Foot and a half at one Leap; and when you *raiſe* him, inſtantly put your *Breaſt* out, which will make your *Shoulders* go a little back; for if you do it not juſt as the Horſe *riſes before*, it will be too late to do it when he *riſes behind* and *ſtrikes out*.

Walk your Horſe forward, and then cauſe him to make one Leap, preſently after raiſing him high upon a *Peſate* or two, and ſtaying and keeping him upon the *Hand*; and thus augmenting your *Leaps*, and diminiſhing your *Peſates*, he will by little and little leap perfectly; and after he is perfect upon a

ſtrait

ſtrait Line forwards, then you may put him upon *Volts* or *Circles*, and continue the ſame method; but the Circles muſt be ſomewhat large at firſt, and you muſt remember when you raiſe him to Leap, that you help him with the point of your *Rod*, upon the ſetting on of his *Dock*, or with the great end of it juſt behind the *Saddle*, the *Rod* being turned in your *Hand* and your *Thumb downwards*, and do it with one or more ſtrokes as you pleaſe, ſo it be done in time, which is when he is *raiſed before*; and always when you have done *leaping*, cauſe him to make a high *Peſate* or two.

As for your *Bridle-hand*, you muſt always make it work the *outward Rein*, to bring in his *outward Shoulder*, and *narrow* him *before*, and *enlarge* him *behind*, that ſo he may be preſſed upon the *inſide* of the *Turn*, and at liberty *without*, that his *Croup* may go a little out, and be the more free and at liberty; for were his *Croup* ſubjected or bound up he could not *Leap*; therefore the *outward Rein* is to be uſed for all Leaps whatſoever, either *ſtrait forwards* or upon *Circles*.

The *Croupade* is performed after the ſame manner, the difference conſiſting only in the way of helping with the Rod, which muſt be by ſtriking him a little above the *Gambrels*.

The *Balotade* is done after the ſame method, only that you muſt ſtrike him with the Rod juſt upon the middle of his *Croup*.

A *Step* and a *Leap* is an *Ayre* in which Horſes commonly go when they have not a good *Apuy*; for the Step puts him upon the *Hand*, and gives him a riſe to *Leap*, like one that runs before he *leaps*, and and ſo may leap higher than he that goes every time a *Leap*. Now all Leaps are made upon the *Hand*, therefore ſee that your Horſe be well ſettled upon the *Hand* before you offer to try if he will *Leap*, becauſe nothing diſorders a Horſe's *Mouth* more than

than leaping. For *Leaps* of all kinds give no help with your *Legs* at all, only hold him up well with the *Bridle-hand* when he *riſes before*, that ſo he may riſe the higher *behind*, and when he begins to *riſe behind*, put your *Bridle-hand* a little *forward*, to hold him up *before*, and ſtay him there upon the *Hand*, as if he *hung in the Air*, and time the motion of your *Bridle-hand*, ſo as that you may take him as if he were a *Ball* upon the bound, which is the greateſt Secret of all in *leaping* a Horſe right.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Piroyte.

THe Action of a Horſe's *Legs* in the *Piroyte* is very extraordinary; for your Hand being upon the outſide of his *Neck* to make him look into the *Turn*, before you begin the *Piroyte* you muſt in an inſtant work violently with the *outward* Rein of the *Bridle*, to ſtraiten his *Fore-Parts*, and give his *Hinder-Parts* more liberty.

As he is going to the *right-hand*, at the ſame time that he lifts his two *Fore-Legs*, he lifts his *Hind-Leg* without the Turn, ſo that he hath three Legs up at a time, and all the weight of his Body at that time reſteth upon his *inward Hind-Leg* only; and when thoſe three Legs that were up come to the Ground, his *outward Shoulder* comes in ſo quickly, that it makes his *inward Hind-Leg* to move at the ſame time almoſt in one place, to ſupply the place of a *Center*, that ſo he may make an exact *Turn* or *Circle*: I ſay, that at the ſame time his three Legs which were in the Air are ſet down, his *inward Hind-Leg* removes to accompany the *Round* or *Circle*, but in a manner ſtill in one place: So that indeed the *inward Hind-Leg* is the *Center* upon which the Horſe turns, tho'

at

at the same time it moves round; and when the Horse is so giddy that he can go no longer for fear of falling, he then thrusts his *inward Hind-Leg* forward beneath his Belly to stop himself.

These are the *Helps* and *Motions* of a Horse's Legs in the *Piroyte*, else he could not go so swiftly as he ought, and as Horses always do when they are performing this Action; and because the Horse is upon his *Shoulders*, and prest upon the inside of the Turn, therefore it is that the only *help* is with the *outward Rein* of the *Bridle*, to bring in quickly his *outward Shoulder*, and give his *Croup* a little liberty, and that without any assistance from your Legs at all: but as the Horse is turning you must take care to turn your Body well to the *Turn*, and also look upon the *inside* of his *Neck*, and thus let him turn one, two, or three times as you shall think fit. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 3.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Passades.

FIrst walk your Horse strait forwards, either by a *Wall* or *Palisade*, and at the end *stop* and raise him two or three *Pesates*, and then turn him gently, helping with the *outward Rein* of the *Bridle* and *outward Leg*, and see that he do not falsify his *Demy-Volt* either with his Shoulders or Haunches in *Passaging*, but that both be just after he has turned.

Do as much upon the other Hand, and then begin to trot him upon the same strait Line, *stopping, raising him before*, and turning him as you did upon the *Walk*, and when he is perfect upon the *Trot*, then put him to a short *Gallop* upon the strait Line, stopping and advancing him as you did before: But now let him perform his *Demy-Tour* or *Volt*, not by *Passaging*, but upon his *Ayre*; and when he is perfect in

in this, then let him make a *Paſſade* upon a ſhort Gallop, without either *ſtopping* or *raiſing before*, but only turning when at the end of the ſtrait Line, which he will do exactly in a very ſhort time: But you muſt remember in Galloping to keep his Head always a little from the Wall, that his *Croup* may come to it, and ſo keep the *Line* that he falſify not his *Demy-Volt*; alſo before he turns it will not be amiſs to let him make two or three *Falcades* or Times, to firm his *Haunches* the better, and to turn with the better Grace.

If you intend to *paſſade* or *run* your Horſe at his full *Carriere*, then keeping his Head a little from the Wall, ſlack the Bridle-hand a little, and when at the end of the *Paſſade* preſs him with your *Thighs*, and ſtay him a little upon the *Hand*, that he may make two or three *Falcades* before you turn him, and then cloſe him with your *outward Rein* as in the *Piroyte*; for the *Demy-Volt* of a *Paſſade* at full ſpeed is nothing elſe but a half *Piroyte*, and therefore muſt have the ſame *Helps* with it. And thus *paſſade* him from one hand to the other, making commonly a ſtrait Line, when you do it at full ſpeed, about five or ſix times the Horſe's length only, and ſo your Horſe will go perfectly upon *Paſſades*, which is the *Touch-ſtone* of a *ready* Horſe, and abſolutely one of the moſt uſeful things in the *Manage* for a ſingle *Combat*.

But it may be objected, that if a Man in a ſingle Combat make uſe of theſe *Falcades* or *Half-Stops* before he turn upon the end of his *Paſſade*, it will give opportunity to his Adverſary to gain his *Croup*, which is accounted a very conſiderable advantage in a ſingle Combat. To which I anſwer, That it cannot be denied, but that ſuch half *Stops* have that inconveniency: But upon the other hand, if a Man do not make uſe of them upon *Paſſades* at *full ſpeed*, he will run into another inconveniency more dangerous, which is, That his Horſe being upon his full

Carriere,

Cariere, unleſs he make him form thoſe *Half Stops*, he will be in danger of *coming over* every time he turns, riding with ſuch a force as a Man ſhould always do in *Paſſading*. And of two Evils it is beſt to chuſe the leaſt.

In *Paſſades*, help your Horſe always according to the Air with which he cloſes the end of his *Paſſade*; if with *Terra a Terra*, then with the *inward Rein* and *outward Leg*; but if with a half *Piroyte*, then with the *outward* Rein and *outward* Leg, and help always with the *Rod* upon the contrary ſide to which he is going.

CHAP. XV.

A new Invention to dreſs Horſes upon all Ayres, *by the help of one* ſingle Pillar.

ALtho' it muſt be confeſs'd that this Method is inferior to the *Directions* before given, yet it being curious and extraordinary, and in its kind very good, I ſhall here ſet it down.

Firſt bring your Horſe Sadled and Bridled to the ſingle Pillar, and there put him under the Button of the *Bridle Reins*, which is to draw down that little Button of Leather which moves up and down upon them, ſo near to the Horſe's Mane, that it may ſtay and fix the *Branches* of the *Bridle* at ſuch a degree of ſtraitneſs, as the Horſe may have but a very gentle feeling at firſt of the *Bitt*, either upon his *Bars* or place of the *Curb*: This done, if you intend to make him go to the *right hand*, let a Groom take the *Cavezon's inward Rein*, and putting it about the ſingle Pillar a little higher than the Horſe's Head, keep it there very ſhort; then let another Perſon hold the long Rein of the *Cavezon* upon the outſide of the *Turn* in one hand, and a Stick with a Bodkin at the end

end of it in the other, to prick him if he ſhould put out his *Croup* too much: And let another Perſon go behind the Horſe with a Rod to keep him from going back; then do you, being on Foot, raiſe him in one place, and be ſatisfied with a very little from him at once. Now, tying him ſhort in this manner, he cannot riſe high, and therefore goes upon his Haunches for his eaſe. After you have uſed him ſo a little, then help him with three Rods, your ſelf with two before, *viz.* one upon each Fore-Thigh, and another Perſon with the third under his Belly, which will put him very much upon the *Haunches*.

After he can perform his Leſſon exactly in *one place*, then keeping ſtill the ſame *inward Rein* of the *Cavezon* ſhort about the *Pillar*, make him go upon his *Volts*, helping him, as I have told you, with three Rods, but be you then upon the outſide of the Horſe's Shoulders, to give him the more liberty to *turn*, and thus in a ſhort time he will go *Corvets* upon the *Volts forwards* perfectly well. Keep him ſtill ſo tied with the *Cavezon Rein*, and help with the three Rods as before, and go before and *face* him, and this will make him go *Corvet's backwards* upon his *Volts*. Continue again ſtill the ſame Rein of the *Cavezon* about the *Pillar*, and you may make him go *ſideways* upon *Corvets*.

When he is perfect for the *right-hand*, then tie the *left Rein* of the *Cavezon* ſhort about the *Pillar*, and do in all things as you did for the *right-hand*: And when he goes perfectly without any Perſon upon his Back, then get upon him, the ſame *Rein* of the *Cavezon* being ſtill very ſhort about the *Pillar*, and make him go as you did before in every thing. *See Plate* 5. *Fig.* 6.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the several Helps and Corrections with the Spurs.

THE *Spurs* serve as well for *Helps* as *Correction*: as *Helps* they go before and prevent Faults; as *Corrections* they come after. And a Man having nothing but his *Hand* and *Heels* to make a ready Horse, the Spurs do half the business, altho' it must be confess'd that the *Hand* hath the pre-eminency, and the settling a Horse upon the *Hand* must always be first.

They are used as a *Help* thus; When a Horse goes *Terra a Terra*, your outward Leg close to him, when he slacks turn your Heel to him, and *pinch* him with the Spur, which you may easily do, even to bring Blood and no Body perceive it: And if a Horse suffer and obey this while you *stay* him upon the *Hand*, you may with good reason say he is an excellent *Horse*.

There is another *Help* with the *Spurs*, which is neither so violent as a *Correction*, nor so pressing as *Pinching*, and it is this; when a Horse gallops his *Croup in*, or *Terra a Terra*, if he obeys not your *outward* Leg enough, being close to or very near his side, then make a motion of the Leg as if you did Spur him, but with as gentle a touch as possible, and only to let him feel it and no more. Now if your Horse understand these two preceding Helps with the *Spurs*, he will need them but very seldom after a while, and will obey you with the Calves of your Legs only.

The *Spurs* are a *Correction* for many things: If your Horse rebel against what you would have him do, leave not spuring of him until you find him begin to obey, and when he obeys you in the least, then alight and send him to the Stable, and the next Morning try him again, and if he obey you, cherish and make much of him, that he may know you have *Mercy* as well as *Justice*; for a Horse hath *Imagination*, *Memory*, and *Judgment*; and the wisest Man in the World,

were

were he put into the form of a Horſe, could not poſſibly find out more ſubtile ways to oppoſe a Man than a Horſe will: You muſt therefore uſe your *Spurs* as a *Correction*, but ſeldom, and upon juſt occaſion: as for example, When he puts his *Croup* too much in or out; or if he refuſe to turn to that hand you would have him, then correct him with the oppoſite Spur. But if he be *Reſty* and will not go forwards, or be apprehenſive and *skittiſh*, or offer to Bite or Strike, then correct him with both *Spurs*. Alſo as I told you before, if he riſe too high before, or bolt upright, then to give him both your Spurs as he is falling down, may be a means to break him of it, but take heed not to make uſe of them juſt as he is riſing, leſt they make him come over upon you. Again, if he will not *advance* or riſe before, then a good ſtroke with both Spurs will make him *riſe*, provided at the ſame time you keep him firm and ſtayed upon the *Hand*, and as it were ſupport him a little with the *Bitt*; likewiſe if he be a *dull Jade*, or lazy and ſlack in his *Manage*, then to give him the *Spurs* will *quicken* him.

Now as the *Spurs* are of ſuch great efficacy when uſed with Diſcretion, ſo nothing makes Horſes more *Reſty* and *Vicious*, than when they are given out of time: And there are more Horſes made vicious by ill *Riders* and *Bunglers*, than are *naturally* ſo. The more unruly therefore a Horſe is, the more Calmneſs and Judgment is required in the *Rider*: For from a *paſſionate Rider* and *unruly Horſe*, what can be expected but *Diſorder* and *Confuſion*. And I muſt tell you, that a Horſe that hath been ſpoiled and made *Reſty* by ill Riding, either correcting him out of time, or letting him have his Will too much at firſt, is harder to be reduced to Obedience than the worſt *natured Jade* in the World. And thus I have deſcribed unto you all the Helps of the *Hand* and *Heels*, whereby you may perfect a *Ready Horſe* either for *Pleaſure* or *Service*.

The End of the Firſt Part.

THE Compleat Horſeman: OR, Perfect FARRIER.

PART II.

The INTRODUCTION.

IN treating of the Diſtempers of *Horſes*, 'twill not be improper to premiſe their *general ſigns* of Sickneſs. The firſt *ſign* of illneſs in a *Horſe*, is a loathing of Food; next to that, a wild hagard look; cold Ears; a hot and foamy, or clammy, Mouth; the hair on his Flanks rough and ſtaring, with ends paler than uſually; hard and black, or greeniſh, Dung; limpid Urine, weeping Eyes, a heavy drooping Head, an aptneſs to ſtumble, an unwonted dulneſs and civility to other Horſes; frequent riſing and lying down in the Stable, and looking towards his Flanks, which are doubl'd; a beating of the Heart, ſenſible to one's hand, between the left Shoulder and Sengle; an indifferency and unconcern'dneſs in what is done to him. If a Horſe, after a long ſickneſs, piſſes without ſtriding, or extending his Yard, and was not wont to do ſo

in Health, 'tis a *fatal ſign.* If the hair of his Tail and Skull is eaſily pluck'd off, it portends *Death.* If he never lies down, or ſtarts up immediately when he does, it ſpeaks danger; but a continued lying in the declenſion of a Diſeaſe, is a very good ſign. If he turns up the whites of his Eyes, he is in pain, and will be long ill.

Theſe *general ſigns*, give us to know, that a *Horſe* is ſick; but the *particular Diſeaſe* is to be diſcover'd by its *peculiar ſigns.*

In tracing all the *Diſeaſes* of *Horſes*, I ſhall follow the order of the parts of the body, beginning with the *Head*; and ſhall give a particular Deſcription of every *Diſeaſe* and its *Cauſes*, with a view of the moſt proper and approv'd *Remedies.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Diſorders of the Mouth; namely, the Lampas, Barbs, Wolves-Teeth, *and Wounds in the Mouth.*

Lampas. THE *Lampas* is a fleſhy lump or excreſcency, about the bigneſs of a Nut, in the roof of the Mouth, ſo that when you open the Horſe's Mouth; you may perceive that the roof riſes more or leſs above the Teeth. 'Tis common among young Horſes, the roof of their Mouth not being ſo harſh and dry as that of old Horſes. While a Horſe eats his Oats, it occaſions a pain that ſcares him from feeding. As for the *Cure*; it muſt be taken away with a red hot Inſtrument of Iron made for the purpoſe, and that at one ſtroak, for fear of burning the Bone, in coming over the place again, after the *Lampas* is cut through. I am of opinion, that it is beſt not to cut it off in young

young Horſes, till they have put forth all their Teeth, unleſs it be very troubleſome, and hinders 'em from eating.

Barbs are ſmall and inconſiderable lumps of fleſh under the Tongue, viſible when you put the Tongue aſide; which hinder the Horſe from Drinking, and are eaſily *cur'd*, by cutting 'em off cloſe with a pair of Sciſſers, and rubbing the place with *Salt*. *Barbs.*

Wolves-Teeth, are over grown Grinders, the points of which being higher than the reſt, prick the Tongue and fleſh in feeding, and ſo oblige the Horſe to leave off eating. They're ſeldom met with in young Horſes. If Teeth are not daily worn by chewing, they'l grow up to pierce the very roof of the Mouth; as I experienc'd once in a *Mule*, one of whoſe nether Grinders, upon the falling out of the upper Tooth, directly oppoſite to it, grew up into the void ſpace, and by degrees pierc'd the roof of his Mouth to the thickneſs of one's Finger. For *Cure*; if a Horſe gives over eating, without any apparent ſign of illneſs in his Eyes or Hair, handle his Grinders, and, if you feel the points of them through his Lips, open his Mouth with an Iron *Upſet*, and the points will appear, which you muſt break off with a *Googe*, taking care that you do not ſtrike at a good Tooth, or looſen the Jaw: To avoid which inconveniency, inſtead of uſing the *Googe*, you may make the Horſe champ on a great File us'd by Lockſmiths a quarter of an hour on both ſides, till the over grown points are broke off. *Wolves-Teeth.*

Sometimes the Bitt bearing too hard upon a Horſe's Mouth, hurts it. If only the Tongue be hurt, ſhifting the Bit for a ſingle *Canon-Bitt*, will cure it. If the *nether Jaw* be ulcerated, and a point or prick be felt by one's Finger upon the Sore, 'tis a ſign the *Wounds in the Mouth.*

Bone is broken: In which caſe you muſt put into the hole *Spirit of Vitriol*, or *Spirit of Salt* with *Cotton* (not by drops, leſt it fall upon a ſound part) holding the Horſe's Tongue with one hand, and keeping his Mouth open with the other, while it remains there; after that rub the Sore every day with *Hony of Roſes*, till the *Eſcar* falls off, and the *Bone* ſcales; and then waſh it with *Brandy*, or put *Sugar* into it, till it heals. If by putting in your Finger you find only an Ulcer with ſtinking Corruption, but without points or ſcales, filling it three or four times a day with Sugar beaten ſmall, will quickly heal it. Sometimes the Bone is ſplit quite downwards, under the fleſh of the Jaw, and is corrupted by a matter that gathers into a Tumor, and corrodes the Skin: In this caſe, you muſt ſound the depth of the hole with a *Probe*, which I have ſeen reach to the very Mouth: Then make an inciſion with a red hot Knife, reaching downwards, and dividing the Skin to the very Bone, and touch the Bone ſeveral times with a red hot Iron, conducting it thither by the *Probe*, till all the corrupt part is throughly burnt. To haſten the falling off of the *Scales*, anoint the whole burnt part with good *Oil of Bays*, every ſixth hour, for the ſpace of two Days. The hole in the beard being a moiſt ſpongy part, is often ſtop'd up with proud fleſh, which muſt be taken off with a *hot Iron*, or *Sublimate*.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of a loathing of Food, or want of Appetite.

SOmetimes a Horſe is diverted from eating, by little *Worms* lodged within his Lips, both above and below, which cauſe ſuch an itching, that he is continually rubbing his Lips againſt the Manger. Theſe *Worms* appear like little puſhes, when you turn back the Lips, and are diſlodg'd by cutting the uppermoſt Skin where they appear, with a *ſharp Knife* or *Lance*, and rubbing the inciſion with *Salt* and *Vinegar*.

In a *want of Appetite* ariſing from any other *cauſe*, 'tis very proper to *Bleed* him in the morning, in the middle of the roof of his mouth, between the two *Crocks*; or if it be a Mare, at the third or fourth furrow, with a ſharp pointed piece of a *Hart* or *Bucks-horn*. To ſtop the *Bleeding*, give him two Pecks of *moiſten'd Bran*; and if that proves ineffectual, draw up his head with a halter, as if you were going to give him a *Drench*. But the moſt effectual and ready way of ſtoping the *Blood*, is preſſing an empty *Nutſhell* ſomewhat hard upon the part, and holding it there till it ſticks. If the Diſtemper does not yield to *Bleeding*, give him good innocent *Glyſters*; moiſten his *Oats*, *Bran* and *Hay* with *Water*, in which *Savin* has been ſteep'd, continuing that method for ſome time; give him large quantities of *the leaves and roots of Radiſhes*, if they're in ſeaſon, or *red Parſnips boil'd*, or *the herb Horſetail*. If he has no unuſual heat in his body, which you may perceive by the beating and heaving of his Flanks, give him *an Ounce of Venice Treacle*, well diluted in *White* or *red Wine*. Whatever be his caſe, the following *Bag* is of good uſe.

Take an Ounce of Aſſa fœtida, *and as much pouder of* Savin; *put 'em into a Bag to be tied to the Bit, keeping him Bridled for two hours, ſeveral times a day.* As ſoon as you take off the Bridle, he will eat. The ſame *Bag* will ſerve a long time.

Above all, the ſureſt Remedy is, *an Ounce of Liver of* Antimony, *in fine pouder, with moiſten'd Bran*, to be repeated twice every day, for ſeveral days, unleſs he inclines to void the *Strangles*. Champing upon a *branch of Laurel*, or of *a Fig-tree*, rub'd over (after it is a little champ'd) with *hony of Roſes* or *common hony*, is likewiſe proper; as alſo the following *Remedy*, which is generally known and prepar'd by all perſons.

Take about two glaſſes of Verjuice or of Vinegar, ſeven or eight heads of Garlick bruis'd, about two Ounces of white Salt, and half a pound of Hony. Mix them in a Pot, in which dip the end of a ſtick, wrapt about with Linnen, and with that, rub the Gums, Lips and Tongue, having firſt waſh'd the bitter foam off his Mouth, with a *Sponge* dip'd in *cold Water.*

An Excellent Arman, *for the loſs of Appetite.*

To prevent a total loſs of Appetite, the following *Arman* is of wonderful efficacy, if the Horſe is not feveriſh. *Take a diſh full of the heart of a white Loaf, crumbled ſmall; moiſten it with Verjuice, or for want of that, with Vinegar; add a ſufficient quantity of Salt, and hony of Roſes, or of Violets, or*, if neither of theſe can be had, *of common Hony. Then put the thin Paſte into a Pot, and let it boil over a gentle Fire about a quarter of an hour, till the ſuperfluous moiſture be conſum'd. Afterwards add two Drams of Cinnamon in pouder, a dozen and a half of Cloves, a Nutmeg grated, and half a pound of pouder Sugar.* Then boil them again over a ſlow Fire, half a quarter of an hour, that the *Ingredients* may be throughly mixt, and the *Spices* may incorpo-

incorporate with the *Bread*; but the fire muſt be very ſmall, leſt the vertue of the *Aromatick ingredients* ſhould exhale. Take an *Ox's Pizzle*, let the great end of it ſoak in Water four or five hours, till it be ſoften'd; after which make the Horſe chew it between his Grinders or Jaw-Teeth, which will flatten it a little; or you may beat it with a Hammer: Then puting the quantity of a Nut of the *Arman* upon it, open the Horſe's Mouth, making him put out his Tongue on one ſide, that he may not be able to ſtir it, and gently thruſt in the *Pizzle* with the Medicine as far as you can: Then let his Tongue go, and after he has champ'd a while, put more of the *Arman* on the *Pizzle*, wiping it firſt with Hay, and thruſt it again into his Mouth, repeating it five or ſix times, every three hours. This *Medicine* nouriſhes, and infallibly retrieves the *Appetite*. It clears a Horſe's Throat, in caſe any thing ſticks in it; and brings up a great deal of bitter Cholerick Flegm, which makes him loath his Food: Only you muſt take care, that the *Pizzle* be well ſoften'd, and rather let him ſuck it in, than thruſt it violently forwards.

Chewing Balls to retrieve the Appetite.

Take a Pound of Aſſa fœtida, a Pound of Liver of Antimony, half a Pound of the wood of a Bay-Tree dried, half a Pound of dry Juniper wood, and two Ounces of Pellitory of Spain. Beat all the Ingredients apart, to a coarſe powder; then incorporate them in a Mortar, with a ſufficient quantity of good *Grape-Verjuice*, well clarified, pouring it in by degrees, and make *Balls* weighing an Ounce and a half, to be dry'd in the Sun; wrap one of theſe Balls up in a clout, tying a Thread to it; and let the Horſe chew upon it two hours in the morning, repeating it at Night, and continuing the repetition (upon the Road if you will, by tying them to the Bridle) till he recovers his Appetite. *Balls* of *Ve-*

nice Treacle may be us'd in like manner with good effect.

Take a Pound of Liver of Antimony in fine Pouder, and with the mucilage of Gum-Tragacanth, make Pills weighing ten Drams, to be dry'd in the Sun; of which, let the Horſe ſwallow two with *a Pint of Wine*, keeping him bridled two hours after, and repeating the ſame Doſe every day for a Month. This being a *cooling Medicine*, is only proper when the Horſe is not inclined to the *Strangles*, or does not require *hot Medicines*. *Stomachick Pills.*

When the Horſe is ſick, and his Diſeaſe occaſions the loſs of Appetite, you muſt not force him to exceſſive eating. The common method of giving *Milk* with *Yelks of Eggs*, and *Fleſh-broths* or *Jellies*, is very pernicious in this caſe. Indeed a *thin Broth*, of the *crum of Bread* with *Water* and a little *Salt*, is not amiſs. I muſt commend *Broth* made of a *pound of Barley Flower*, well purg'd of the *Bran*, and boil'd in *two Pints of Water*, to a ſufficient thickneſs; adding to it, *a quarter of a Pound of Sugar*, and giving it with a Horn, once in 24 hours.

CHAP. III.

Of the Strangles.

THE *Strangles* are the throwing forth of ſuperfluous humours in Foals, commonly thro' the Noſtrils; and ſometimes by ſwellings under the Throat, or in the Shoulder, Loins or Feet, or any part that happens to be weaker than the reſt. 'Tis a Northern Diſtemper, bearing ſome reſemblance of the ſmall Pox in Children. The *Cure* conſiſts in promoting a perfect evacuation of the Humour.

For

For which end, if nature throw it out, by ſwellings under the Throat.

A Remedy for the *Strangles*, when thrown out by Swellings.

Take Oil of Bays, and freſh Butter, of each an equal quantity; of the Ointment of Marſh-mallows, a double quantity. Mingle 'em cold, and anoint the Kernels under the Throat, and the parts adjacent to the Jaws every day, in order to ripen 'em; the Throat being always kept warm, and cover'd with a Lamb or Sheep's Skin, laying the woolly ſide next the Throat.

If this does not procure a *Suppuration*, tho' matter be lodg'd in thoſe parts, you muſt apply to each ſwelling, a red hot Iron of a crooked figure, for fear of injuring the neighbouring Gullet; and when the *Eſcar* falls off, fill the hole with a Tent, cover'd with the *Ointment* call'd *Baſilicum*; adding to it *Verdigris, or white Vitriol*, or the *Ointment* call'd *Ægyptiacum*, in caſe the fleſh about the ſore is over-grown, or bloody, or foamy.

If he voids the Humour ſufficiently by the Noſe, keep him warm, and walk him Morning and Evening. If the evacuation is hinder'd by hard dry matter in his Noſtrils, inject into them *equal parts of Brandy, and Olive Oil, warm*, with a ſmall *Syringe*. If nature is too weak for throwing out the matter, give him frequently *Cordial Medicines*, ſuch as, *half an Ounce of Venice Treacle, with a Pint of Spaniſh Wine*; or above all, the following *Electuary*.

The Electuary of *Kermes*.

Take the red Pouder that falls out of the Kermes Berries, when they're ripe; and when it turns to little red Worms, make Troches of it, with juice of Limons rectified to the Conſumption of a fourth part. To four Ounces of thoſe Troches, add half a Pound of ripe and dry Juniper-berries; Cubebs and Bayberries, of each ſix Ounces; roots of Spaniſh Vipers-graſs,

Maſter-

Maſterwort, Zedoary, Florentin Oris, and Shavings of Hartshorn and Ivory, of each four Ounces and an half; Elecampane roots, Orange and Citron-Peel dry'd in the ſhade, of each four Ounces; Cinnamon, half an Ounce; Cloves and Nutmegs, of each two Drams. Make a fine pouder, ſearce it, and pour it by degrees, to eleven Pounds of clarified Hony, after it has boil'd to half the thickneſs of a Syrup. Let all ferment two Months in a Pot. Then infuſe *a quarter of a pound of this Electuary* in a *Quart of White-Wine* over Night, and give it next Morning to the Horſe, keeping him Bridled two hours before and after. This is an excellent Medicine, entitled to a preference before the *Cordial pouders*, by vertue of its *fermentation*; which has the ſame effect here, that it has in *Wine*, *Beer* and *Bread*. 'Tis good for Defluxions, Colds, Palpitation of the Heart, loſs of Appetite, Dulneſs, Leanneſs; and in a word enables nature to expel whatever offends it, much better than Purgatives which weaken her. Its heat is not to be fear'd, for it never enflames the parts of the body. In preparing it, if you cannot have the *Troches*, you muſt ſupply their place with *a Pound of the freſheſt and faireſt dry Kermes berries*. But after all, theſe *dry Berries* are nothing but a *Bark*, whereas the pouder of which the *Troches* are made, is the true Pith encloſed within 'em; being at firſt a liquid ſubſtance, and upon the ripening of the Fruit, reduc'd naturally to a red pouder. You may likewiſe give the following *Balls*.

Cordial Balls. *Take of Butter, the bigneſs of an Egg; Cinnamon, a Dram; a large Nutmeg grated; and two Drams of Sugar. Mix 'em well, add half a glaſs of Brandy, ſtiring 'em over a gentle Fire.* Tye the half, or whole of this, in a round *Bag*, to be faſten'd to the Bit, and chew'd three or four times a day.

To

To promote the Evacuation of the matter by the Nose, when it is imperfect: *Take of fresh Butter, the bigness of an Egg; melt or fry it till it grows black; then add strong Vinegar, and Oil Olive, of each half a glass; and twice as much Pepper as you can lift with the ends of your Fingers.* Mix all, and pour it warm, through a Horn, into the Horse's Nose, one half into each Nostril, covering him immediately with a Cloth, and walking him in your hand half an hour. It will occasion a beating and heaving in the Flanks for an hour or two; which is not to be dreaded; for after he is put into the Stable, he will certainly void the humour plentifully.

To promote the Evacuation by the Nose.

CHAP. IV.

Of a Cold and Cough.

TO cure a Cold, accompany'd with a Violent Cough. *Take Hony of Roses, and Juice of Liquorice, of each four Ounces; Fenugreek-seed, Grains of Paradise, Cumminseed, Cinnamon, Cloves, Ginger, Gentian, Birthwort-roots, Anisseed and Coriander-seed, of each two Drams.* Reduce all the hard ingredients to pouder, and give the whole in a *Pint of White Wine, with six Ounces of Carduus Benedictus Water.* This and the like hot Compositions, are much better than the *cooling Medicines*, which ought to be given with a great deal of *caution.*

A Cold with a Violent Cough.

If the *Cold* and *Cough* is join'd to a beating in the Flanks, and Palpitation of the Heart. *Take leaves of Mallows, Violets, Herb Mercury, and*

A Cold with a beating in the Flanks.

Pellitory

Pellitory of the Wall, of each three handfuls; Aniſſeeds an Ounce; or a handful of green Fennel, if it be in the Summer. Let 'em boil half an hour in a large Pot or Kettle in 3 or 4 quarts of Water, adding an Ounce and a half, or two Ounces of Liver of Antimony, in fine pouder. After the Decoction is half cold, preſs it out, and add to the ſtrain'd Liquor four Ounces of Lenitive Electuary, and a quarter of a Pound of freſh Butter. Mix and make a *Glyſter*, to be injected every day with *an Ounce of Sal Polychreſt*, after you have walk'd the Horſe. After he has got two *Glyſters*, give him the following *Draught.*

Take of the Waters of Vipers-graſs, Carduus Benedictus, Scabious, Roſes and bitter Succory, of each half a Pint. Give the Horſe a Quart of theſe Waters, with an Ounce of *Zedoary, and two Drams of Saffron, both of them in fine pouder, or, inſtead of them, an Ounce of the Confection of Hyacinth, without Musk or Amber; then rinſe the Horn, with the half pint that remains, and make him drink that alſo.* After which let him ſtand four hours with a Water-Bit in his Mouth, and as ſoon as you unbridle him, lay *moiſten'd Bran* before him to Eat, and at Night inject the *Glyſter*, with *an Ounce and a half of Sal Polychreſt.*

To eaſe his Head, by making him void a great quantity of Water and bitter Flegm; *Take Aſſa fœtida and pouder of Savin, of each half an Ounce*; tye 'em in a *Bag* to the Bit; after he has ſtood Bridled two hours, unbridle him for two Hours; and then put in the bag again.

An Univerſal Cordial pouder.

The following Cordial pouder is of general uſe for other infirmities, as well as a Cold and Cough, and ought to be kept ready made by thoſe who keep Horſes. 'Tis this. *Take Saſſafras, Zedoary, Elecampane, Gentian, Carlin, Thiſtle, Angelica, Cubebs,*

Cubebs, Spaniſh Vipers-graſs, Maſterwort, and Marſh-mallows, of each half a pound; round and long Birth-wort, Bay-berries, the rinds of Oranges and Citrons, and Savin, of each four Ounces; Cardamoms, Liquorice, Myrrh, Shavings of Hartshorn and Ivory, Coriander-ſeed, ſeed of Caraways, Cummin, Anniſe and Fennel, of each two Ounces; Cinnamon, an Ounce; Cloves, Nutmegs, and Oriental Saffron, of each half an Ounce; all freſh and gather'd in the Spring, or about the time of Advent, before the Froſt. Reduce 'em ſeparately to a *coarſe Pouder*; then ſtrain 'em thro' a Hair Sieve, and mix 'em, the weight of each ingredient being adjuſted after the pounding and ſearſing. The *Doſe* is *two Ounces*, in *a Quart of Wine*, keeping the Horſe bridled four hours before, and two hours after. The vertue of this Pouder decays by long keeping; to avoid which inconveniency, I have lately found out a way of keeping it in its full ſtrength thirty Years; by reducing it to Balls, which are ſo hard, that they are at once portable and impenetrable by the Air. The method is as follows.

Cordial Balls.

Take a buſhel of ripe and black Juniper berries, gather'd in the end of Auguſt, *or in the beginning of* September; *beat 'em, and put 'em into a Kettle, with 8 or 9 Quarts of Water; let it boil on the Fire, ſtirring it ſometimes till it grows thick; then preſs out the Liquor, and paſs the remaining ſubſtance thro' a Searce, throwing away the Husks and berries, and mix the ſtrain'd Pulp with the ſtrain'd liquor; boil it over a clear Fire, ſtirring it till it aſſumes the thickneſs of Broth; then take it off, and when 'tis half cold mix it in a Mortar, with the Pouders preſcrib'd above, adding a pound of the grains of Kermes,* (which were left out in the preſcription of the Pouder, becauſe they loſe their vertue by being kept in Pouder.) Make *Balls* weighing twelve Drams each,

each, to be dry'd on the Strainer, with its bottom upwards, in the Summer, and reſerv'd in a Sieve or Skellet, to prevent their growing mouldy. The ſame *Pouders* may be made into *Balls* with *Cordial Waters*, which will dry more eaſily: But the *Mucilage* of *Juniper-berries* does mightily enlarge the efficacy of the former. When you uſe theſe *Balls*, you muſt beat 'em to a coarſe Pouder, and exhibit it in *Wine*, for if you give 'em whole, perhaps they'l be voided as entire as they are took. The *Doſe* is *two Balls*. They are very ſucceſsful in inveterate Coughs; they promote the expulſion of the *Strangles*; they excite Urine and inſenſible Tranſpiration; they rouſe the Appetite, and with regard to their general vertue in curing moſt Diſeaſes, are juſtly ſtiled *Treacle Balls*.

When this Univerſal *Pouder* or *Balls* are not to be had, the following receipt may be us'd with very good ſucceſs. *Take Bayberries, Gentian*, round *Birthwort, Myrrh, Florentine Orris, ſhavings of Hartshorn, Elecampane, of each four Ounces; Zedoary, Cummin, Aniſſeeds and Savin, of each two Ounces; Cinnamon, half an Ounce; Cloves, two Drams; flowers of Corn-poppies dry'd, two Ounces.* Beat all the Ingredients apart, ſearce 'em through a Hair ſtrainer, mix 'em thoroughly, and keep 'em hard preſs'd in a Leathern Bag ty'd cloſe. The *Doſe* is *two Ounces* infus'd all Night in *Wine*.

The moſt uſual *Cordial Pouders* are made of *Liquorice*, and the *ſeeds of Coriander, Aniſe* and *Fennel*, becauſe theſe Ingredients are to be had at low rates. But they are much inferiour to my Univerſal *Cordial Pouder* or *Balls*.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the Glanders.

THE *Glanders* is a running at the Noſtrils of Phlegmatick, tough, white, red, yellowiſh or greeniſh humours, with one or more Kernels faſten'd to the Bone, between the two Jaw-bones. In the beginning you may endeavour to reſolve the Kernel, before it comes to an extreme hardneſs; by applying the following *Pultis.*

Take half a Pound of Linſeed, reduc'd to fine Flower; mix it with a Quart of ſtrong Vinegar, and boil it over a very clear but little Fire, ſtirring it conſtantly. When it begins to grow thick, add ſix Ounces of Oil of Lillies. Mingle them well, and apply it to the Kernel, covering it with a Lambs Skin, as in the cure of the Strangles. Renew this *Pultis* every day.

Some are for cutting out the Kernel, but that is not always a certain Cure, for I have ſeen the Kernel, grow again after it has been thrice cut out, eſpecially when it is done in the Wane of the Moon; for at that time, the evacuation by the Noſtrils naturally leſſens the Kernel, but the next encreaſe of the Moon fills it again.

In a leſs Malignant ſort of *Glanders*, the following method may be tried. *Take an Ounce of Brazil Tobacco, cut ſmall, infuſe it ſix hours in a quart of good Brandy.* Strain the liquor gently through a Clout, and inject half a glaſs of it into his Noſtrils, having firſt taken up his two Neck Veins, two Fingers breadth beneath the uſual bleeding place; keeping him Bridled four hours before, and two hours after the injection, and walking him a quarter of an hour in your hand, as ſoon as he has taken it. This remedy may be repeated every Morning, or

every

every ſecond, third or fourth Morning, in greater or leſſer Doſes, in proportion to the abundance of the Evacuation, the loſs of Appetite and beating in the Flanks, which require greater Intervals, and a ſmaller quantity. If this cauſes too great a commotion in the Horſe's body, you may infuſe *two Ounces of Tobacco* in a *quart of Oil Olive*, letting it ſtand upon hot Aſhes all Night, and in the morning inject half a glaſsful of the ſtrain'd liquor, lukewarm, at each Noſtril. In purſuing this, or any other method, you muſt ſtill remember to promote the Evacuation by the Noſtrils, during the wane of the Moon, and to ſtrengthen nature with *Cordials*, during its encreaſe; and during the uſe of *evacuating Remedies*, to keep the Horſe to a *moiſtening Diet*, particularly to *moiſten'd Bran*, which is more eaſily digeſted than *Oats*. *Perfumes* receiv'd at the Noſtrils, are us'd by *Farriers*, but I never ſaw 'em do good; they make the Horſe too lean and dry, and ſink his Appetite; beſides, injecting with Syringes, makes Perfumes and Feathers uſeleſs. But after all, I have ſeen Horſes hold out for ſix years with the *Glanders*, and do all their wonted ſervice, without the uſe of any Remedies, though indeed the Diſeaſe carried 'em off at laſt.

Another *Remedy* for the *Glanders*, is this. *Take the ſecond Bark of the Elder-Tree that grows in watery places cut ſmall, and with it fill a three quart Pot a third part full, adding two quarts of Water, and boiling to the Conſumption of one half, ſtirring it from time to time. Then add another Quart, and conſume that too. Then preſs out the remaining Quart, and diſſolve in the ſtrain'd Liquor half a Pound of Oil Olive.* Inject half a Pint of this Liquor into his Noſtrils, and give him the reſt to Drink, walking him afterwards abroad in his Cloaths for half an hour. It may be repeated after eight days. Sometimes it compaſſes the Cure; however, it never produces dangerous effects.

If

If the *Glanders* are curable, the following Remedy will do the buſineſs; if they're incurable and the Lungs quite corrupted, it will kill the Horſe. 'Tis this, *Take of Oriental Caſtor, groſly beaten, an ounce; Gentian beaten, and Savin ſlic'd ſmall, of each an ounce and a half; boil them in five quarts of ſtrong Vinegar to three.* After the Liquor is cold, ſtrain it through a linnen Cloth. Give him a quart of this Liquor, after he has ſtood Bridled three hours, covering him up in the Stable, and not hindring him to lie down; and two hours after, walking him half an hour. When he recovers his Appetite, which will happen in two or three days, give him another quart in the like manner; and after that, another, when his Appetite returns. This Remedy will occaſion a great Commotion in his body; but if he does not cough up part of his Lungs, and runs only at the Noſtrils an unbloody, and not greeniſh matter, you need not deſpair.

Emetick Wine is very proper in this, and all other Diſeaſes of Horſes. It promotes the Operation of *Purgatives*, and excites Urine, when Nature ſtands in need of ſuch Evacuations; it clears the Windpipe and Lungs, and is of ſingular uſe in *Glyſters*. 'Tis prepar'd by infuſing all Night, *five or ſix pieces of the fineſt glaſs of Antimony beaten ſmall, in a quart or five half pints of White Wine or Claret*; or letting the *Wine* ſtand 24 hours in a *Cup of the Regulus of Antimony*; or by putting *two ounces of the Liver of Antimony* in pouder, in a three quart Bottle-full of *white Wine* or *Claret*; of which you may take out five half pints for a Doſe, after it has ſtood 24 hours; ſtill pouring in freſh Wine for what you take out; for the ſame quantity of the *Antimonial pouder*, will ſerve perpetually. The beſt *Antimonial Preparation*, is the *Angelical pouder*, infus'd to *an ounce* in three quarts of *Wine*. Thoſe who grudge the charge of *Wine*, may infuſe in *Beer*; which will *Emetick Wine.*

produce the ſame effects, and is of peculiar uſe in *Glyſters*. This *Emetick Wine* or *Beer*, is both given at the Mouth, and injected at the Noſtrils with good ſucceſs.

Theſe are the beſt Remedies yet known; but a true *Glanders* is for the moſt part incurable.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Eyes.

THE *Diſeaſes* of the *Eyes* proceed either from a defluxion of ſharp biting humours, enflaming the Eye; or from ſome external hurt. In the former caſe the Eyes are watry, hot, red and ſwollen; and the defluxion advances gradually: In the latter the Malady comes quickly to a heighth, and on the outſide of the Eye the Skin is peel'd off.

If the Diſtemper proceeds from a *Rheum*, or *Defluxion*, you muſt conſider whether the *Rheum* is immediately deriv'd from the *Eye*, or from another Diſaffected part. In the latter caſe the redreſſing of the part will ſet the Eye free: In the former 'tis proper to cool his Blood with *an Ounce of Sal Prunel*, mix'd every day with his *Bran*; and when it leſſens his Appetite, to ſhift it with *Liver of Antimony*, till he comes to his Stomach again. If the Eye be ſwollen, hot, clos'd up, and red or bloodſhotten, let the following Medicine be immediately applied.

A Remedy for Rheums in the Eyes.

Take common Bole Armenick in pouder, mix it with *Vinegar*, and *the whites of two Eggs*, till it be reduc'd to a kind of *Paſte*; to be applied Morning and Evening, about the Eye, for half a Foot round, Bathing the Eye five or ſix times a day, with a little fine Sponge ſoak'd in *Brandy*. Or,

Take a new laid Egg boil'd hard, and having taken off the ſhell, cut it through the middle, and take

out

out the Yelk, putting into its place, a piece of white Vitriol, about the bigneſs of a Nut; then join the two halfs of the Egg, and wrapping it in a piece of clean and fine Linnen, infuſe it in half a glaſs of Roſe Water, for the ſpace of ſix hours. Then throwing away the *ſoak'd Egg*; pour eight or ten drops of the *Water* into the Horſe's Eye with a Feather, Morning and Evening.

For a preſent Remedy. *Take the white of a new laid Egg, an equal quantity of Roſe Water, the bigneſs of a ſmall Nut of white Vitriol in fine pouder.* Beat 'em all with a ſtick, and put ſome of it into the Eye. This allays the heat, and repulſes the Rheum. This and all ſuch Waters muſt be renew'd after ſeven or eight days, leſt they turn ſharp or ſowre. And withal remember, that changing and ſhifting of Remedies, retards the Cure very much.

If the Diſtemper does not yield to theſe Remedies, make uſe of the following *Eye-Water. Take four handfuls of true ground Ivy* (not the common *creeping Ivy*, which laſts all Winter,) *beat it in a marble Mortar, with the whites of ſix hard Eggs; then add half a pint of very clear white Wine, a quarter of a pint of Roſe Water, an ounce and a half of Sugar Candy, and as much white Vitriol; beat 'em well together with a Peſtle, ſtrewing upon 'em an ounce of white Salt*; then cover the Mortar, and place it in a Cellar; after it has ſtood there five or ſix hours, pour the whole compoſition into a *Hippocras Bag* of clean white Serge, and ſet a Veſſel under it to receive the Water that drops through, which muſt be preſerv'd in a glaſs Bottle; and every Morning and Evening pour ſome of it into the Horſe's Eye. *An Eye-Water.*

For a cheap eaſy Medicine, take what follows. *Take a piece of Blew or Cyprus Copperas, infuſe it in Plantane Water, or that of Fennel, or of Eyebright,* *A cheap Eye-Water.*

or of Rue, or of Celandine, or of Roſes, or of Chervil, or for want of theſe in common Water; pour ſome of the bluiſh infuſion into the Eye, as being a Balſamick adſtringent, of ſingular virtue againſt redneſs and inflammations of the Eye; applying at the ſame time the following *Ointment*.

An Ointment for Rheums in the Eyes.

Take of the Ointment call'd Album Rhaſis, one pound; Salt of Lead extracted in preparing the Oil, or if that cannot be had, the common Salt of Lead, in fine pouder, half an ounce. Incorporate 'em very well together, and anoint the parts about the Eyes, half a Foot round, Morning and Evening, for a conſiderable time.

For Pains and Inflammations of the Eyes, there's nothing better than a *charge* made of *Rotten Apples*, or of *freſh Apples roaſted under the Aſhes*, the ſeeds being taken out, and beaten in a Marble Mortar, and ſprinkled with *Roſe Water*; applying it to the Eye with ſoft Flax. For the ſame end you may apply by way of *Pultis*, the cruſt of a *white Loaf*, hot from the Oven, and ſoak'd in *Cow's Milk* or *Brandy*; as alſo *Plantane* and *Celandine*, wrap'd up in a Clout about the Horſe's Poll, leaving holes for the two Ears, and the ſound Eye. In all Preparations of Remedies for the Eyes, you muſt take care to avoid fat and oily Ingredients, becauſe they ſtick to the part, and by cauſing a continual motion of the Eyelid, enflame the heat.

Some Horſes have naturally tender weeping Eyes, which void a ſharp Corroſive humour; which are eaſily cur'd by Bathing the Eyes, and the adjacent Parts, Morning and Evening with *Brandy*.

In the Diſeaſes of the Eyes, occaſion'd by external hurts, the ſame cooling and adſtringent Medicines are proper. But that which may ſerve inſtead of all others, is the ſolution of *Lapis Mirabilis*, or the *Worderful Stone*; the virtue of which, is anſwer-

able

able to its Title. The Compoſition of the Stone is this

Lapis Mirabilis.

Take of white Vitriol, two pounds; *Roch Allum, three pounds*; *fine Bole Armenick, half a pound*; *Litharge of Gold and Silver, two ounces.* Reduce 'em all to pouder, and put 'em in a new glaz'd Earthen Pot, with *three quarts of Water.* Boil them very gently over a ſmall Fire, without ſmoak, ſet equally round the Pot, till the Water is quite waſted, and the matter at the bottom perfectly dry. Then let the matter cool, which will grow harder by long keeping. Now to make an infuſion of this Stone, you muſt put *half an ounce* of it, to *four ounces* of *Water* in a glaſs Bottle; it will diſſolve in a quarter of an hour, and make the Water as white as *Milk*, when you ſhake the Bottle. With this liquor, which will keep good twenty Days, you muſt waſh the ſore Eye, Morning and Evening, ſhaking the Bottle every time. This may ſerve inſtead of all other Medicines for *Rheums*, *Blows*, *Moon Eyes*, *&c.* and to my mind is much ſafer by way of *ſolution* or *infuſion*, than by way of *pouder* blown into the Eye.

To remove a Film on the Eye.

If after the abatement of the heat, and ſtopping of the *Rheum*, there remains a *white Film* upon the Eye, you muſt remove it, by lifting up the Eyelids, after the Eye has been waſh'd with *Wine*, and ſtroaking it gently with your Thumb, cover'd with *Wheat Flower.* This method of ſtroaking with the Thumb, is better than blowing *pouders* into the Eyes, with a leaden Pipe, becauſe the Horſe cannot be ſo much aware of the former, as of the latter. *Common Salt*, or *Salt of Lead*, beaten fine, and put into the Eye, are likewiſe proper to conſume a Film. Or you may put a little *Salt* into your Mouth in the Morning Faſting, and after 'tis

diſſolv'd, waſh the Horſe's Eye with your *Spittle*. But above all, there is nothing ſo effectual as *Sal-Armoniack*, beaten and put into the Eye, and repeated every day, till the *Film* is taken off.

CHAP. VII.

Of a Hæmorrhagy, *or* Bleeding.

A *Hæmorrhagy*, is a *Flux of Blood*, at the Noſe or Mouth, occaſion'd by unuſual Fatigues in hot Weather, which mingle the Blood with a Salt or ſpirituous juice, that makes the Blood Ferment, and boil out of its Veſſels; or by over-feeding, which occaſions a Redundancy of Blood; or by violent exerciſe, which makes it boil up, and open the Mouths of the Veins. That a ſaline Spirituous Liquor will raiſe a ſtrong Fermentation in the Blood, is plain from the violent Ebullition that happens upon mixing the Spirit of Wine, Hartshorn, or Soot, with Blood drawn from the Veins.

To ſtop a Bleeding at Noſe or Mouth, leſt it kill or weaken the Horſe; you muſt immediately let him Blood in the *Flanks* or *Plate Veins* of the *Thighs*, or rather in the *Neck*, if you take Blood enough in the other parts. Then beat a large quantity of *Knot-graſs* (or if you cannot find that, of *Nettles*) to a *Maſh*, and fill the Horſe's Noſtrils with it; binding alſo ſome of it to his *Temples*, and to his *Reins*, where the Saddle ends, and even to his *Stones*, if he is not gelt. In Summer let the Horſe ſtand two hours in Water, up to his Flanks; or if you want a conveniency for that, cover his Head and Back with a Cloth, ſeven or eight times doubled, and dip'd in *Vinegar* and *Water*. Keep him in the Stable with his Head upright, not ſuffering him

him to lie down; and from time to time, throw cold Watar on his Sheath and Stones; next day Bleed him again, and inject the following cooling *Glyster.*

A Glyster for Bleeding.

Take Mallows and Marshmallows, of each a handful; Plantane, two handfuls; Succory, Lettuce, and Purslane, of each a handful. Boil 'em in five pints of Water, with an ounce and a half of Sal Polychrest in Pouder. To the strain'd liquor, add a quarter of a pound of the Ointment Populeum (not adulterated with Verdigrease) or of the true Unguentum Rosatum. Make a *Glyster* to be injected, after you have rak'd the Horse.

If the Bleeding still continues, notwithstanding these Precautions, take *Plantain Leaves*, beaten and mix'd with *Male Frankincense*, *Aloes* or *Myrrh*, and put 'em into his Nostrils, holding his Nose up, as if you were going to give him a Drench; then cover him with the Cloth dip'd in *Oxycrate*, and throw cold Water frequently on his Sheath and Stones.

If the Blood runs with a violent stream, take *the pouder of a Stone-Ass's Dung*, dry'd in a shade; and blow it plentifully into the Horse's Nose, thro' a glass Pipe or Lead. This is an excellent Snuff, both for Men and Horse, who are apt to Bleed at Nose; and smells only of dry Herbs. However for the sake of nice Riders, that will not keep about them what smells of *Ass-turd*, I shall subjoin the following Remedy.

Take a *Hare* kill'd in *March*, flay her, and without larding prepare her for the Spit, but do not put her upon it; then dry her in an Oven, so that the whole flesh may be reduc'd to pouder, which, if blown plentifully into the Horse's Nose, will effectually stanch the Blood.

In any time of the Year, you may uſe in the like manner *the pouder of the rinds of Pomgranats*, *Roman Vitriol* and *Allum*, in equal quantities; and it will keep long without loſing its vertue.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Vives.

THE *Vives* is a ſwelling and inflammation of the Glands and Kernels of the Neck, which ſtraitens the Windpipe, and occaſions ſuch a difficulty of breathing and uneaſineſs, that the Horſe frequently lies down, and ſtarts up again, and tumbles about ſtrangely. The Cauſes are, drinking, or being expoſed to cold after a violent heat, in which caſe the humors being melted down, fall too plentifully upon the Kernels; eating too large a quantity of Barley, Oats, Wheat or Rye; and ſeveral other cauſes, owing to the Indiſcretion of the Rider or Groom.

A Remedy for the Vives.

Unleſs the *Vives* be ſo large, that the Horſe is in preſent danger of being ſtifled, I would not adviſe you to open it. The better way is to rot them, by taking hold of the Kernel with a pair of Pincers or Pliers, and beating the ſwelling gently, with the handle of a ſhoeing Hammer, or bruiſing the tumors with your hand, till they are ſufficiently ſoften'd: after which they will certainly diſappear. But this method muſt not commence, till the ſwelling is ripe, which is known by the eaſy ſeparation of the Hair from the Skin, when one plucks it with his hand. The place where the inflam'd Kernel lies, is trac'd by bending the Horſes Ear downwards towards his Throat, near the Cheek-bone; and in that place where it touches the Skin, is the

Inflammation

Inflammation seated, and there you will find the Kernel that must be taken up with the Pincers.

Having rotted, or in case of necessity, open'd the the *Vives*, Bleed the Horse under the Tongue, and after that in the Flanks; wash his Mouth with *Salt* and *Vinegar*; blow some of the *Vinegar* into his Ears, rubbing and squeezing 'em hard to make it penetrate, for it powerfully assuages the pain that is communicated to the Jaws, by reason of their nearness to the seat of the *Vives*. Then make the Horse Drink *a quart of Wine*, with *two handfuls of Hempseed beaten*, *two Nutmegs grated*, and *the Yelks of six Eggs*, walking him gently half an hour after. About an hour after the giving of that Draught, which is a good and sure Remedy, inject the following *Glyster*.

A Glyster for the Vives.

Boil five pints of Beer (or of Wine and Water) with an ounce and a half of Sal Polychrest in fine pouder; remove it from the Fire; add two ounces of Oil of Bay, and inject it Blood-warm. Or,

Take the five opening Roots, of each one handful; beat 'em grosly, and boil 'em in three quarts of Water for a quarter of an hour; add the softening Herbs, Mallows, Violets, Herb Mercury, and Pellitory of the Wall, of each one handful; boil them again as before; then strain out the liquor, and add a pint of Emetick Wine; Hony of the Herb Mercury, half a pound; fresh Butter four ounces; Oil of Rue, two ounces; make a *Glyster* to be injected after you have rak'd the Horse.

A sure Remedy for the Vives.

You will rarely meet with any instance of this Distemper, that will not yield to the following Medicine. *Take an ounce of Venice Treacle, in a quart of red Wine*; or, if the Disease be violent, *in a pint of Brandy:* let him Drink it. At the same time prepare a *Glyster* of the *softening Herbs*, with

an

an ounce and a half of Liver of Antimony in pouder; adding to the ſtrained liquor, *two ounces of Venice Treacle*, with *a quarter of a pound of freſh Butter.*

CHAP. IX.

Of the Colick, Fret or Gripes.

A Colick from over-feeding.

THE *Colick* proceeds either from over-feeding, or from Wind; or from a glaſſy Flegm in the Inteſtines; or from Worms; or from a ſtoppage of Urine. It always attends the Vives.

That from *over-feeding*, is cur'd by Evacuating with *Carminative Glyſters* (not with *Vomits*, for they never take Effect in Horſes) and ſtrengthening Nature with *Cordials*; of which *Orvietan*, and the *Eſſence of Vipers* are the moſt Celebrated. The *Orvietan* is thus prepar'd.

The Orvietan.

Take of Sage, Rue, Roſemary and Goats Rue, of each a handful; Carduus Benedictus, Dittany of Crete, Roots of Maſterwort, white Bohemian Angelica, Biſtort, round and long Birthwort, white Dittany, Galangal, Gentian, Coſtmary, Aromatick Reed, and Parſley-ſeed, of each an Ounce; Bayberries and Juniperberries, of each half an ounce; Cinnamon, Cloves, and Nutmegs, of each three drams; Seal'd Earth, prepar'd with Vinegar, and old Venice Treacle, of each an ounce; Pouder of Vipers, four ounces; Wallnuts cleans'd and dry'd, Crum of white Bread dry'd, of each eight ounces; clarified Hony, ſeven pounds. Chop the Wallnuts, beat 'em with the Bread, then paſs 'em thro' a ſearce, turn'd upſide down, adding the Pouders and other Ingredients, and at laſt the Treacle and Hony. This is the true preparation of the

the *Orvietan*; which is an Excellent Medicine in moſt Diſeaſes for Horſes, eſpecially in the *Colick*, being given in *Wine*, and the Horſe being afterwards walk'd and well cover'd. All the Virtues of this excellent Medicine, are fully enjoy'd by the *Eſſence of Vipers*, which is thus prepar'd.

The Eſſence of Vipers.

Take of purify'd Nitre, pure Salt of Earth (to be had of thoſe who make Salt Peter) of each a pound. Dry them, reduce them to pouder, and mix 'em with four times as much Potter's Earth ſearc'd. Let the whole ſtand three or four days in an Earthen Pan, in a Cellar, till the Salts are diſſolv'd. Then reduce all to a ſort of *Paſte*, to be form'd into little *Balls*, of the bigneſs of ſmall Nutts, adding ſome drops of *Water*, if the Maſs be too dry. After the Balls are dry, put 'em into an Earthen Retort, *diſtilling* them as *Aquafortis* is uſually diſtill'd, and you will find in the *Recipient* a *Menſtruum*, fit to diſſolve *Vipers*. Put this *Liquor* in a Matraſs, with a moderate heat, and throw to it a *Live Viper*; which will quickly expire, and afterwards melt away like *Anchovy*'s in *Butter*. Then pour off the *clear liquor*, after it has ſettled; and reſerve it for the *Eſſence of Vipers*, to be mix'd with *three parts* of *Deſtilled Cordial Waters*.

The Wind Colick.

The moſt peculiar ſign of the *Wind Colick* is a ſwelling of the Horſe's Body, as if it were ready to burſt, accompanied by the tumbling and toſſing, common to the other kinds of *Colicks*. 'Tis frequently caus'd by *Ticking*. 'Tis cur'd by bleeding in the Flanks, and under the Tongue; and walking him frequently, ſometimes at a Trot, and ſometimes at a Foot-pace. If it continues, inject the following *Glyſter*.

Take two ounces of the Droſs of Liver of Antimony, in fine pouder; boil 'em a little, but very briskly, in five pints

pints of Beer. With *three* or *four ounces* of good *Oil of Bay*, make a *Glyſter* to be injected luke-warm, and repeated every two hours. But the moſt effectual expeller of Wind, is *three* or *four ounces* of the following *Oil* in the ordinary *Glyſters.*

A Carminative Oil for Glyſters.

Take Rue, Calamint, wild Marjoram, and Penny-Royal, all dry'd in the ſhade, of each one handful; ſeeds of Cummin, Carrots and Fennel, and Bay-berries, of each an ounce; Oil Olive, two pounds; white Wine a pint. Pound the Herbs, bruiſe the Seeds; and put altogether in an Earthen glaz'd Pot, covering it with another Pot ſomewhat leſs, and luted with Clay or Paſte. Boil 'em over a ſlow Fire about ſix hours. After it is half cool'd, ſtrain out the *Oil*, and add *four ounces of the Pulp of Coloquintida.* Then put the *Oil* again into the ſame Pot, covering and luting it as before: And boil it with a gentle heat, ſix or eight hours; after which, let it boil briskly half an hour, and after it is half cool'd uncover the Pot, and preſs out the *Oil*, which is a cheap durable Medicine, and more effectual than any other Ingredient in *Carminative Glyſters.*

The Common Fret or Colick.

A Colick taking riſe from a ſharp glaſſy Flegm, is at once more occult, and more fatal than any of the preceding kinds. In this Diſeaſe, which is often uſher'd in by a Looſeneſs of a days ſtanding, the Horſe ſweats in the Flanks and Ears; he indeavours in vain to Dung; what Excrements he voids are few, and moſtly Phlegm, that cannot be ſeparated from the Guts without great pain; after ſuch an Evacuation he has a moment of eaſe, and ſeems to be perfectly cur'd; but his Torments return in an inſtant, attended by a loſs of Appetite, a frequent lying down, and ſtarting up, and a looking upon his Flanks.

For

For *Cure: Take two quarts of Milk, or of Tripe-broth; Oil Olive, and freſh Butter, of each four or five ounces; the Yelks of ſix Eggs, and two or three ounces of Sugar.* Make a *Glyſter* to be repeated every three hours. *Purgatives* given at the Mouth, increaſe the pain by moving the humors and twitching the Guts: So that *Glyſters*, frequently injected are infinitely preferable; to which after the pain is ſomewhat aſſuag'd, we muſt add *two ounces of Diaphoretick Antimony*, in order to melt the Humors, and remove the Cauſes. The following mixture is an eaſy and familiar Remedy of good uſe, to allay the pain, attenuate the thick humors, and qualify their heat and ſharpneſs.

Take Oil of Roſes, and common Oil, of each a pound; fine Sugar, eight ounces; Roſe Water, a pint. Mix, and pour a glaſsful down his Throat with a Horn, every three hours.

When you perceive that the Horſe is freed of his pain, feed him with *Bran* ſeven or eight Days; after which, to extirpate the cauſe, purge him with the following *Oil*, which is preferable to all other *Purgatives*, by reaſon that it moves a Horſe's belly, without thoſe fatal diſorders that commonly enſue upon the taking of other *Purgatives*; tho' indeed I could wiſh, ſome powerful *Diaphoretick*, were ſubſtituted in the place of all *Purgatives*, ſince they prove ſo pernicious to Horſes. The *Oil* I ſpeak of, is this.

An Excellent purging Oil.

Take of Oil Olive, three pounds; Claret Wine, a pint; pulp of Coloquintida, five ounces; Flower of Linſeed, an Ounce and a half; three Lilly Roots, cut into round ſlices; Miſsletoe of the Apple-tree beaten, an ounce; Chamomil Flowers, a handful. Put all the Ingredients into a Pot, cover'd exactly with another ſomewhat leſs, and lute the Junctures of the Veſſels with Clay, temper'd with a little Hair or Wool. After the Clay is dried, boil the whole Compoſition gently

gently eight or ten hours. When 'tis half cold, ſtrain it through a Linnen Cloth, and give to the Horſe one half of it lukewarm, in *a pint of Tripe or Sheeps-Head Broth*, not fat; adding a little more afterwards, if you find him hard to be wrought upon. This *Oil* will keep ten Years, without the leaſt Alteration. 'Tis a good *Purge* for ſuch Horſes as continue lean after hard labour. Tho' the *Coloquintida* in it, may ſeem improper in a Colick, yet its ſharpneſs being temper'd by the *Oil*, renders it a proper Medicine.

The Worm Colick. Sometimes violent and unſufferable *Colick* pains, are occaſion'd by broad, thick and ſhort *Worms*, or *Truncheons*, like little Beans, of a red colour; which gnaw and pierce the Guts, and ſometimes eat holes thro' the Maw, and ſo kill the Horſe. The Signs of ſuch a *Colick*, are *red Worms* voided along with the excrements (for the *long white Worms*, ſeldom gripe a Horſe) the Horſes biting his Flanks or Belly in the extremity of pain, or tearing off his Skin; and then turning his Head and looking upon his Belly; his ſweating all over the body, his frequent throwing himſelf down and ſtarting up again, with ſeveral unuſual Poſtures.

For the Cure, *Take half an ounce of Mercurius dulcis* ('tis worth 15 *d.* an ounce, and do's not prick the Tongue as the *Sublimate* does) *an ounce and an half of old Venice Treacle.* Make up the whole into three Pills, to be given in a Pint of Claret. An hour after, in order to entice the Worms to the ſtreight Gut, inject a ſweet *Glyſter* of *Milk* or *Tripe Broth*, with the *Yelks of Eggs*, and *half a pound of Sugar.*

The following *Pouder* has a ſingular virtue of killing Worms, and at the ſame time correcting Indigeſtion, diſpelling Wind, and qualifying a glaſſy Phlegm. So that 'tis juſtly reckon'd a *Specifick* for all

all the kinds of Colicks above mention'd; and ought to be kept ready made by Travellers, since *Colicks* are so frequent upon a Journey, and 'tis hard to adjust the particular species of 'em. The *Specifick* is this.

A Specifick for all kinds of Colicks.

Take Roots of Master-wort, Leaves and Roots of Radishes, greater Centory, and Tansy, all dry'd in the Summer-Sun, or in the moderate heat of an Oven in Winter, of each a pound; Germander, Ground-pine, Roots of Angelica and Elecampane, all dry'd in the shade, of each half a pound; Sea-moss, and Liver Aloes, of each four ounces; Galangal, Nutmeg, and Sal Prunella, of each two ounces. Pound 'em all apart, then mix and keep 'em in a Leathern Bag, or glass Bottle close stopp'd. The *Dose* is from an *ounce* to *two ounces and a half*, according to the size of the Horse, to be mix'd with *three* or *four drams* of *Old Treacle*, or *an ounce of Treacle Diatessaron*, or *Mithridate*; and given in a *pint* of white Wine; walking the Horse afterwards in his Cloaths. If you suspect *Worms*, *an ounce and an half* of the *Specifick pouder*, mix'd with *half an ounce of Mercurius dulcis*, will infallibly kill them. Those who are prejudic'd against *Mercury*, may mix *an ounce* of the *Specifick pouder*, with an *ounce of Aloes*, *three drams of Coloquintida*, *as much of Agarick*, *and half an ounce of Turbith*; and give the whole in a *quart of white Wine*, with *a quarter of a pint of the Gall of an Ox*, covering him well after it, and walking him for a quarter of an hour. This will at once *purge* and kill the *Worms*: But it is only proper for great Eaters, and that about two or three days after the fit of the *Colick* is over. Those who have not the *Specifick pouder* ready made, may put in its place an *ounce* or *two* of the following *Pouder*, which is cheap and easily prepar'd, *viz.*

Take

A cheap ſpecifick for the Colick.

Take of common Parſley Roots, dry'd in the ſhade, two pounds; grains of Paradiſe and Rinds of Oranges, dry'd and reduc'd to pouder, of each a pound; Pigeons dung, half a pound. Make a coarſe pouder, to be kept in a Leathern Bag.

A choice Remedy for the Colick.

Thoſe who are curious, may prepare the following dulcify'd Spirit, which indeed, is an excellent, and withal a cheap and durable Remedy. *Take of Spirit of Nitre about half a pound*, pour it by drops upon an *equal quantity* of the beſt *Spirit of Wine*, to prevent too violent an Ebullition. After the Agitation ceaſes, put the *whole liquor* in a *Cucurbit*, with its *Head* and *Receiver*, and *Diſtill* with a gentle *Sand heat*; *Cohobating* or repeating the Diſtillation of the Liquor that comes over four ſeveral times; by which means the *Spirit* will unite, and become ſweet. Give *a dram and a half*, or *two drams* of this *Spirit* in *white Wine*; and an *ounce and a half*, or *two ounces* in an ordinary *Glyſter*.

If theſe Medicines prove ſucceſsleſs, give the *Horſe two ſtinking Pills* in a *pint* of *Wine*, and an hour after a *Glyſter*, repeating the ſame Doſe a ſecond or third time, if the pain ſtill continues. This is only proper, after the Trial of other Medicines.

The Colick from a Suppreſſion of Urine.

Sometimes a Horſe is ſiez'd with a *Colick*, in which he cannot ſtale. The cauſes are either obſtructions in the Neck of the Bladder, or an Inflammation of the Bladder, or (tho' very rarely) Sand and Gravel. Without timely aſſiſtance, this *Colick* proves mortal. You may know it by theſe Signs; he tumbles and riſes often, he offers in vain to ſtale; oftentimes his body ſwells, and ſometimes he ſweats about the Flanks. The Cure muſt

commence

Commence with a *ſoftening Glyſter*, mix'd with *Turpentine*, diſſolv'd with the *Yelks of Eggs*, and the *Carminative Oil* preſcrib'd for *Wind Colicks*. Then give what follows.

A Remedy to provoke Urine.

Take about four ounces of dry'd Pigeons dung in pouder; boil it in a quart of white Wine; and after two or three waums, ſtrain out the liquor, and give it blood-warm to the Horſe: Then walk him for half an hour, and he will ſtale if it be poſſible.

If a thick Flegm ſtops the Urinary paſſages, the following Remedy will certainly give relief, either by Sweat or Urine. *Take an ounce of Saſſafras Wood with the Bark, cut it ſmall, and infuſe it in a quart of white Wine in a large glaſs Bottle well ſtop'd, ſo that two thirds of the Bottle may remain empty.* Let it ſtand on *hot Aſhes*, about ſix hours; then ſtrain out the *Wine*, and give it to the Horſe in a Horn.

CHAP. X.

Of an Immoderate Flux of Urine; and of a Staling, or Piſſing of Blood.

A Flux of Urine.

SOmetimes a Horſe is ſiez'd with an exceſſive Flux of crude, and undigeſted *Urine*, reſembling Water, which gradually drains his ſtrength. The *Cauſe* is a heat and ſharpneſs in the Blood, or an Inflammation in the Kidneys, which, like cupping-glaſſes, ſuck in the unconcocted Serum from the Veins. The *remote Cauſes*, are the immoderate and irregular working of young Horſes, cold Rains in the beginning of Winter, eating of Oats imported by Sea, which being ſpungy, imbibe the ſaline Spirits of the Sea.

As for the *Cure*; the Horſe muſt be fed with *Bran* inſtead of *Oats*. Give him a *cooling Glyſter*, next day let him Blood, the day after inject another *Glyſter*, and next day after that bleed him again, not exceeding the quantity of *two pounds* of Blood at a time. This done, boil *two quarts* of *Water*, and put it into a *pail-full* of *common Water*, with *a large handful* of *Oriental Bole*, beaten to *pouder*. Mix all well, and let the Horſe drink it lukewarm for his *ordinary drink*, Morning and Evening; giving him full liberty to drink, and quench his Thirſt, which in this Diſeaſe is exceſſive; for the the more he Drinks, he will be the ſooner cur'd.

A Staling of Blood.

Sometimes a Horſe, thro' immoderate exerciſe in the Heat of Summer, piſſes pure Blood. If a Vein or Veſſel be broken, it is mortal. If it proceeds only from the heat of the *Kidneys*, 'tis eaſily cur'd; for in that caſe all the Urine is not Blood, for a ſmall quantity of Blood will give a red Tincture to a large quantity of Urine. For the Cure, Bleed the Horſe; and give him every Morning, for ſix or ſeven days, *three pints* of the *Infuſion* of *Crocus Metallorum* in *white Wine*; (which will both cleanſe the Bladder, and heal the part affected) keeping him Bridled four hours before, and after taking it. If this Diſeaſe is accompanied with a heat and beating in the Flanks, give him a *cooling Glyſter* in the Evening; Bleed him a ſecond time; and diſſolve *two ounces* of *Sal Polychreſt* in the *three pints* of *Emetick Wine*, preſcribed to be given every Morning. If the *Sal Polychreſt* ſpoils his eating, or if the *Emetick Wine* does not compaſs the Cure; give the following Medicine, the vertues of which I have experienced.

Take

Take two ounces of the best Venice Treacle, or for want of that, of Diatessaron; common Hony, and fine Sugar, of each four ounces. Incorporate 'em in a Mortar; then add Annisseed, Coriander seed and Liquorice, of each two ounces in fine pouder. Mix 'em well, and give it dissolv'd in a *quart* of *Claret*; keeping him Bridled three hours, before and after; and let him Blood next day. The next day after that, inject the following *Glyster.* Boil *five pints* of *Whey* made of *Cow's Milk*, with *two ounces* of the *Scoriæ* of *Liver of Antimony*, in fine *pouder:* As soon as it begins to rise in great bubbles, remove it from the Fire; and adding *four ounces* of *Oil Olive*, inject it lukewarm. If the Disease continues, as I believe it will not, you must repeat the whole course.

A Remedy against Pissing of Blood.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Stavers and Giddiness.

IN the *Stavers* or *Staggers*; a Horse loses the use of his Senses; he reels and staggers, as if he were Drunk, beats his Head against the Walls and Manger with extream Violence, and lies down and rises with greater fury than in the *Colick.* The *Causes* of this Distemper, are hard riding or labour in hot Weather, noisome smells in the Stable, long Races, with frequent wheeling about, and quick turns; excessive Eating, and above all a redundancy of hot and sharp Humors in the Stomach.

The Stavers.

For the Cure: Bleed him in the Flanks and Plate-Veins of the Thighs; then give him a *Glyster* of *two quarts* of *Emetick Wine*, luke-warm, with a

quarter of a pound of the *Ointment Populeum*; after which, ſuffer him to repoſe a while. About an hour or two after that *Glyſter* is voided, inject the following. *Boil two ounces of the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony, in fine pouder, in five pints of Beer.* After five or ſix waums, remove it from the Fire, and adding *a quarter of a pound of Unguentum Roſatum*, inject it luke-warm. Repeat this *Glyſter* frequently; and rub his legs ſtrongly with a wiſp of Straw moiſten'd in warm Water, to make a *Revulſion*; feed him with *Bran* or *white Bread*; and walk him from time to time, in a temperate place.

If the Diſeaſe ſtill continues, notwithſtanding the uſe of theſe *Medicines:* Give him *an ounce* of *Venice Treacle*, or *Orvietan*, diſſolv'd in a *quart* of ſome *Cordial Waters:* And immediately after inject this *Glyſter* luke-warm. *Take of Sal Polychreſt and Venice Treacle, of each two ounces:* diſſolve 'em in *two quarts* of a *Decoction* of the *Softening Herbs*, with *a quarter of a pound of Oil of Rue.* Make a *Glyſter.*

A Giddineſs. Sometimes a Horſe is ſiez'd with ſuch a *Giddineſs*, that he falls down when he is taken out of the Stable, but is brisk, and eats heartily, when he remains in the Stable; by which ſign 'tis diſtinguiſh'd from the *Stavers.* It owes its riſe to a redundancy of Blood, occaſion'd by the Horſes being kept long in the Stable without Airing. 'Tis eaſily cur'd by a *Glyſter* and *Blooding*; repeated after two days. Moderate Exerciſe, and leſs Food, will prevent it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of Strains or Wrenches in the Shoulders or Hips.

HOrſes are ſo frequently liable to *ſtrains* in the *Shoulders* or *Hips*, by overſtraining the Ligaments that faſten the Bones; that every Farrier is ſufficiently acquainted with them, and the ways of diſcovering where the lameneſs is. I ſhall therefore only preſent you with two or three Receipts, that are noted for their virtue, in all *Shoulder-Splaits*, *Sprains*, *Pricks*, *Wrenches*, &c.

An Ointment for ſtrains in the Shoulders.

Take new Wax, Roſin, Pitch, and common Turpentine, of each a pound; Oil Olive two pounds; greaſe of Capons, Badgers, Horſes, and Mules, and the marrow of a Stag, of each five ounces; Oils of Turpentine, Caſtor, Worms, Chamomil, St. John's-wort, Linſeed, and of Foxes, of each four ounces; Oil of Gabian, or, if that cannot be had, *Oil of Peter, two ounces.* Put the *Oil Olive* in a Baſon over a clear Fire, with the *Wax*, *Roſin* and *Pitch*, beaten together; ſtir 'em over the Flame till they be diſſolv'd; then add the *fatts* and *Stag's-marrow*, and afterwards the *Turpentine*, incorporating all over a very gentle Fire. In the laſt place pour in the *Oils*, ſtirring the whole mixture half a quarter of an hour; after which remove it from the Fire, and continue to ſtir, till it be cold. Heat the part affected by rubbing it with a wiſp of Straw, or with your hand; then chafe it with the *Ointment*, as hot as the Horſe can bear it; holding a Fireſhovel red hot near the part; to make the *Ointment* penetrate. Repeat the ſame application once every two days.

The following *Red Hony Charge*, is ſo generally uſeful, not only for ſtrains or Wrenches; but for ripening ſwellings, relieving decay'd and ſwell'd Legs, benefiting tyr'd and jaded Horſes, *&c.* that I do not know any Remedy ſo Univerſal. The Compoſition is as follows.

The Red Hony Charge.

Take of Sheep's ſewet, melted, a pound and a half; the Greaſe of a Capon, Hog, or Horſe, a pound; the Oil drawn from the bones of an Ox or Sheep, or, if neither of theſe can be had, Linſeed Oil, or Oil Olive, half a pound; Claret of a thick body, and deep colour, two quarts; Black Pitch and Burgundy Pitch, of each a pound; Oil of Bay, four ounces; common Turpentine, a pound; Cinnabar in pouder, four ounces; common Hony, a pound and a half; pouder of Cumminſeed, four ounces; good Brandy, half a pint; fine Oriental Bole in pouder, three pounds; a ſufficient quantity of Wheat Flower, to thicken the whole mixture. Put into a *Kettle* the *Sewet*, *Greaſe*, *the Oil of Sheep's-bones*, and the *Claret*. Boil 'em over a gentle Fire at firſt, increaſing the heat by degrees, and ſtirring them from time to time, till part of the *Wine* be conſum'd, that is about two hours; then put in both the ſorts of *Pitch*, and after they are diſſolv'd, the *Oil of Bay*. Remove the Veſſel from the Fire, and put in the *Turpentine* and *Cinnabar*, mixing them with the reſt about a quarter of an hour. After the Compoſition is half cold, add the *Hony*, and afterwards the *Cummin-ſeed*, continuing to ſtir as before: Then add the *Bole* in *pouder*. When the whole is almoſt cold, add the *Brandy*, ſtirring till it be perfectly mix'd. Then thicken it with *Wheat Flower*, almoſt to the conſiſtence of an *Ointment*, and continue ſtirring till it be cold. If this *Charge* be well prepar'd, it will keep a Year or two. During the heat of Summer, you may apply it cold; but in cold Weather you muſt

muſt melt it. When you deſign to ripen a ſwelling, add to it *Turpentine* and *Pitch*, and apply it as hot as the Horſe can endure it; but upon a diſcuſſive indication that is not proper to be done. When you have occaſion to put it into a Horſe's Foot, you muſt apply it boiling hot.

The following Ointment is an eaſy and approv'd Remedy, for wither'd Shoulders, or for Strains or Wrenches in the Shoulders or Hips. *Take a pint of Spirit of Wine: Put it into a Cucurbit, or ſtrong glaſs Viol, ſo that two thirds of it remain empty; add half a pound of Caſtle Soap ſlic'd ſmall, and ſtopping the glaſs very cloſe, ſet it on hot Aſhes, till the Soap be wholly melted. Let it be quite cold before you unſtop the Cucurbit or Bottle.* Thus you have an *Ointment* that will keep very long; for tho' it gathers a cruſt on the top, it remains very good underneath. 'Tis to be applied to the part affected every day, for ſeven or eight days; the part being firſt heated by rubbing with a wiſp of Straw.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Broken, Stiff, Tir'd, Decay'd, Bruis'd, or Swell'd Legs.

Broken-Legs.

THough the Cure of a broken Leg or Thigh-bone in a Horſe, is very difficult, by reaſon of the inconvenient Situation of the parts; yet it is not impoſſible: For I have ſeen ſuch Fractures cur'd, both in a Mule and in a Horſe, without any other inconveniency, but that of having the ſhape of the Leg ſpoil'd by the Callus that reunites the Bones, and halting a little. Theſe Cures were perform'd after the common method of *Splents* and *Bandages*, as in *Men*; the

Wound being dreſs'd every day, and the Mule and Horſe turn'd looſe into a Meadow to ſhift for themſelves: For a Horſe can reſt on three Legs, without uſing the broken one: Tho' I think it very probable, that the Cure will ſucceed better, if the Horſe were hung in a Stable. Tho' the poſſibility of curing *Fractures* is queſtion'd by ignorant Farriers; yet the above mention'd inſtances, and the Authority of *Philippo Sacco Datagliacozzo*, and *Signior Carlo Ruini*, who aſſert it, are ſufficient Vouchers for it.

Stiff, Decay'd Legs.

The ſigns of Stiff, Decay'd, or Bruis'd Legs, are deſcrib'd in the ſecond Part. For Cure; *the Red Hony Charge* is very proper to ſtrengthen the Legs; as alſo what follows.

A Remedy to ſtrengthen the Legs.

Take of Spirit of Wine, a quart; Oil of Nuts, half a pint; Butter, half a pound. Mix them in a glaz'd Earthen Pot, cover'd with a leſſer Pot, exactly fitted to it. Lute the Junctures carefully with Clay, mix'd with Horſe's Dung or Hair; and after the Cement is dried, ſet the Pot on a very gentle Fire, and keep the Ingredients boiling very ſoftly, for eight or ten hours. Then take off the Pot, and ſet it to cool. With this *Compoſition* you are to chafe the *Maſter Sinew*, having firſt rub'd it with your hand, till it grows hot. Repeat the Compoſition every day. Or,

Oil of Earth-Worms, and its compound Ointment.

Take a *ſufficient quantity* of *Worms*, waſh 'em, and leave 'em in clean Water ſix hours, that they may caſt forth their filth; then put 'em in an *Earthen Pot*, with ſo much *Oil Olive*, as may riſe the breadth of two Fingers above them, the Pot remaining half empty. Cover the *Pot*, and lute the *Junctures* with Clay, mixt with Hair or Saddle ſtuffings; then bury it in warm Horſe Dung; and

and after it has ſtood there three Days and three Nights, take it out; and as ſoon as 'tis cold uncover it, taking care to avoid the noiſome ſmell, and ſtrain out the *Oil*; with which you are to anoint the Horſe's Legs every day, for the ſpace of twelve Days, eſpecially the *Sinews*, having firſt rubb'd them into a Heat, with your hand; and after the Inunction, foment each Leg with *a quarter of a pint of Brandy*, to make the *Oil* ſink in. If the *Oil* does not operate ſufficiently, add to *a pound of it, the Oils of Caſtor, Foxes, Chamomil* and *Lillies, of each an ounce and an half*; *Ointment of Marſh-mallows and Populeum, of each two ounces.* Mix the whole Compoſition over the Fire, and with *Bees-Wax*, make an *Ointment*; of which, the bigneſs of a Wallnut for each Leg, is to be us'd every day in the ſame manner as the *Oil.* The *Oil* does not make the Hair fall; but the Ointment does, though it will grow again without leaving any mark.

A Remedy to ſtrengthen the Sinews of the Legs.

To comfort and ſtrengthen the Sinews; Take a *Gooſe* moderately Fat; make her ready for the Spit; ſtuff her Belly with the *leaves* of *Mallows*, *Sage*, *Roſemary*, *Thyme*, *Hyſſop*, *Lavender*, *Mugwort*, and other convenient Herbs, with a large quantity of *green Juniper-berries* beaten. Then ſow up the Skin, and ſet her into an *Oven* to bake in a *glaz'd earthen Pan*, that you may not loſe the *fat* or *greaſe*: With which you muſt anoint the *Legs* of a *Tyr'd Horſe*, every Evening (for ſeven or eight days,) and next Morning chafe 'em with *Brandy* above the *Greaſe.*

Above all, in Summer, let the Tyr'd Horſe ſtand two whole hours every day up to the Hams in a ſtream of Water; and in the *Month* of *May*, make him lie abroad in the Dew, or elſe lead him out to a Mea-

a Meadow every Morning, and bath and rub his Legs with the Dew gather'd with a *Sponge*.

To ſtrengthen the Sinews, and reſolve hard knots, you may apply Spirit of Wine, with a little Oil of Wax.

To Cure ſwell'd Gourdy Legs.

If a ſwelling upon the Legs be occaſion'd by a ſlight accident; you may take it away, by applying once every day, *cold Lees of Wine*, mixt with a *fourth part* of *Vinegar*. If that does not anſwer; *Take a Gallon of Lees of red Wine*; boil 'em ſoftly over a clear Fire, ſtirring them perpetually till they begin to thicken; then add *fine Wheat Flower and Hony, of each two pounds*; *Black Soap, a pound.* Boil and ſtir, till the whole is reduc'd to the Conſiſtence of a *Charge*; to be applied every day.

A Remedy for a hard ſwelling.

For a hard Tumour upon the Legs, of long ſtanding: *Take of the Horſes own Urine (or, if that cannot be had, of Cow's Urine, which you may eaſily have, by rouſing them up in a Morning) a pint*; *flower of Brimſtone, half an ounce*; *Allum, a dram.* Boil it away to *half a pint*; with which you muſt chafe the ſwelling hard every Morning and Evening, and wrap about the part an old rag, dip'd in the ſame.

A Bath to reſolve hard tumours.

To reſolve a *ſwelling* in the *Thigh* or *Leg: Take, in the Spring, or in the time of Advent, before* Chriſtmaſs, *ten pounds of green Mallow Roots*, (at other times, *take ſix pounds of the dry Roots.*) Beat them to a *Maſh*, and boil them gently with *ten quarts of Water* in a *Kettle* for two hours; then pour in as much hot Water, as was boil'd away, adding *three handfuls of Sage-leaves*, and continue to boil an hour and an half, or two hours longer. Then take off the *Kettle*, and add *two pounds of Hony, and one pound of black Soap*, incorporating all together:

Let

Let it cool till you can e'en endure to thruſt the end of your Finger into it; then add *a quart of ſtrong Brandy*. Foment the ſwelling with this *Bath*, every day, and afterwards chafe it with *a handful* of the *Dregs* of it; then walk the Horſe half an hour. If by the heat and hardneſs of the part, you perceive that it tends to *Suppuration*; omit the *Bath*, and apply *Baſilicum*.

In like manner you may reſolve ſwellings with *half a pint of Brandy*, *a pound of black Soap*, *and as much Hony*, mix'd cold; and rub'd upon the part every day.

To Cure a hard ſwelling occaſion'd by a Blow.

For a *hard ſwelling* occaſion'd by a *blow*: Beat the *whites of ſix Eggs*, with a large piece of *Allum*, for half a quarter of an hour, till they be reduc'd to a *thick froth*. Then add a glaſs of *true Spirit of Wine* (*Brandy* being improper in this caſe.) Shake the *froth* and *Spirit*, till they incorporate; then mix the whole with *half a pound of Hony*, and Charge the Horſe's Legs three or four times, ſcouring off the *Charge* with *Water*, in which Diſhes have been waſh'd. If there be occaſion, repeat the *Charge*; for 'tis an experienced Remedy, both for the fore and hinder Legs.

To prevent the ſwelling of the Legs after a Journey.

To prevent the ſwelling of the Legs that often enſues upon a long galloping, or a great Journey; as ſoon as the Horſe is put into the Stable, *Charge* the parts with *Cow's Dung*, mix'd with *Vinegar*; which will alſo cure, as well as prevent.

A Remolade for a Blow.

The following *ſimple Charge* is of very good uſe, not only for Blows and ſtroaks with another Horſe's Foot, and ſwellings of the fore and hinder Legs; but for all ſorts of ſwellings, bruiſes, and hurts in any part of the Body. 'Tis this. *Mix a pound of Wheat flower with white Wine, to the conſiſtence*

conſiſtence of Gruel, and boil it over a gentle fire, ſtirring without intermiſſion, till the whole be united. Then *melt a pound of Burgundy Pitch, in a Skillet, adding, a pound and a half of Hony, and a pound of common Turpentine*, to be mix'd with the *Gruel*, moderately *hot*. After you have remov'd the Veſſel from the Fire, add *two pounds of Oriental Bole in pouder*; and make a *Charge* to be applied hot, and repeated till the ſwelling be aſſwag'd.

An eaſy Remedy for Blows.

To avoid the inconveniency of being deſtitute of a Remedy, for want of ſome of the preſcrib'd *Ingredients*; 'twill not be improper to ſubjoin another eaſy *Receipt* for *ſwellings* in the *Legs*, occaſion'd by *Blows, viz. Take ſtrong Brandy*, chafe the part with it hard, and then *Charge* the whole Leg with *common Hony*. Renew the application once every day, for ſix or ſeven days. Then waſh your Horſe in a *River* or *Pond*, twice every day.

Another eaſy and effectual Remedy, is, *Half a pint of good Vinegar, mix'd with half a pound of Tallow, and an ounce of the Flowers of Brimſtone:* Or, a *mixture* of *common Bole, Hony, and Water*; for ſmall Tumours.

For old ſwellings, following an ill-cur'd Sinew-Sprain.

Sometimes upon an ill-cur'd *Sinew-ſprain*, tho' the Lameneſs ceaſes, yet the undiſſolv'd humours, gather into very hard ſwellings: In which caſe; *Take of Linſeed-flower, and Bean-flower, of each a large pint; of the ſtrongeſt Brandy, a pint and a half.* Boil 'em over a ſmall Fire to the conſiſtence of *Gruel*, ſtirring without intermiſſion. Then add *a pound of Hony*. Boil and ſtir, till the whole be incorporated. After which remove it from the Fire, and mix it with *half a pound of Mule's, or Horſe's Greaſe*. Charge the part with this compoſition, having firſt ſhav'd it, and chafed it very hard with cold *Spirit of Wine*. After the Charging

Charging, cover it with *Flax*, wrapping about it a piece of Linnen Cloth to be ſew'd on, not ty'd, for ſewing is a more equal and painleſs Bandage. After two days, Take off the dreſſing, and bath the part with *Spirit of Wine.* After which, repeat the Application every day; and in five or ſix times dreſſing, the ſwelling may be aſſwag'd with little Charge or Trouble.

For hard ſwellings, incurable by the common Remedies.

If the ſwelling is ſo inveterate and hard, that 'twill not yield to any application (as it often happens;) you muſt *give the Fire* along the ſwelling, beginning at the Top, and drawing the lines or ſtrokes downwards, at the diſtance of half a Finger's breadth from one another; or croſs ways, if you pleaſe; taking care not to pierce the Skin, and above all, to draw a line on each ſide of the Leg, between the Sinew and the Bone, deſcending as far as the *Paſtern.* If the ſtroaks be only made of a Cherry colour, there will be no occaſion for *Plaiſters:* But only to waſh the ſear'd parts with *Brandy* and *Hony*, till the Scab falls off and to bath the Sores with *Spirit of Wine.* If there be any over-growing Fleſh, conſume it with *Allum*; or, if that fail, with pouder of *Copperas.* If you *give the Fire* croſs-ways, round the hinder Leg, let the lines meet on the midſt of the back Sinew; but 'tis needleſs to draw the ſtrokes over the Bone in the fore part of the Leg. The *Fire* muſt be given in the wane of the Moon; and the Horſe muſt reſt 27 days, *i. e.* nine for the Augmentation, nine for the ſettled ſtate, and nine for the abatement enſuing upon the operation.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Of Malenders, Selenders, Splents, Wind-Galls, Farcy-Knots, and other ſwellings.

Malenders. THE *Malenders* are certain chops on the bending of the Knee, which void a red ſharp biting Water. They are painful, and make the Horſe halt, or at leaſt go ſtiff at his firſt going out of the Stable. They are eaſily known by the ſtaring briſtled Hairs about them, and are accompanied with a ſort of Scab.

Selenders. The *Selenders* are chops of the ſame nature, on the bending of the Hough. They are more unfrequent than *Malenders*; and conſequently more dangerous, as denoting a greater quantity of humors in the Hough.

For Cure of both. 'Tis improper to dry up the Sore. We muſt content our ſelves with qualifying the ſharpneſs of the acid humour; by ſcouring off the Corruption ſticking on the Hair or Skin, with *Black-Soap* (which is an *Alkali*) and rubbing the *Malenders* with it; and then waſhing the part with *Urine*, or *good Lye*, or *Oil of Nuts* ſhaken with *Water*. But the ſureſt method of Cure, is; to anoint the Sores once a day, with a *mixture* of *equal parts of Linſeed Oil and Brandy*, ſhak'd till it grows white. Which is an excellent Medicine, and does at once both dry and allay the ſharpneſs. If the *Selenders* cauſe a hard ſwelling, that hinders the motion of the Hough, you may *give the Fire* with good ſucceſs; for the ſituation of the part, is inconvenient for the application of Remedies.

A *Splent*

A *Splent* is a callous, hard, and insensible swelling on the *Shank-bone*; which spoils the shape of the Leg, when it grows big. The ordinary cause of it, is a hurt on the *Shank-bone*, that injures its surrounding Skin or *Periosteum*; so that the humours repairing thither, gather into a swelling. Sometimes 'tis occasion'd by over-riding, or over-working, when the Horse is young, and his Bones tender; for the straining of the Bone makes it subject to Defluxions of humours, which slipping in between the Bone and its Membrane, rise gradually into a hard lump, that draws its nourishment from the Bone, which I have seen full of holes like a Sieve in that part. Now, to protect the weak Bone, nature makes a *Callus*; which we call a *Splent*. If the *Splent* be increased by Travelling, and ascend to the Knee; it makes the Horse halt; and is more difficult to cure. In young Horses a *Splent* may be easily cur'd; but in old ones, it can hardly be remov'd. If it be only the natural misshaping of the Bone; 'tis not to be cur'd, as being a blemish rather than a Disease. *Splents.*

For the cure of *Splents*, Violent *Caustick*s, which often scale the Bone, and dry up the Sinew, are very pernicious; for tho' they take away the *Splent*, they weaken the Leg extreamly. The better way is to shave off the Hair, and beat or rub the swelling with the handle of a Shoeing Hammer, till it be soften'd; then chafe the *Splent* with the *juice* that sweats out of both ends of three or four *Hazel-sticks*, burnt while the full *Sap* is in them, applying it as hot as you can without burning: After which, rub or bruise the swelling with one of the sticks; and continue to apply the hot *juice*, and rub till it grows soft; then apply a Linnen Cloth, five or six times doubled, and dip'd in the hot *Hazel-juice*, suffering it *A Remedy for the Splent.*

it to remain four and twenty hours. And at the end of nine days, the *Splent* will be diſſolv'd, provided you keep your Horſe conſtantly in the Stable, and the Hair will grow again. If the *Splent* is only leſſen'd, and not quite remov'd; repeat the operation a Month after.

The following Ointment, is an effectual Remedy for ſoften'd *Splents*, *Wind-galls*, and (even the greateſt) *Farcy-Knots*.

Ointment of Beetles for Wind-Galls and Cords.

In *May*, and ſometimes in *April*, between ten a Clock in the Morning, and two in the Afternoon, you may find in Till'd or Corn-fields, in low and ſhady places, an *Oily Beetle*, or *Black May-Worm*, call'd in Latin, *Maii Avicula*, or *Scarabæus Unctuoſus*; which has the reſemblance of a Head, at the end of its true Head, and a ſort of Wings faſten'd to its Body, like two Targets, and covering all the forepart of the Shoulders, tho' it does not fly. Its back is Scaly, and its Tail very fat, and as it were welted. It has ſix feet, and creeps very ſlowly. There are ſome of 'em very long, thick, and fat; and the ſmalleſt are about an Inch long. 'Tis cold to the Touch, and if plac'd upon ones hand commonly voids a very ſtinking Oil. *Take* 300 *of theſe* Beetles; *ſtamp 'em with a pound of Oil of Bay.* After it has ſtood three Months, melt it, and ſtrain it thro' a linnen Cloth; throwing away the groſs ſubſtance, and preſerving the reſt; as a Sovereign *Ointment* for the uſes abovemention'd. It produces the Effect of a *Retoire*, by drawing out the Corruption, and raiſing Bliſters full of *Red-Water*, which are ſucceeded by Scabs that dry of themſelves. After which, the Hair grows again. 'Tis applied cold; the Hair being firſt ſhav'd off very cloſe; and a hot bar of Iron being held near the part, while it is applied. It totally diſſipates a *Windgall*, in the ſpace of nine days; only the ſwelling

ſwelling it occaſions, muſt be aſſwag'd by applying *Brandy*. *Swellings*, ſucceeding to old *Sinew-Sprains*, if they are not very hard, will be reſolv'd by one or two applications of this *Ointment*; but the operation of the firſt muſt be over, before you attempt a ſecond. This *Ointment* performs its cure, in the ſpace of nine days.

A leſs Cauſtick Ointment for Splents, &c.

For *Splents* ſoften'd after the uſual manner, and Prick'd; the following Ointment, apply'd to the thickneſs of a *French* Penny, with a red hot Fire-Shovel held over it to make it ſink in; will in 12 or 15 days, perform the Cure, without making the Hair fall off; or hurting the Sinew. About the end of *April*, and in *May*, you'l find exactly about the foot of the Stalk of the *Bulbous Crowfoot*, having a root not unlike a *Piſtol-bullet*, with which ſome meadows are almoſt wholly cover'd; you'l find there a *little black longiſh Inſect*, not bigger than a ſmall Bean, without Wings, but furniſh'd with Legs, and ſo hard that you can hardly bruiſe it between your Fingers: Mix 300 or 400 of theſe with *old Hogs greaſe* in a Pot; then cover the Pot very cloſe, till they are quite Dead, and ſtamp 'em with the greaſe to an *Ointment*, which will be more effectual the longer 'tis kept. This *Ointment* draws forth a red Water, which after nine days, turns to a *Scurf* or *Scab*, which will afterwards fall off.

A Pultis to be applied, before a Retoire.

Before you apply either of theſe two Ointments, or any *Retoires* to a hard ſwelling; you muſt take care to ſoften it, by applying the following Pultis. *Take Roots of Lillies, and Marſhmallows, of each, two ounces; leaves of Mallows and Violets, of each two handfuls; Dill, Wild-Marjoram, and Wild-Penny-Royal*, or *Corn-mint, of each a handful.* Boil the *Roots* about an hour in a *ſufficient quantity*

of *Water*, mixt with about *three parts of Oil*. Then add the *Herbs*, and after they are well boil'd, ſtamp all together to a *Maſh*, and apply it warm to the part you intend to ſoften, the Hair being ſhav'd off.

Of Wind-galls. *Wind-galls* are ſoft, yielding and painleſs Tumours, much about the bigneſs of a ſmall Nut, caus'd by thin and ſerous humors; and ſeated on either ſide of the *Fetlock* joint, on the Skin, between the *Sinew* and the *Bone*. For the Cure: The abovemention'd *Ointment of Beetles* is preferable to all other Remedies; for whereas other Remedies only put away the ſwelling for a time; this will wholly remove it, by extirpating the Cauſe. 'Tis true this *Ointment* occaſions a large ſwelling, eſpecially if applied in too large a quantity; but that Symptom, together with the heat and pain that attends it, is eaſily remov'd by waſhing the part with *warm Wine*, mix'd with a little *Batter*.

A general Plaiſter for all Swellings. For all cold ſwellings (whether in Horſes or Men) the following Plaiſter is of general uſe; eſpecially for *Water Farcys*, and ſwellings on the *Paſtern-joint*, which lies at a great diſtance from the Center of natural heat. *Take green Wall-nuts, ſo ſmall, that when they are cut, they are equally ſoft:* Beat 'em to a *maſh* in a *marble Mortar*, and paſs 'em thro' a Sieve with the bottom turn'd up, beating that which remains, till the whole paſſes thro' the *Sieve*. *Put two pound of this Pulp into a glaz'd Earthen Pot, with a pound of Salt well dry'd, and a pound and a half of common Turpentine.* Set the *mixture* in a Cellar, to ferment fifteen days; then evaporate the *moiſture* over a gentle Fire, ſtirring all the while, till it be reduc'd to the conſiſtence of a *Plaiſter*, which cannot be done without ſome difficulty; and preſerve it for uſe, in a Pot cloſe cover'd.

When

When the *Paſtern-joint* ſwells after Travelling, chafe it every Morning and Evening, with a *mixture* of *two parts of Brandy, and one of Oil of Nuts*, well ſhaken together. If the ſwelling be large, apply the *red Hony Charge*, with a convenient *Bath*. If it ſtill continues, apply the Remedy compos'd of *Whites of Eggs, Spirit of Wine, and Hony*; preſcrib'd for *Blows*, Chap. XIII. If the ſwelling be hard, apply a *Pultis of Rue*, boil'd in *thick Wine*. If the Joints are gourded for want of exerciſe; bath 'em very hard with a *Lye* made of *two parts of* Aſhes of Vine-twigs, *and one third of Aſhes of Tartar*. Sometimes there ariſes a ſwelling on the Bone of the *Paſtern-joint*, a little towards one ſide, about half the bigneſs of a Pigeon's Egg; which grows bigger, if neglected, but is not very hard, nor does it make the Horſe halt. In this caſe 'tis proper to apply a *Reſolving Plaiſter* of *Gum Ammoniack, diſſolv'd in Vinegar*, and *boil'd* to a due conſiſtency.

A Remedy for Swell'd and Gourded Paſtern-joints.

CHAP. XV.

Of an Attaint *or* Over-reach.

AN *Attaint*, proceeds either from a Blow with another Horſe's Foot, that takes off the piece above the Cronet, or from an *Over-reach*, in froſty weather, when a Horſe being rough-ſhod, or having Shooes with long Caulks, ſtrikes his hinder Feet againſt his fore Leg. 'Tis known by the Wound, the efflux of Blood, and the halting of the Horſe.

For the Cure: Waſh away the filth with *Vinegar* and *Salt*, and cut off what pieces of looſe fleſh there are. Then apply, and tye faſt to the part, a

hot Egg, *boil'd hard*, cut through the middle, and ſprinkled with *Pepper*. If the Horſe be not Cur'd, repeat the application the next day. In an *Over-reach*, in froſty weather, you muſt immediately waſh the *Wound with warm Vinegar*, then fill it with *Pepper*, and lay over it a *Reſtringent Charge*, of *Chimney-ſoot*, *Vinegar*, and *Whites of Eggs*; or (which is better) of *Lime temper'd with Water*; repeating the ſame the next day. For an *Over-reach* by the Caulk of Shooes, fill the hole with *Gunpouder*, beaten and temper'd with *Spittle*; then ſet fire to it; and repeat the ſame the next day, taking care to keep the Foot and Wound from moiſture; and waſhing the Sore from time to time with *Brandy*. If theſe do not ſucceed, fill the hole with Cotton, dip'd in *Emplaſtrum Divinum*, melted with *Oil of Roſes* in a Spoon; laying a *Plaiſter* of the ſame over it; and dreſſing it after this manner every day.

If notwithſtanding the uſe of theſe Remedies, the Horſe continues to halt, and the Hole is deep, with the part above the *Attaint* ſwoln, the Hoof ſhrunk, and the Foot contracted beneath; you muſt try with your Probe, if the hole reaches to the tendon; and if it does, you muſt *give the Fire*. If a neglected *Attaint* comes to reach the Hoof, after one or two Applications of the *Hony Charge*, you muſt proceed to *give the Fire*, and dreſs it as a *Quitter-bone*. 'Tis to be obſerv'd that the Sore muſt be always cover'd with Remedies, for 'twill never heal, ſo long as the Horſe licks it. If the bottom of the hole be foul, though it does not reach the *Griſtle*, you muſt waſh it often with *warm Wine*, and fill the hole with *Schmit's Ointment*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Scratches.

TO Cure the *Scratches* in Horſes, which reſemble the *Corns* in Mens Feet; you muſt rub the ſwollen Leg daily with the *Duke's Ointment*; and afterwards bring forth the corruption, or rotten bit of Fleſh, with the following *Remedy.*

Take freſh Butter, and Oil Olive, of each four ounces; beat 'em with half a pint of common Water, and thicken 'em with two ounces of Linſeed flower. Then boil, as if you were going to make *Gruel*, adding (a little before you take the Skellet from the Fire) *two ounces of Pigeon's Dung in pouder*; and charge the Sore warm, having firſt clip'd off the Hair with Sciſſars. If that does not anſwer expectation,

Take leaves of Colts foot, long Sorrel and Mallows, of each a handful; bake 'em under the Embers, then beat and incorporate 'em with ſalt Butter. And apply it hot. If this likewiſe fail,

Take four Lilly Roots, *bak'd under the Aſhes*; *beat 'em up with three ounces of Hen's greaſe*; *two ounces of Linſeed Oil*; *the Yelks of two hard Eggs.* Incorporate all together in a Mortar, applying ſome of it to the *Scratches* with *Flax*, and laying a *cover* over it.

If the Shew of the Leg be ſwollen, keep it always *charg'd*; and as ſoon as the corrupt fleſh is come forth, waſh the ſwollen Leg with *warm Wine and Butter*, and fill the hole with a *Tent of fine Flax*, moiſten'd with *Baſilicum*, to ripen the reſt of the rotten fleſh; or with *Ægyptiacum*, if the fleſh be foul and frothy.

When the fleſh appears fair and clean, apply the *juice of greater Celandine*, binding on *Charcoal-duſt*, or *ſears'd Aſhes*, or *burnt Copperas*, which dries moſt powerfully. Some uſe only to waſh the Sore with *Brandy* or *Urine*; and ſtrew it with *burnt Oyſter-ſhells, or old Boat-Ropes*, dry'd and beaten to pouder.

If the Wound, occaſion'd by the coming forth of the rotten fleſh, be very large, cleanſe it with the *Mundificative of Smallage*; and then dry it with the *Ointment made of Hony, Verdigreaſe, Spirit of Wine, and Flower.*

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Ring-bone.

THE *Ring-bone* is a hard callous Swelling, growing on one of the Tendons, between the *Cronet* and *Paſtern-joint*; and ſticking very faſt to the *Paſtern.* When you handle it, the Horſe does not complain much. When 'tis near the *Cronet*, its preſſing bulk intercepting the nouriſhment, makes the Foot ſhrink, and the Hoof wither; and at laſt makes the Horſe lame; ſo that its deſcending lower upon the *Cronet*, is a ſign of danger. Though 'tis ſometimes Hereditary; the uſual cauſe is a ſtrain, occaſion'd by Curvetting, bounding Turns, and Races. Sometimes indeed backing a young Horſe, before his Joints are well knit, will give riſe to it. If it be not taken care of betimes, it cauſes incurable Lameneſs. Sometimes it appears at firſt, no bigger than a Bean; but afterwards riſes to half the bigneſs of a ſmall Apple, appearing on both ſides the *Paſtern*, with a little riſing between them.

The

The method of *Cure* is as follows. Take out the Sole; clip off the Hair very close; and apply to the *Ringbone*, *Oil of Bay*, with *Flax*, a *Cover*, and *Bandage*. Two days after, separate the Scurfs rais'd by the *Oil*, and renew the Application with the same *Flax*. When you take out the Sole, you must cleave the *Frush*; and when the dressing is fitted to the Sole with *Splents*, you must thrust *Rowlers* into the *cleft* to keep it open, and one *Bandage* will serve both for the *Ringbone* and *Frush*.

When *Ringbones* are encreas'd to any considerable bigness, the most usual and certain Remedy is *Fire*. for which end you must first take out the Sole; and six days after, when you remove the second Dressing, make Incisions with your *Fleam*, beginning above, and reaching downwards, about a Finger's breadth distance from each other; cutting the Skin to the *Callus*, that causes the *Ringbone*, thro' the whole extent of the swelling, but without hurting the *Cronet*. Since these incisions are usually attended with a great Flux of Blood, apply *hot Turpentine* with *Flax* and a *Bandage*, letting it remain untouch'd 48 hours; after which remove the Dressing; and with a red hot, but not blazing Knife, burn the whole *Callus*, very dexterously, without pressing too hard upon the part; taking care to penetrate the whole Tumour thro' the incision, for if any part of its substance be left, your labour is lost. After that, apply a *mixture* of *Turpentine*, *Tar and Hony*, or an *Ointment made of Hog's-Lard* and *Verdigrease*, laying *Flax* over it, and wrapping it about with a cloth, till the Scabs fall off. Then dress the Sores with *Schmit*'s Ointment, or *Ægyptiacum*, or the Ointment *Apostolorum*, till the matter gives over running; after which, the Farriers usually wash the Sores with the second Water, and then apply drying pouders. In the mean time the Sores ought always to be kept cover'd, both to prevent the growth of

proud fleſh, and to hinder the Horſe from teaching it with his Teeth. Beſides, the *Bandage* muſt not be tied too hard, for fear of cauſing an exceſſive Tumour. The beſt way is to renew the dreſſing every day, or at leaſt every two days.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Vices of the Feet and Hoofs; particularly of Surbated Feet: And of Pricks made with Stubbs or Nails in Shoeing, or in the Streets.

THE Hoofs of ſome Horſes are ſo hard and brittle, that they are apt to break near the holes made by the Nails of their Shoes; in which caſe the beſt way, is, to ſhoe ſuch Horſes after the full Moon, and never during the encreaſe; and then to anoint their Feet every day with the following Ointment; taking care that the foot be dry, and clean'd from duſt and durt.

An Ointment for the Hoof.

Take freſh Butter, and Sheep's Suet, melted, and freed from its membranes, of each a pound; white Wax cut into ſmall pieces, and common Turpentine, of each four ounces; Oil Olive, ſix ounces. Put 'em altogether into a Baſin, and melt 'em. Then add a pint of the *juice of Plantane*; and as ſoon as they begin to boil, remove the Veſſel from the Fire. Then ſet it on again; and continue to remove and ſet it on again, after the ſame manner, for the ſpace of eight or ten hours, till the *juice* be wholly conſum'd without *boiling*. Then remove the Veſſel from the Fire, and as ſoon as the matter begins to thicken, add *an ounce of pouder of Olibanum*, ſtirring without intermiſſion, till it be quite cold. This *Ointment* will make the Hoof grow without heating it;

it; for the *juice of Plantane* tempers the other ingredients; and since it does not boil, has time to communicate its cooling virtue before 'tis consum'd. 'Tis chiefly proper when the Hoof is as hard as Glass, so that an *Ointment* glides along without piercing it.

In Winter you may make an effectual and cheap Remedy of *Hony*, *Tar* and *Tallow*, mix'd cold, in equal quantities.

Connestable's Ointment.

To make the Hoof grow, and render it soft and tough, the following *Ointment* is an experienc'd Remedy. *Take new Wax, Goats grease,* (or, for want of that, *fresh Sheep's Suet*) *and the fat of Bacon, cut into small pieces, and steep'd in Water 24 hours, till it grow fresh; the Water being chang'd every three or four hours; of each a pound*; melt 'em together, and then add, *a large handful of the second Bark of Elder*; *and*, if it be in the Spring, *two handfuls of Elderbuds, when they are about the bigness of your Thumb.* Boil 'em over a gentle fire for the space of a quarter of an hour, stirring them from time to time. Then squeese the matter through a coarse Cloth, and put the straining in the same Basin or Pot, with *two ounces of Oil Olive, four ounces of Turpentine, and the like quantity of Hony:* After which remove the Vessel from the fire, and stir the *Ointment* till it be quite cold; then anoint the Hoof once a day, for the breadth of an Inch round the Hair; or if the Hoof be much worn, spread the *Ointment* on *Flax*, and wrap it carefully about the Hoof, renewing the Application twice a Week, but still continuing the same *Flax*.

Of Surbated Feet.

A Horse's Foot is said to be *surbated*, when the Sole is worn, bruis'd or spoil'd, by Travelling without shoes, or in hot sandy ground, or with a shoe that hurts the Sole. When want of shoes occasions it; you must cleanse the Sole with your *Buttress*; and having tack'd on the shoe with four Nails, pour boil-

boiling Pitch or Tar into the Foot, charging it after it is cold, with *a pound of old Hog's lard, melted in a Skellet*, to which is added, *a pint of Vinegar*, and a *ſufficient quantity* of *Bran* to thicken the Compoſition.

If the ſhoe bear harder upon one part of the Foot, than the reſt; pare the whole Foot a little, eſpecially the bruis'd part; and where it appears red and bruis'd, thruſt your *Buttreſs* deeper in, paring the Sole almoſt to the quick. Then apply the *Ointment for Pricks*, and tack on the ſhoe with four Nails; renewing the Application till the Horſe ceaſes to halt. Then ſtop his Foot with a Remolade, binding it on carefully.

If the Foot be heated, by riding in hot and ſandy ground; take off the ſhoe, pick the Foot well; then ſtop it with *melted Tar*, and anoint it with the *Ointment for the Hoof.*

In general, nothing is more conducive to *ſurbated* Feet, than *Tar* melted into the Foot; or, *Vinegar boil'd with Soot*, to the thickneſs of *Broth*, and put into the Foot boiling hot; with *Hurds* over it, and *Splents* to keep it in. If all theſe Remedies prove ineffectual, you muſt at laſt take out the Sole, for which end, the uſe of the ſame Remedies is very ſerviceable, becauſe they moiſten and ſoften the Foot, and ſo prepare the Sole for being taken out with leſs difficulty and pain.

Of Pricks in the Foot.

A prick with a Nail in ſhoeing, or in the ſtreet, does ſometimes feſter, and put the Horſe in danger of loſing his Foot. To prevent ſuch conſequences; when a Farrier perceives in ſhoeing a Horſe, that he complains, or ſhrinks at every blow upon the Nail, it muſt be immediately pull'd out; for tho' blood follows, he may be ridden immediately without halting. If he halts preſently after he is ſhod, 'tis a ſign that ſome Nail either preſſes the Vein, or touches

touches him in the quick; which is found out, by lifting up the ſound Foot, and knocking gently upon the top of the Clenches of the lame Foot, with a ſhoeing Hammer; for he will ſhrink when you touch that Nail that pricks him. The uſual place of pricking, is at the heel in the fore Foot, and at the toe in the hinder Foot. You muſt pull off the ſhoe, preſſing round the Foot with the Pincers, and when you come to the place that is prick'd, he will ſhrink extreamly. When you draw out the Nails, obſerve if they are bow'd, for then they have preſs'd the Vein; or if there are any Flakes, for theſe may either preſs the Vein or the Fleſh; and if they remain in the Foot, the cure will never be perform'd; or if the hole Iſſues Blood or Matter, for then you muſt ſearch it with your *Renette*, reaching to the end of it, where the Nail was Rivetted on the Hoof; and if you find it does not reach to the quick, try with a Nail pointed to that ſide of the hole where the Vein lies, whether the Horſe complains. If he does, proceed to the Cure. If upon ſearching the hole, he does not at all complain; he is not prick'd in that place. Some narrow heel'd Horſes, eſpecially *Engliſh* Horſes, are always lame when they are new ſhod, the Nails being rivetted too high; but reſt will cure that lameneſs. Oftentimes in fleſhy Feet, a bow'd Nail will make a Horſe halt, tho' he be not prick'd; and in time, will cauſe a Sore that muſt be cur'd as a prick.

For a Cure: If the place be impoſtumated, after the evacuation of the Matter, inject *boiling Oil with a little Sugar*, and ſtop the hole with *Cotton*; then tack on the ſhoe with three or four Nails, and ſtop the Foot every day with a *Remolade*; applying at the ſame time a *Reſtringent Charge*, about the foot, and keeping it from moiſture.

If the place is not impoſtumated, pour into the hole *Spirit of Vitriol*, and ſtop it with *Cotton*; and

ſet

ſet on the ſhoe: If he grows lame again, take off the ſhoe, and dreſs his Foot with *Spirit of Vitriol*, as before.

A Remedy for a prick with a Nail.

In general; for a *prick* with a Nail, after you have open'd the Sore, inject every day the *Vulnerary Water* cold; or for want of that, dreſs with the *Ointment Pompholygos*; ſtopping the hole with *Cotton*. If neither of theſe Medicines can be had, pour into the hole, very hot *Vinegar*, in which *beaten Milfoil* (or *Savin*, *Vervain*, *Birthwort*, *Speedwell*, *Agrimony*, *Zedoary*, *Adders-Tongue*, &c.) has been boil'd, and lay the *boil'd Herbs* upon it; repeating the Application till it be heal'd.

Sometimes a lameneſs is occaſion'd by a bruiſe in the *Fruſh*, the heels being ſo low that the Horſe knocks them againſt the ground as he goes. 'Tis known by the trembling of the *Fruſh* when you touch it, and the perceiving of matter form'd underneath. In this caſe, the Sore muſt be dreſs'd like a Wound made by a Nail, the Remedies being made to penetrate, thro' the Heel, between the *Fruſh* and the *bone* of the Foot; and proper aſtringents of *Lime, and the ſecond Water*; or of *Soot*, *Vinegar*, *and whites of Eggs*, being applied about the *Fruſh*.

The moſt effectual Remedies for a *prick* in a Horſe's Foot, are the *Vulnerary Water*; the *Ointment Pompholygos* (which is known to cure hurts in the Feet of Oxen, receiv'd at the Plough) and above all the *Oil de Merveille*, viz.

Oil de Merveille.

Take the Oils of Turpentine, and of St. Johnſwort, of each four ounces; true Oil of Peter two ounces. Mix 'em in a glaſs Bottle over hot Embers, adding the weight of a Golden Crown of Alkanet, *hung in the Bottle by a thred. After it has ſtood a quarter of an hour on the Aſhes, take out the* Alkanet, *and preſerve the Oil for uſe.* If you thicken it with *Wax*, its penetrating vertue will be

be impair'd. 'Tis to be injected warm every day, into the open'd Sore, the hole being afterwards ſtop'd with *Cotton*, to keep it open; and cover'd with *Flax* and *Splents*.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Scab'd Heels or Fruſh; and of the Crownſcab and Mange.

SOmetimes an *Itching* and *eating Scab* waſts the *Fruſh*, and makes a Horſe Halt; and though 'tis not dangerous, is troubleſome and painful. 'Tis diſcover'd by its ſtinking of old rotten Cheeſe, when one comes into the Stable; and by the Horſe's beating the ground with his Feet, by reaſon of the Itching.

The Cure of Scab'd Heels.

For the *Cure:* Pare the *Fruſh* very cloſe with a *Buttreſs*; then quench *unſlack'd Lime* in *Vinegar*; and throw the ſtrain'd liquor boiling hot upon the *Fruſh*; after which, apply a *reſtringent Charge* of *unſlack'd Lime, and the ſecond Water*; or the *black reſtringent* of *Soot, Vinegar, and whites of Eggs*. The *Counteſſes Ointment*, with a dreſſing kept on with *Splents*; will likewiſe perform the Cure in three or four applications. If it returns after cleanſing the Sores, bleeding frequently in the Toe, and applying *Neatherd's Ointment*, will ſerve for a *Palliative Remedy*; tho' the internal cauſe can hardly be remov'd.

A Preſervative from Scab'd Heels.

For Preſervation, pare the *Fruſh* often, and rub the place once or twice with the *Second Water*; and after the Scabs are by this means dry'd up, *Take of Allum and white Vitriol, of each a pound and a half:* Boil 'em in a *Gallon of Water*, till it be reduc'd to *two quarts*; and bath the part every day with it cold; and above all, when the Itching is gone

gone, melt *Tar* or *black Pitch* upon the Scabs, and keep the Feet well pick'd, and free from duſt and dirt.

The Crown Scab. The *Crown Scab* is a white mealy Scurf, caus'd by a burnt yellowiſh and malignant matter, that breaking forth at the Roots of the Hair, makes it briſtle and ſtare, on the *Cronet*, and oftentimes all over the *Paſtern* to the Joint; the part being much ſwell'd. This *Scurf* is the ſubtile exhalations of the Humours, harden'd into a Salt ſticking to the Skin. There are two ſorts of *Crown Scabs*. Some are quite dry; others void a ſtinking matter, that imparts its ſtrength and moiſture to the adjacent parts; and by its acrimony, while it is in the *Cronet*, cracks and ſplits the Hoof which receives its nouriſhment from the *Cronet*. Commonly this ſcurfy Humour is neither painful nor an obſtacle to Travelling; eſpecially in dry Climates, where it drys up in Summer of it ſelf: But ſometimes, 'tis extreamly hot, ſharp and troubleſome, and over-runs the whole Leg, almoſt to the Knee and Hoof.

For the Cure: *Take two ounces of good Braſil Tabacco, cut ſmall, or purg'd of the Stalks. Infuſe it twelve hours, in half a pint of ſtrong ſpirit of Wine; ſtirring 'em every hour, to promote the better extraction of the Tincture.* Rub the Scab very hard, once every day, with an handful of this Tabacco; the part being firſt chaf'd without taking off the Skin. This, and all other *drying Remedies*, are only *Palliative*; for oftentimes the *Scab* breaks forth, after a ſeeming *Cure:* In which caſe, you muſt rub the part with a wiſp of Hay, till it grows hot; without taking off the Skin, or drawing Blood; and then touch it gently, once or at moſt twice, with *Cotton* dip'd in the *Spirit of Vitriol*; or elſe dreſs the Sores with *Neat-herd's Ointment*. However you muſt be very cautious of applying too much

much or too ſtrong, *Spirit of Vitriol*, at firſt; for I was once deceiv'd with *Spirit of Vitriol* highly rectified; which being apply'd in too large a quantity, in a *moiſt Crown-ſcab*, made the whole Leg and Sinew ſwell, with ſuch a violent pain that the Horſe could not ſtand upright: Upon which occaſion I was forc'd to aſſuage the pain of the Leg and Sinew with the *red Hony Charge*; and mitigate the violent pain in the ſcabby place, occaſion'd by the *Spirit*, by applying to it the *white Hony Charge*: And though, after two Months keeping in the Stable, the Horſe was cur'd of the *Crown-ſcab*, yet a great Scar remain'd, which was never afterwards cover'd with Hair. I am of the opinion, that *Spirit of Salt* being a more potent cleanſer, is preferable to *the Spirit of Vitriol*, in a *Crown-ſcab*, tho' neither the one nor the other are infallible, in inveterate caſes. Sometimes indeed it may be cur'd, by bathing with *Spirit of Wine*, impregnated with as much *Sal Armoniack*, as it will diſſolve.

Of the Mange.

Oftentimes old Horſes, and even young ones, upon reſt, after hard labour, are troubl'd with ſuch a perpetual *Itching* or *Mange* in their Legs, and other parts, that they rub off the Hair.

For Cure: *Infuſe two ounces of Euphorbium, reduc'd to fine powder, in a quart of ſtrong Vinegar: After it has ſtood in hot Embers ſix hours, rub the Horſe's Legs with a wiſp, and chafe 'em with the Vinegar once or twice.* After that, bleed him in the *Eye-Veins*, if the *fore Legs* are affected, and in the *Plait Thigh Vein*, for a *Mange* upon the *hinder Legs*.

If you waſh the mangy parts with the *Infuſion of two handfuls of Staveſacre-ſeed, in a quart of ſtrong Vinegar, and hot Aſhes*; they will be cur'd at twice bathing. Or you may rub the parts once or twice at moſt (for fear of Ulcerating) with *a large handful*

handful of Louſewort, or *Baſtard Hellebore*; which is a Plant with long notched leaves, made uſe of in the Country, to deſtroy Lice in Cattel.

For a certain cure of the *Mange: Take green Copperas, and Burnt Allum, of each four ounces; Arſmart two handfuls.* Boil 'em in *two quarts of Vinegar*, to the Conſumption of *one half*; and waſh the Horſe's Legs with the *liquor*, having firſt rub'd 'em with a wiſp. Remembring ſtill, that the cure of this Diſtemper muſt always begin with *Bleeding*; and in the mean time the Horſe may be either Ridden or Wrought.

For the *cure* of an *Univerſal Mange*, or a *Mange* upon the Legs only; and likewiſe for a peeling off of the Skin, and Hair, upon the bending of the Thigh, occaſion'd by an exceſs of heat: *Boil four ounces of the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony in pouder, in two quarts of ſtrong Vinegar.* With which, rub the parts every day, till the hair returns. At the ſame time the Horſe's body muſt be cool'd, with repeated Doſes of the *Liver of Antimony*, or of *Sal Prunellæ.*

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hoof-bound; *or of waſted and ſhrunk Feet.*

OFtentimes the conveyance of nouriſhment to the Feet, is interrupted by diſorders in the Legs and adjacent parts; inſomuch that the Feet dwindle, the Horſe halts, and the Hoof ſounds hollow if you knock on it.

For *Cure:* Raiſe the whole Foot with a red hot Knife, making large raſes of the depth of a Silver Crown, from the hair to the ſhoe, avoiding the

Cronet.

Cronet. Then apply the following *Pultis*, and charge the whole Foot with the following *Remolade*.

A Pultis for the *Hoof-bound*.

Take two parts of Sheep's dung; and one part of Hen's dung; boil them with a ſufficient quantity of Water and Salt, to the thickneſs of Paſte. In another Pot, *boil a convenient quantity of Mallows to a Maſh; then add a convenient quantity of Linſeed in Pouder, and boil a little longer; after which, beat 'em in a Mortar, with an eighth part of a raw Garlick to a ſoft Paſte.* Incorporate this with the former *Paſte*, adding a little *Oil of Lillies*. Make a *Pultis*, to be applied to the Foot very hot, it being cover'd with *Splents*. Renew the application five or ſix times, once in two days, obſerving always to heat the old *Pultis*; and only mix a little freſh with it.

A Remolade for a *Hoof-bound*.

Take half a pound of Burgundy Pitch; four ounces of common Turpentine; two ounces of Oil Olive; and thicken the whole with a ſufficient quantity of fine Flower. Charge the whole Foot with this *Remolade*, lukewarm, after the application of the *Pultis*.

Oftentimes one of the *quarters* of the *Hoof* is ſhrunk, and dry'd up, while all the nouriſhment falls upon the other; eſpecially near the heels of the fore Feet, and the inſide of the Hoof; which is the weakeſt part; and the Horſe halts down-right, the Bone of the Foot being cramp'd and preſs'd by the ſhrunk quarter. In this caſe; draw ſeven or eight lines with a hot Iron upon the *ſhrunk quarter*, from the *Cronet* to the *Shoe*, (in order to penetrate and unbend the Hoof, that ſo the Bone may return to its due place;) without touching the Hair; and then apply the *Pultis* and *Remolade* as above. If this method proves uneffectual; you muſt take out the *Sole*; and cleave the *Fruſh* in the middle with a

Fleam, piercing to the *Paſtern*; and fill the *cleft*, (not the Foot) with a great number of Bolſters, beſmear'd with a mixture of equal parts of *Tar*, *Hony* and *Turpentine*, boil'd together; the Foot being firſt dreſs'd, and *Splents* laid on.

CHAP. XXI.

Of all ſorts of Wounds and Hurts.

SOme *Wounds* are ſo *ſlight*, that the *cure* conſiſts only in keeping them clean; and others are ſo *painful*, that, unleſs they be taken care of, they prove fatal. *Wounds* in the *Fleſh* are more eaſily cur'd, than thoſe in the *Sinews*, *Tendons*, or *Bones*: Thoſe upon a *Joint*, are ſeldom or never cur'd. In hot weather, Wounds are apt to gangrene and mortify, thro' the corruption bred by Flies and other Inſects; in cold weather they are long a cloſing. If a Horſe be ſhot through the body with a *Muſquet Bullet*, the Charge of the Cure is extreamly great, and the Event always uncertain. In order to obtain a regular method of curing *Wounds*; let the following Rules be obſerv'd.

Rules for the cure of Wounds.

1. Since Horſe's fleſh is very apt to corrupt upon the leaſt contuſion; and ſince the leaſt corruption retards the Cure; let the Wound be *prob'd* very gently, and as ſeldom as poſſible, with *Probes* of *Juniper*, or ſome *Aromatick-wood*, well dry'd. Indeed *Silver Probes* are beſt for deep Wounds; and thoſe of *Lead* may be us'd inſtead of *Strings* in *Setons*, for *Lead* never heats the part.

2. Let the *Proud-Fleſh*, to which the Wounds of Horſes are very ſubject, be kept down with *Bandages*;

Bandages; or, if that be impracticable, let it be consum'd; or, which is best of all, let it be cut off, or burnt throughly; taking care not to cut a Sinew or Tendon, and being cautious in Wounds near a Bone.

3. In all *great Wounds*, let the humours be cool'd, and diverted from the Wounded part, by *Bleeding*; which seasonably administred, exceeds all other Remedies. It ought to be repeated two or three times in the beginning; but not oftner. If the Horse is fat, you must abridge the quantity of his Provender; especially if the Wound be large, for then a little *moisten'd Bran*, without either *Oats* or *Hay*, is sufficient.

4. Never wash the Wound with *pure Water*, for that promotes the moisture of the flesh, which retards the *Cure*. Upon occasion, you may wash it with warm *Wine* or *Urine*, or the *Water* of a *Smith's Forge*, lukewarm; and after the Wound is cleans'd, with the *second Water*, in order to allay the itching and heat, and to dry the flesh.

5. Let not the Horse lick the Wound; or rub it against any hard thing. The former poisons the Wound; and the latter bruises the flesh, which must be separated before the Wound can be heal'd.

6. Indeavour by all means to *repel*, or *dissolve* the Humours, especialy in parts full of Sinews and Ligaments, or near the Bones; because the matter generated, weakens the part, leaves a deformity, and, if near the Bone, corrupts it. *The Repelling Remedies* are otherwise call'd *Restringents*; because they bind up the humours from flowing into the part. 'Tis true, *Restringents* are not proper in *Critical Tumours*, proceeding from an effort of nature to ease a nobler part, or in the Bitings of Venemous Creatures, or when the matter is thick, tough, and fix'd. But even in such cases, 'twill be proper to

apply ſuch Remedies as *attenuate* and *diſſolve* the humours, before we proceed to *Suppuration.*

7. In Wounds accompany'd with a great *Contuſion*; the bruis'd fleſh muſt putrify, and its ſeparation muſt be haſten'd with *Inſtruments*, which I prefer to *Cauſticks.*

8. *Round* or *Circular* Wounds ought to be cut into a long figure, to facilitate the *Cure.*

9. Cover the Wound carefully from the *Air*, with Lamb's Skin; and where that cannot be conveniently applied with Tow, which muſt be cut and beaten, that it may ſtick the faſter.

10. As ſoon as you attempt the *Cure* of a Wound; ſhave the Hair very cloſe, about two Fingers breadth round the place, and keep it always neat, clean, and ſupple, that the Skin may be eaſily ſtretch'd to join the Lips of the *Wound.* If the Lips are *Callous*, you muſt conſume the *Callus*, with the *Golden Ointment* mix'd with unwaſh'd *Butter of Antimony.* Or, if that proves uneffectual, lance and gaſh them with a Fleam or red hot Knife; which will haſten the forming of a *Cicatrice.*

A Saddle-Gall. A *Saddle-Gall* of no conſiderable depth, is cur'd by waſhing with *Urine* or *warm Wine*; and ſometimes, when the Wound is large, with the *ſecond Water*; and ſtrewing the *Wound* with the *pouder* of an *old Rope* or *Flax*; and conſuming the proud fleſh with *Colcothar of Vitriol.*

A Sitfaſt. Sometimes a *Saddle-Gall* degenerates into a hard knot, call'd a *Sitfaſt*: For an eaſy and ſpeedy cure of this; let the melted Tallow of a lighted Candle drop upon the Knob, and, after 'tis ſeparated, waſh the Sore with *warm Wine*, and the *ſecond Water*, or *Urine.* Then anoint it ſlightly with *old Salt Butter*, ſtrewing upon it the pouder of old Ropes. Oftentimes a neglected *Sitfaſt*, turns to an incurable

Gan-

Gangrene. Upon which account we ought to haſten the *Cure.* For which end, the ſureſt way is to rub it with the *Ointment of Beetles*, or ſome good *Retoir*, holding a hot Bar of Iron near the part, as ſoon as the Ointment is laid on; and renewing the application thrice in three ſucceſſive days; or to rub it with a *Cauſtick Ointment* once.

A Sponge to keep Wounds open.

If the Wound be large, open and deep, as it often happens in the Thighs, Withers, *&c.* it muſt be tented with a *Tent* of *Salted Hog's-lard.* But if it be neceſſary to keep the Wound open; inſtead of *Inciſions*, which are always pernicious, eſpecially in places full of Sinews, and Tendons, or over-run with Blood; apply the following *Sponge*, which will keep it open, and diſcover the bottom.

Take a *fine Sponge*, waſh'd clean, ty'd about very hard with *Pack-thread*, and wrapt in *wet Paper:* Let it dry a quarter of an hour, or longer, in a hollow place in the midſt of the hearth, covering it with hot Aſhes, and live Coals over the Aſhes. Then take it out, and when 'tis cold, untie it, and cut it into what form you pleaſe, to be beſmear'd with a *Digeſtive Ointment*, and thruſt in to the bottom of the Wound. The next day draw it out with your Pincers, and you will find it ſwollen, and the hole enlarg'd, without hurting the *Sinews* or *Tendons.* If the Wound be ſo foul, or full of dead fleſh, that the *Sponge* is not ſufficient to open it, (provided it be not under the Foot) ſoak a very *fine Sponge* in a *mixture* of *two ounces of pounded Sublimate, and half an ounce of melted Wax*; then lay it in a Preſs 48 hours; and after that make Tents of it, which will open the Wound, and at the ſame time operate as *Cauſticks.* If you deſire it ſtronger, as in the caſe of *Quitterbones*; add *an ounce of Arſenick*, in fine pouder, to the abovementioned mixture. But in Sores under the Foot, theſe *Cauſtick*

Sponges are improper, becauſe they drive the humours upwards to the *Cronet*; ſo that in ſuch caſes you muſt prepare the *Sponge* only with *melted Wax*, and then make *Tents* of it, which will ſwell and keep down the *Proud-fleſh*, if the part be carefully bound up with *Splents*.

Cinnabar Pills for Wounds.

To promote the ſucceſs of *external Remedies*; 'twill be proper to add *inward Medicines*; not *Purgatives*, which looſen the humours, and occaſion Defluxions upon the part; but ſuch as purify the Blood, and reſiſt corruption. For which end, the following *Pills* are of ſingular uſe.

Take the fineſt and cleareſt Aſſa fætida, Bayberries of Provence or Italy, and Cinnabar, all in fine pouder, of each a pound: With a ſufficient quantity of ſtrong Brandy, make a *Maſs* in a *braſs Mortar*, to be form'd into *Pills*, weighing fourteen drams each; two of which dried, may be given in *three half pints of Wine*, once in two days, or once every day, till he has taken *eight* or *ten*; making him ſtand bridled two hours before and after the taking of every Doſe. Theſe *Pills* may be kept twenty Years; and are not only of wonderful uſe againſt *Wounds*, eſpecially in an Army, where an expeditious cure is requir'd; but likewiſe againſt the *Farcin*, and *Worms*, and againſt the *ſhedding of the hair from the Head and Neck*; in which caſe *three Doſes* of theſe *Pills*, together with *Bleeding*, and the external uſe of *Lime Water*; and after that, Flower of Brimſtone, given every day in moiſten'd Bran; will compleat the Cure. Theſe *Pills* are alſo very proper againſt *eating Scabs in the Mane and Tail*, if the external uſe of *Lime-Water* be join'd to them, and againſt *running Sores in the Legs, Warts, Bunches, Quitterbones*, and ſuch like ſtubborn Diſtempers.

If

If the Wound be foul, it muſt be waſh'd at every dreſſing with the *yellow Water*, which follows. *Take two or three pounds of unſlack'd Lime, newly made; put it into a large Baſin of fine Tin, and pour upon it by degrees, five quarts of Rain-Water. Then ſet the Baſin in a convenient place for two days, ſtirring the Water often. Then let it ſettle, decant the Water off, ſtrain it through brown Paper; and to three pints of it, add half a pint of good Spirit of Wine; an ounce of Spirit of Vitriol, and as much Corroſive Sublimate in fine pouder.* Mix for uſe. If the Wound be peſter'd with *proud-fleſh*, add to this quantity of *Lime-Water*, *an ounce of Arſenick in pouder*; if even that be too weak, you muſt burn the whole Wound with a *hot plate of Iron*; taking care not to touch the *Skin*, *Tendons*, *and Sinews:* Then anoint the burnt part with *Oil of Bay* warm, covering the whole Wound with *Flax*, and repeating the application of the *Oil*, till the *Eſcar* looſens; after which, anoint it with *Baſilicum*, or *Tallow*, till the *Scab* falls off: And you will find a fair Skin underneath, without the leaſt mark of burning.

A Lime Water for Wounds.

The common *detergent* and *cleanſing* Remedies, are too weak for Horſes. *Salt Butter* cleanſes more effectually, than any of 'em. Indeed *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, and the *Neatſherd Ointment* are of very good uſe; and above all, the *Ointment Ægyptiacum*, which tho' it occaſions ſome pain, is nevertheleſs an innocent and very uſeful Remedy. Its Compoſition is as follows.

Take a pound of common Hony, and a pint of Brandy; boil 'em over a gentle Fire, in a glaz'd Pot or Baſin, ſtirring 'em frequently with a wooden ſlice, till they be perfectly united, and the Brandy diſappears. Then add two ounces of burnt Allum, beaten ſmall, and four

The Ointment Ægyptiacum.

four ounces of pouder of Verdigreaſe ſears'd, Stirring and incorporating them with the other Ingredients. At laſt put in an ounce of Sublimate in fine pouder, ſtirring and boiling as before, till the whole be reduc'd to a Conſiſtency. Then remove the Pot from the Fire, and continue ſtirring till the Ointment be cold, which muſt be kept in a cover'd Pot for uſe.

If you ſee any ſigns of Putrefaction in the part, mix *two ounces of Aqua fortis* with the *Ægyptiacum*. For a Cauſtick to eat the corrupt Fleſh, without hurting the Nerves or Muſcles, put the *liquid Cauſtick* into the Sore with a little Cotton, preſſing it on with a *Bandage*; otherwiſe it will have no effect. You may renew the application till you perceive that the part is ſufficiently penetrated. As often as you dreſs the Sore, waſh it with the *Lime* or *Yellow Water*, or with *black Soap* mix'd with *unſlack'd Lime*. Sometimes you may cleanſe the bottom of a Sore with a *Tent*, anointed with *Ægyptiacum*; and then you will find the *Tent* of a green colour, by reaſon of the *Verdigreaſe* in the Compoſition.

To make the Fleſh grow. Sometimes after old and neglected Sores, eſpecially in the Feet, the Bones remain bare without Fleſh to cover them; in which caſe, *Take Dragons Blood, and Bole Armenick, of each half an ounce; Maſtick, Olibanum and Sarcocolla, of each three drams; Aloes, Round Birthwort, and Roots of Flower-de-Luce, of each a dram and an half.* Mix and apply in the form of a pouder; or, which is better, mix it with *Turpentine* in the form of an *Ointment*.

The Pouder of Sympathy. When the Wound is fair and clean, we uſually compleat the cure with drying Pouders. But of all ſuch Pouders, the moſt ſucceſsful and expeditious, is that call'd the *Pouder of Sympathy*, viz. *Put a convenient quantity of Roman Vitriol* (that of *Cyprus* will not

not do) *in a flat bottom'd Earthen Pan, and expose it in the open Air, to the hottest rays of the Sun, removing it always at night, and in moist weather, till the Vitriol be reduc'd to a white Calx.* In the mean time time you must stir it every day, with a Wooden slice, for touching it with Iron, after the Sun has begun to unlock its body, weakens its virtue. When 'tis perfectly white, take it out, and perserve it for *the true pouder of Sympathy:* Which you are to strew upon a Cloath, dipp'd in the blood of the Wound; and likewise upon a Cloath dipp'd in the matter issuing from the Wound, if there be any; laying the Cloath afterwards in a temperate place; or in a moist place, if suppuration be needful; or in a dry place, if drying be requisite; and poudering the substance every day. If the depth of the Wound requires *Tents*, put 'em in clean and dry, and always when you take 'em out, strew this *pouder* upon 'em. A Linnen cloth doubl'd, five or six times, and dip'd in the solution of this *pouder*; and wrap'd about *Wrenches* and *Sinew-Strains*, renewing the application twice a day; is oftentimes more effectual than any *Waters*, *Oils* or *Ointments*; tho' *Sympathy* is not the cause of its efficacy.

Though the *Pouder of Sympathy*, is a most effectual Remedy for dangerous *Wrenches* and *Strains* in the *Hoofs*; yet some are so prejudic'd, that they will not make use of it. Upon which account I shall subjoin the Description of an *Ointment*, that promotes the cure of Wounds more in one day than other *Ointments* do in a considerable space of time.

The *Hermit's* Ointment for Wounds.

Take the green leaves of long Birthwort, Paul's Betony, and Sage, of each a handful and an half; Sanicle, an handful; Roots of Marshmallows and Comfrey dry'd in the shade, of each an ounce; slice the roots very small, and boil 'em in a Skillet with a pint of Cream, for the space of a quarter of an hour;

after

after which, add the leaves chop'd ſmall, and boil 'em ſo long, till you can perceive nothing in the Skillet but a pure Butter, produc'd by the boiling of the Cream. Then ſtrain it out into a Pot, and put into the ſame Skillet, a quarter of a pound of the Lard of a Hog fed with Acorns, cut into ſlices, and mixt with the remaining Herbs and Roots. Boil all together about a quarter of an hour, and ſtrain out the *melted Lard* upon the *Butter*. In the next place boil *two ounces of Oil Olive* in the Skillet, with the *ſame Herbs* and *Roots*, for the ſpace of a quarter of an hour, and ſtrain it out into the *Pot* with the *Butter* and *melted Lard:* After which, ſqueeze out all the *juice* and *fat* of the *Herbs* and *Roots* in the ſame *Pot*; and while they are ſtill hot, add *an ounce of melted Tar, and an ounce and an half of Burnt Allum in pouder*; incorporating the whole *Maſs*, and ſtirring it till it be cold. Melt a little of this *Ointment* in a Spoon, and with a ſoft Pencil anoint the Wound very lightly once a day; covering it gently with *Flax*, or *pouder of old Ropes*. If, at the ſame time, you perceive Spongy or proud fleſh, conſume it with *white Vitriol*, diſſolv'd in *Spirit of Wine*, and after the removal of the Scab, and ſwelling, apply the *Ointment*. Giving the Fire will Anſwer the ſame indication. But to cleanſe the hidden part of a Wound, that cannot be reach'd by *Fire* or *Cauſticks*, you muſt uſe the *Lime* or *Yellow Water* preſcrib'd above.

Of a Gangrene. A Wound tending to Mortification, is call'd a *Gangrene*; and a confirm'd Mortification is ſtil'd a *Sphacelus*. The *ſigns* of a *Gangrene*, are, an inſenſibility, lividneſs, and afterwards blackneſs of the part; a ſudden and unwonted ſoftneſs, and a ſmell reſembling that of a Dead Carcaſs. The *Cure* of a *Sphacelus* is impoſſible: A young *Gangrene* is cur'd, by an early Scarification of the part to the quick, with a *Fleam*; and

and waſhing it with *Salt Water* twice a day, and covering the whole Wound with *Flax ſteep'd in the ſtrongeſt Lime Water*; or, if that proves too weak, in the following *Water*.

A Detergent for a Gangrene.

Take of Crude Allum, a pound; German Copperas, in coarſe pouder, half a pound; Verdigreaſe in fine pouder, three ounces; boil all together in *a gallon of ſtrong Vinegar*, to the Conſumption of *one half*. Reſerve the unſtrain'd liquor for uſe, in a glaſs Viol; ſhaking the Glaſs as often as you apply it; and, in caſe it proves too weak, adding to each *quart*, *two ounces of Aqua fortis*. Or,

Take of the ſtrongeſt white Wine, two ounces and a half; Brandy, half a pint; Spirit of Vitriol, two ounces. Mix in a two quart Bottle; and an hour after, add *two ounces of Verdigreaſe, in fine pouder; white Vitriol, four Ounces; and green Copperas, one pound; the two laſt in coarſe pouder*. Stop the Bottle very cloſe with a Cork and Hog's-Bladder; then let it ſtand in *infuſion* on hot Embers, twenty four hours, ſhaking it every ſix hours. Then preſerve it for uſe, ſhaking the Glaſs, and applying as above. 'Twill keep three Months.

A Gall'd Back.

When a Horſe's back is gall'd upon a Journey, take out a little of the Stuffing of the Pannel over the ſwelling; then ſew a piece of white, and very ſoft Leather on the inſide of the Pannel. Anoint it with Salt Butter, and every Evening wipe it clean, rubing till it grow ſoft, and anointing it again with *Butter*, or for want of that with *Greaſe*. Waſh the ſwelling or hurt every Evening with *cold Water* and *Soap*, and ſtrew it with *Salt*, till the Horſe be Saddled in the Morning. Above all, a large quantity of *Sea-ruſh*, that is uſually wrap'd about *Venice Glaſſes*; thruſt into that part of the *Pannel* that touches the Sore, is of admirable uſe for *Saddle-Galls*.

Sometimes

Harneſs-Galls. Sometimes the breaſts of Coach Horſes are gall'd by their Harneſs; or riſe in hard bunches, eſpecially in rainy Weather. In which caſe ſhave off the Hair about the Sore very cloſe, and rub the whole Breaſt with a *Lather* of *Water* and *black Soap*; then waſh that part of the Breaſt, which is uſually cover'd with the *Petrel*, with *Salt-Water*; ſuffering it to dry up of it ſelf. If the hardneſs of any part of the Harneſs occaſions the Galling, take it away, or cover it with little Bolſters.

To ſtanch Blood. To ſtop a violent Flux of Blood, occaſion'd by a Wound upon a large Veſſel; nothing is preferable to the *pouder of Sympathy*. If that cannot be had you muſt lay bare, and bind up the cut Veſſel. If that proves unpracticable, ſtop the Orifice of the Veſſel with a piece of *Roman Vitriol*, and apply a Bandage, if the Situation permits: If it does not, the ſureſt way is, to apply a *Searing Iron*. Thoſe who are afraid of *Burning*; may *Take equal quantites of Colcothar, Frankincenſe, and Aloes in pouder*; and mix 'em with *the Whites of Eggs*, to the thickneſs of *Hony*; adding a convenient quantity of *the hair of a Hare, cut ſmall*; and in a different caſe, *Dragon's Blood, Man's Blood dry'd, Plaiſter, and Calcin'd Vitriol*; and apply the whole in a ſufficient quantity. After the blood is ſtopt, you muſt not touch the Wound for three days, to ſee whether the Veſſel be exactly clos'd. The ſimples for ſtopping a Flux of Blood, are the *Roots and Leaves of Nettles, the Bark of a Pomgranate and Pine-tree, the leaves of Plantane and Willows, Services, burnt Galls quench'd in Vinegar, Bean-flower, Starch, Soot, Litharge, Ceruſs, Vitriol, Colcothar, Allum, a dry'd and pounded Sponge, and dry'd Coriander-ſeeds.* Above all, the moſt effectual Remedies are *Cauſticks*, eſpecially the pouder of *Arſenick*, which makes a large Eſcar. Only, when the ſcab falls off, you muſt take care to prevent a

new

new Flux of Blood, by avoiding *ſharp Remedies*, or the uſe of a *Probe*; and applying a *mixture of equal quantities of a Pomgranate, Roman Vitriol, and Allum.*

Wounds preceded by Tumors.

Having treated of *Simple Wounds*, I proceed to thoſe occaſion'd or preceded by *Swellings*. If a Horſe is bit by another Horſe on the *Neck*, or near the *Withers*; waſh it with *Lime Water*, or *Water* and *Soap*, or with the *ſecond Water*. If there be only a ſimple Contuſion, apply *Brandy*; if the Wound be ſmall, apply *Oil* of *Wallnuts* cold, mixt with *red Wine*. If the Horſe have large and fleſhy *Withers*, the redundant moiſture occaſioning proud fleſh, and hindering the drying of the part, retards the *Cure*. A Hurt in the *Withers* occaſion'd by the largeneſs of the *Saddle-bans*, provided it is not very great; will certainly be cur'd by what follows.

A Remedy for a ſmall hurt in the *Withers*.

Take the whites of ſix Eggs; beat 'em with a piece of Allum, almoſt as big as an Egg for a quarter of an hour together; till the whole be reduc'd to a very thick ſcum or froth; with which you muſt rub the *ſwelling*, and afterwards cover it with the reſt of the *froth*, ſuffering it to dry upon the part; repeating the Application every tenth or twelfth hour; notwithſtanding that the heat and ſwelling remains.

A Remedy for a great hurt in the Withers.

If the hurt be great, divert the humors by letting Blood in the Neck at firſt, and repeating it after two days. If a Tumor and Inflammation follows a Contuſion, occaſion'd by the *Saddle-Bows*, anoint thrice a day with the *Duke*'s *Ointment*; and cover the *Withers* with a *Lamb*'s *Skin*, laying the woolly ſide next the part, after you have bath'd them with *Lime Water* prepar'd without *Sublimate*; for that Remedy does very powerfully allay the Inflammation; and in this caſe *Defenſives* are of no uſe.

If

If the heat, diſtention, and beating of the Tumor, ſpeak its tendency to *ſuppuration*; you muſt alter your method; and waſh off the *Ointment* with lukewarm *Oxycrate*, mixt with *a handful of Salt*; and, as ſoon as the part is dry, chafe it gently four times a day, with an *Ointment* made of *half a pound of Populeon*; *Hony and black Soap, of each a quarter of a pound*; mix'd cold, and diluted with a *large glaſs* of *Spirit of Wine*. After which, cover the Sore with a *Lamb's Skin*, to promote the operation of the *Ointment*; which will diſſipate the humours, and remove the heat.

During the external Cure of hurts in the *Withers*; give your Horſe a Doſe of *Cinnabar-Pills* for two days together, keeping him Bridled two hours before, and after the taking of 'em; and repeating the ſame courſe after an interval of two days.

In caſe of a tendency to Suppuration, if you cannot procure the abovementioned *Ointment*; *Take an equal quantity of Cummin-ſeed and Linſeed, in pouder*; *boil 'em in Cow's Milk, with a large quantity of Pigeon's Dung in pouder*; and make a *Pultis* to ripen the ſwelling, and aſſwage the pain.

Take four ounces of the roots of Marſh-mallows, beaten, boil 'em in Water; *and afterwards add leaves of Mallows, and Bank Urſin, of each a handful. After they are well boyl'd, beat 'em to a maſh, adding Oil Olive and Butter, of each two ounces. With flower of Fenugreekſeed, make a ripening Pultiſs to be applied warm.*

When the ſwelling is ripe, make one or more holes in the lower part of the ſwelling, with a red hot Iron, about the bigneſs of the end of your Finger; and having preſt out the matter, dreſs the holes with ſoft *Tents*, beſmear'd with the *Duke's Ointment*; or put in *Tents* of *Hogs-Lard*, reaching from one hole to the other; leaving no boggy or hollow place underneath, that the whole matter may be evacuated

evacuated. If there be any hollow place, you muſt pierce the Skin at the end of it, with a red hot Iron; and then put in Tents with the *Duke's Ointment* from one hole to another; keeping the Sore moiſt with the *Duke's Ointment*, to allay the Inflammation; and, if there be a large hollow with a great putrefaction, injecting the *yellow Water*.

This method is preferable to Inciſion, when the bottom of the Sore and the Bones are ſound. But, if the Bone be foul, the ſureſt way is to cut off all that is corrupted, and even the *Mane*, if there be occaſion, without touching the Nerve that runs along it; diſcovering at once the bottom of the Sore, and piercing it to the quick. You muſt cut the Sore ſloping, without high or ſwelling Lips, to keep the matter from ſtagnating; and carefully ſeparate the corrupt fleſh, from the *Neck-Sinew*; the cutting of which, would certainly ſpoil the Horſe. Having thus freed the Sore of its corruption, ſtrew the place with red hot Aſhes, taken out of a burning Fire, till the blood be ſtopt. Next day waſh it with the *Water* of a *Smith's Forge*, lukewarm, or with *warm Wine*, *Urine*, or the *ſecond Water*; and ſtrew it again with *hot Aſhes*, repeating the ſame method two or three times once in 24 hours; for the *alkaline*, *aſhy Salt*, being melted by the moiſture of the Sore, deſtroys the *acid* humour, and conſequently abates the ſwelling, heat and other Symptoms. In an Army where you cannot eaſily come at *Aſhes*; after the Inciſion, bath the Sore with Water, fully laden with diſſolv'd *Vitriol* or the *German green Copperas*; and bind on it Flax dip'd in the ſame *Water*. After 48 hours, take off the dreſſing; and, if you perceive any Inflammation, renew the application of the Flax as above, till the heat and ſwelling are aſſwag'd. Then waſh the Sore with the *Water of a Smith's Forge*, lukewarm, and after that with the *Second Water*

Water, or *Lime Water*; and beſmear it with *Ox-gall*; covering it very ſoftly with *Flax*, or pouder of *old Ropes*; which, being remov'd, the next day will leave the Sore fair and clean. Waſh it again with the *ſecond Water*, to allay the Itching; and afterwards continue to anoint with *Ox-gall*, and cover with *Flax*, and pouder of *old Ropes*, till it be heal'd. If you perceive any corrupt or bruis'd fleſh, burn the part, or apply the pouder of *Colcothar*; and, after the Scab falls off, continue to anoint as before with *Ox-gall*. To conſume *proud-fleſh*, the pouder of *white Vitriol*, will ſerve, where *Cauſticks* are inconvenient. If the *Ox-gall* does not anſwer, you muſt have recourſe to the *Hermit*'s *Ointment* for Wounds. To make the fleſh firm, you may ſtrew it with *white Vitriol*, laying a convenient *Ointment* over it.

Swellings or Wounds on the Reins or Back; are cur'd after the ſame manner with thoſe on the Withers. So that the above mention'd Remedies may ſerve in all Wounds whatſoever.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the bitings of mad Dogs, and Venemous Beaſts.

THE *Cure* of *Madneſs*, occaſion'd by the *biting of a mad Dog*, whether in *Men* or *Cattle*, is commonly thought to depend either on a miracle or dipping in the Sea. But a Pamphlet lately Printed at *Poictiers*, has diſcover'd an eaſy and infallible Receipt for that Diſeaſe; which was confin'd as a ſecret for ſeveral Ages, to a certain Family, and at laſt diſcover'd by a Jeſuit of the ſame Family. This Medicine, ſays the *Pamphleteer*, is recommended

mended by ſo many experiments, that thoſe who live near the *Ocean*, prefer it to the uſe of the *Sea-Water*. 'Tis this.

An infallible Remedy for Madneſs, occaſion'd by Biting.

If there be a Wound, cleanſe it very carefully; ſcraping it with an Iron Inſtrument, without cutting away any part of it, unleſs it be ſo torn, that it cannot be united to the member; then bath the Wound with Water and Wine, ſomewhat warm, mix'd with a pugil of Salt. The Wound being thus cleans'd: *Take Rue, Sage, and Field-Daſies, both leaves and flowers, of each a pugil* (this will ſerve for one Wound) *with a convenient quantity of the roots of Eglantine or ſweet Briar, and of Spaniſh Scorzonera, chop'd very ſmall; and five or ſix heads of Garlick, each of the bigneſs of a ſmall Nut. Beat the Eglantine roots with the Sage, in a Mortar; then add the other Ingredients with a pugil of bay Salt, beating 'em together in the ſame Mortar, to a maſh*, a part of which, you muſt apply to the part; and, if the Wound be deep, you muſt likewiſe pour ſome of the juice of the ſame maſh into it. This done, *incorporate the remaining part of the maſh with a glaſs of white Wine in a Mortar; and ſqueeſe it thro' a linnen Cloth*, giving the *ſtrain'd liquor* to be drunk faſting, waſhing the Mouth afterwards with *Wine* and *Water*, and faſting for three hours after.

'Tis ſufficient to ſcrape and waſh the Wound the firſt day; but the *Pultis* and *Potion* muſt be repeated nine days together; after which, the Patient may freely converſe with his Friends; and, if the Wounds are not perfectly cur'd, they may be dreſs'd like ſimple Wounds. In the caſe of *Dogs*, you may ſhift the *Wine* for *Milk*, becauſe they drink it more eaſily.

Another eaſy remedy for bitings of Mad Beaſts.

To prevent the trouble of a Journey to be dip'd in the Sea; when one is bitten by a mad Beaſt. *Take a good quantity of Oyſter-ſhells, lay them on hot Embers; and open them with a piece of a coal; which being kindled will burn or calcine the Shell. Let them lie in the fire till they grow brittle, and perfectly white; after which, beat their lower half to a pouder, which will keep as long as you will. Take this pouder of the under half of the Oyſter-ſhells* (for the *upper part* is uſeleſs,) *and fry it with Oil Olive*; of which, give to Horſes, Dogs, and other Cattle, as much as they can ſwallow, once in two days, making 'em faſt ſix hours before, and as long after it. To Men you may give *the pouder of the under part of one Oyſter-ſhell, fry'd with Oil Olive*, and made into a *Pancake* with *four Eggs*; taking it faſting, and abſtaining from eating ſix hours after.

Of the bitings of a ſort of Mice, bred in rotten Straw.

There are certain *Venemous Creatures*, reſembling *Mice*, which breed in rotten Straw; the bitings of which are fatal to Horſes and Dogs; and when a Cat eats them, ſhe dies in a kind of Conſumption. If they bite a Horſe in the *Paſtern*, or *Fetlock-Joint*, the part ſwells, extending the Tumor to the Hough, Cods and Fundament; and without timely aſſiſtance the Horſe dies in eight and forty hours: If they bite the Belly of a Horſe, the Tumour either riſes towards the Throat, or extends to the Sheath; and quickly kills him.

As for the Cure: If it be in the Leg; *Tie a Ribbon or Garter of the breadth of an Inch above the ſwelling, to ſtop its progreſs; and beat the ſwollen part with a branch of a Gooſeberry buſh, till it be all over bloody; then chafe it with a large quantity of Orvietan, or Venice Treacle; exhibiting inwardly at the ſame time, an ounce of either of theſe Medi-*

Medicines in Wine. The next day anoint again, and exhibit *half an ounce* of the ſame *Remedy.* After which, untie the Garter, chafe the Leg with *Spirit of Wine*, ſew a Cloth dip'd in the ſame *Spirit* about the ſwelling; and after that, rub the part with the *Duke's Ointment*, to aſſwage the ſwelling.

The ſame Remedies will ſerve for all *venemous bitings* follow'd by *ſwellings:* Bating the *bitings of Serpents*, againſt which, I take the *Eſſence of Vipers*, to be the moſt effectual remedy.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a Cough.

HOrſes are often ſubject to *Coughs*; againſt which, 'twill be proper to mix *an equal quantity of Fenugreek and flower of Brimſtone with moiſten'd Oats*; and to give 'em for *ordinary drink* a Pail-full of *Water*, mix'd with *a pound of Hony.* For fat Horſes, the continued uſe of *a ſmall handful of Hempſeed*, mix'd with *Oats*, is very ſerviceable; as alſo the *infuſion* of that *ſeed*, in *white Wine*, given after it has infus'd a Night. The continued uſe of *a handful of Juniper berries*, or of the *Wood*, and *green leaves of Tamariſk*, ſtamp'd, and mix'd with moiſten'd *Oats* or *Bran*, riſing every day from a ſmaller to a larger quantity; is likewiſe very proper. Or,

A remedy for a Cough.

Take newly churn'd Butter, before it is waſh'd, and Hony, of each a pound; with two ounces of Juniper berries, make Pills, to be roll'd up in pouder of Liquorice; and given with a pint, or a pint and a half of white Wine, keeping the Horſe bridled two hours before, and

three hours after: Repeating the ſame two or three times, interpoſing a day or two between the *Doſes*. Or,

Another Remedy.

Take of clear Oil of Wallnuts, newly drawn, a pint; common Hony, a pound; and thirty grains of white Pepper beaten. Mix, and give the whole, once or at moſt twice.

Two or three Nutmegs grated, with half a pint of Brandy; will cure a *Cough* in one *Doſe*, unleſs the Horſe be Old. In which caſe it muſt be repeated; or elſe *infuſe all Night a ſmall Porringer of dry Pigeons dung, beaten in a quart of white Wine; in the Morning heat it till it begins to boil, then ſtrain out the liquor, to which add, two ounces of juice of Liquorice.* Mix and exhibit, repeating the ſame thrice, interpoſing one day between the Doſes.

The Engliſh Pills *for an* Old Cough.

In Inveterate Coughs that would not yield to common Remedies; I have ſeen the following Pills of ſingular uſe. *Take flower of Brimſtone, four ounces; Anniſeeds beaten, two ounces; Liquorice dried in the ſhade and beaten, four ounces; Bayberries, in fine pouder, four ounces; brown Sugar Candy, ſix ounces; good Treacle, four ounces; Oil Olive, eight ounces; Tarr, two ounces.* Incorporate all together in a Mortar; and with *four Eggs beaten in a diſh*, make *Pills* weighing ten Drams each, to be dried in the ſhade on a Hair Sieve, turn'd upſide down. Give one of theſe *Pills* once a day, for 20 days together, in a pint of *red* or *white Wine*, keeping the Horſe bridled an hour before, and two hours after; giving him at the ſame time his uſual allowance of Meat, and walking, working, or riding him, as at other times. Tho' theſe Pills are moiſt, they'll never grow mouldy: They may alſo be beaten and mix'd with Bran.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of Obſtructions of the Lungs, Fevers, and other Sickneſſes, occaſion'd by Foundering.

A Remedy for obſtructions of the Lungs.

A Horſe, who had ſo great an oppreſſion in the Flanks, that he was thought to be *Purſive*, and given over for loſt; was perfectly cur'd by the following Remedy.

Take Carduus Benedictus, Moſſy Lungwort, chop'd ſmall, of each an handful; Miſsletoe of the Oak beaten, an ounce; Roots of Marſhmallows and Elecampane, ſtamp'd in a Mortar, half an ounce; Hyſſop two handfulls. Boil the Ingredients about half an hour; then preſs out the liquor; and add, *half an ounce of the juice of Liquorice; an ounce of the pouder of Liquorice; Aniſeed and Fennel-ſeed, in fine pouder, of each half an ounce; a Scruple of Saffron; half a pound of clarified Hony, and a quart of white Wine.* Make a Decoction to be given bloodwarm at two Doſes; keeping the Horſe bridled ſix hours before, and, walking him an hour after, and keeping him bridled four hours longer. Continue the uſe of this four days together; then intermit three days, and after that give him four Doſes more. If this does not ſucceed, give him a Purging Medicine, and after that, the following pouder, *viz.*

Take three pound of Linſeed, dried in a Furnace; three ounces of Gentian; two ounces of Fenugreek; of Elecampane, an ounce and an half; Sage and Hyſſop, of each three ounces; Brimſtone half a pound. Make a pouder; of which give two ſpoonfuls with *Bran* every Morning; keeping the Horſe bridled for an hour and an half after it.

A Remedy for Fevers.

A *Fever* join'd to *Foundering* requires more timely and quick aſſiſtance. In this caſe, inject a *Glyſter* of the *Emollient Decoction*, with *half a pound of Hony*, lukewarm; or boil *an ounce of Crocus Metallorum in fine pouder*; *in five pints of Beer*, for half a quarter of an hour; then ſuffering it to ſettle, pour off the liquor, ſtrain it thro' a linnen Cloth, doubled, adding *a quarter of a pound of Butter*; and inject the whole lukewarm, at four in the Afternoon: At ſix exhibit the following *Remedy*; keeping the Horſe bridled till eight.

Take the diſtill'd Waters of Carduus Benedictus, and Scabious, of each ſix ounces; *Waters of the Queen of the Meadows*, *Cinnamon and Succory, of each four ounces*; *thin conſerve of Roſes, two ounces*; *Confection of Alkermes, without Muſk or Ambergreaſe, an ounce*; *Venice Treacle, half a dram*; *pouder of Oriental Saffron, ſix grains.* Mix and give it with a Horn, rinſing the Horn and the Horſes Mouth with a *mixture* of the *Waters of Carduus Benedictus, Succory and Scabious, of each an ounce and a half.* Next day at four in the Afternoon, inject the *Glyſter* preſcrib'd above; at ſix, let him blood in the two *Plait Veins* of the *Thighs*, keeping him bridled two hours after. Repeat the Doſe of the Remedy two or three times; but not the bleeding, without neceſſity. In the mean time let him eat little *Hay*, inject *Glyſters* often, and waſh his Mouth frequently with *Verjuice*, *Salt and Hony.* For his *ordinary drink*, *infuſe in a Pail-full of Water, the Dough of a Penny-Loaf, ready to be put into the Oven*; which is infinitely better than *Flower.* If the Horſe continues long in a lying poſture, 'tis a very good ſign, as intimating that his difficulty of breathing is not great; and tho' he complains more when lying, than when ſtanding, that is not to be regarded, ſince the ſoundeſt Horſes are wont to do the ſame

For

Another Remedy.

For another Remedy in the like case: *Take the Waters of Scorzonera, Queen of the Meadows, Carduus Benedictus and Scabious, of all two pints and an half, dissolving in the same an ounce of the Confection of Hyacinth, without Musk or Ambergrease, and one Treacle Pill in pouder.* Mix, and give it with a Horn in the Morning, rinsing the Pot, Horn, and the Horse's Mouth with *half a pint of wild Succory Water*; and keeping him bridled three hours before, and two hours after. At Night inject a *Glyster* lukewarm, of *an ounce and an half of Sal Polychrest, and half an ounce of Pulp of Coloquintida, without the seeds*, boil'd in *five pints of Beer*, half a quarter of an hour; dissolving in the strain'd liquor *a quarter of a pound of good Populeum.* The frequent Repetition of this *Glyster*, will promote the cure very much.

A Decoction against Fevers in Founder'd Horses.

The *Lieutenant's Decoction* is likewise very proper, *viz. Take Carduus Benedictus, and Hyssop, of each a handful*; *juice of Liquorice two ounces*; *Roots of Gentian, stamp'd in a Mortar, an ounce. Boil 'em in a pint and an half of Water for half an hour, then remove it from the Fire, and add a pint of* white Wine, *and as much Saffron as you can lift with three Fingers.* Strain out the Liquor for one or two Doses; the next day after this is taken, let your Horse blood in the Flanks, and keep him in a temperate place.

Since Horses in this condition are wont to eat very little; they must be nourish'd with *cleans'd Barly*, without *Butter* or *Fat*; or with *Bread* or *Bran*; remembring to put the Bitt frequently into the Horse's Mouth; and always to offer him meat when you unbridle him.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Preparations and Virtues of Crocus Metallorum, Sal Polychreſt, and the golden Sulphur of Antimony.

Liver of Antimony.

TO prepare the *Crocus Metallorum*; *Take equal quantities of the crude Antimony that is fulleſt of points and Nitre. Pound 'em ſeparately; mix 'em in a Crucible; ſet 'em on fire with a Match or live Coal. When the Flame is extinguiſh'd, ſeparate the Liver from the* Scoriæ, *under which you'll find it; reduce it to a very fine pouder; then throw it into Water, and beat again in the ſame Mortar, that which the Water cannot diſſolve; continuing after the ſame manner, till the whole matter be reduc'd to an impalpable pouder.* Then let the Water ſettle, and at the bottom you'll find a *liver colour'd pouder*, which you muſt continue to waſh by pouring on *freſh Water*, till the *Salt of the Nitre*, that is not conſum'd by the flame, be wholly ſeparated from the *pouder*. This *Crocus*, and its *infuſion* in *Wine*, is given only to Men: For 'tis not proper for Horſes. Inſtead of it, we prepare a *Liver* of *Antimony* thus.

Take of choice crude Antimony groſsly beaten, ſix pounds; Salt Petre, of the ſecond Solution (the white and refin'd being too violent) four pounds and an half. Mix the Nitre beaten very ſmall, with the Antimony, in an Iron Pot, or braſs Mortar, ſo that two thirds remain empty; then kindle the matter as above; ſtanding at a convenient diſtance to avoid the fumes of the Antimony. When the matter is cold, turn up the Mortar, for the *Liver* lies at the bottom, under the *Scoriæ*; and if it be

right

right prepar'd, ſhines like Glaſs, and is of a very dark brown colour. The *Scoriæ*, being a Combination of the *Sulphur* of *Antimony* and *Nitre*, are of excellent uſe in all *Glyſters*, where *Sal Polychreſt* is preſcrib'd. This *Liver* muſt not be waſh'd, for by that means 'tis ſtrip'd of its virtues. *Two ounces* of it, reduc'd to fine *pouder*, and given to a *Horſe* with *Oats* or *moiſten'd Bran*, once a day for the ſpace of a month; is an univerſal Medicine for *loſs of Appetite*, *Worms*, *Wounds*, *Farcin*, *Mange*, *Obſtructions*, *waſted Limbs*, *Cough*, *ſhortneſs of Breath*; and in a word, for all Diſtempers that do not require *hot Medicines*. It operates without any ſenſible *Evacuation*, throwing out the impurity of the Blood, by *inſenſible Tranſpiration*; upon which account 'tis, that when a Horſe is curried, we find the impurity and filth ſticking to his Skin much encreas'd upon the firſt taking of this Medicine. It cools and refreſhes the Body; and by conſequence is not proper in the *Glanders*, *Strangles*, or *Running at the Noſe*.

I know the ancient Phyſicians decry'd *Antimonial Preparations*, as being full of *Arſenical and corroſive Spirits*: But experience gives it againſt them; for I have given to ſeveral Horſes *four or five pounds* of this Remedy, in daily Doſes, without intermiſſion; and was ſo far from obſerving any Corroſion in the Stomach or Inteſtines; that it rendred them brisk, luſty, and fat. This remedy purifies the whole maſs of Blood, by *inſenſible tranſpiration*, and accordingly raiſes a commotion and ebullition in the Blood, when 'tis firſt taken; upon which account, during the firſt ten days, you muſt neither gallop, nor work, nor even ride the Horſe much, for fear of *Foundering* him. 'Tis true moderate exerciſe, is very neceſſary for promoting the expulſion of the impure Vapors, by the pores of the Skin; but vehement exerciſe, eſpecially in the beginning, is extreamly

treamly hurtful; and when he ſweats, you muſt carefully wipe and dry him, and prevent his growing ſuddenly cold; tho' after the firſt Ebullition of the Blood is over, you need not confine your ſelf to ſo ſtrict an obſervance of thoſe Cautions. Neither this, nor any other Preparation of Antimony, has any *Purgative* influence upon Horſes: For I gave to a Horſe, two Pills of the *Regulus of Antimony*, of the bigneſs of a large Nut; and two days and a half after, he voided them, without any alteration, or the leaſt ſign of Purgation. I gave the ſame Pills to another Horſe, who two days after, voided one, and kept the other in his body ſeven Years.

The Emetick Wine.

To make *Emetick Wine:* Let two ounces of *Liver of Antimony* in fine pouder, ſtand twenty four hours in a *cold infuſion* in *three pints of white Wine*; then pour off a *quart*, and add another in its place; repeating the abſtraction of the old, and the addition of freſh Wine, five or ſix times. 'Tis an excellent Medicine, both for Men and Horſes.

The Analyſis of crude Antimony.

To ſatisfy the curious, I ſhall here take occaſion to unfold the nature of *crude Antimony*. 'Tis a cheap and common Mineral, approaching to a Metallick body; of a black colour, ſomewhat bluiſh, with large points like Needles, ſhining like poliſh'd Tin. 'Tis compos'd of a pure fix'd Sulphur, approaching to that of Gold, and an Inflammable Sulphur like common Brimſtone, with a great deal of ſolid and well concocted *Mercury*, and a little thick and fat Earth. The *Hungarian* is the beſt. The deſign of all its Preparations, is to open and unlock the body of the *Regulus*, by reducing it to ſmaller and more penetrating Atoms; which aſſume the figure of the Salts, with which they are join'd; and may again be reinſtated in their primitive form by *Nitre* or *Borax*.

Since

Sal Polychreſt.

Since all fuſible Medicines exert their force more actively, than indiſſolveable lumps; it muſt needs be of great uſe to render *Sulphur* or its *flowers* fuſible, they being juſtly reckon'd the *Balſam of the Lungs*. For which end, ſet a *Crucible*, or *Iron Pot*, in the midſt of an heap of live Coals, till it be all over red hot, even at the bottom; then caſt into it with a Spoon, a *mixture* of *Sulphur* and *fine Nitre*, both in *pouder*, half an ounce of each. 'Twill break out into a Flame. When the Flame diſappears, ſtir the matter at the bottom with ſome Iron Inſtrument, to make the Fire penetrate it more effectually; and caſt in more of the ſame mixture by ſpoonfuls, ſtirring the matter as before, after the diſappearance of the Flame between every ſpoonful; continuing after the ſame manner, till all the mixture is caſt in. Then cover the Crucible, and lay Coals on the top, and every where round the ſides, ſuffering it to cool of it ſelf. After 'tis cold, beat the matter to pouder, which, if rightly prepar'd, will be of a pale Roſe colour; or elſe white, when the *Nitre* is not very pure. If it be grayiſh, 'tis naught. *Four pounds* of the *mixture* will yield a pound and a half of *Salt*.

This *Salt* diſſolves in Water, and grows red in the Fire without waſting. 'Tis ſo very cooling, that it muſt not be given alone; but corrected with half an ounce of *Juniper-berries* to an ounce of the Salt; or with ſcrapings of Nutmeg in moiſten'd Bran. If the Horſe will not eat it ſo, let it infuſe all Night in a quart of Wine, and give the infuſion lukewarm to the Horſe, faſting. If its cooling quality offends him, he will loſe his Appetite, and his Hair will briſtle and ſtare, eſpecially in the Flanks; in which caſe it ought to be ſhifted for *Cordial Pouders*; for tho' the intemperance of Men, and the inflaming Fire of their paſſions calls for

cooling

cooling Medicines; yet Horſes, who are free from ſuch commotions, ſtand rarely in need of *cooling Remedies*. However for a beating of the Flanks, and a bak'd dryneſs of the dung, three or four *Glyſters*, with two ounces of *Sal Polychreſt*, to each *Glyſter*, are of very good uſe.

An excellent Medicine for Men.

Tho' I have no deſign to invade a Phyſician's Province, I cannot but take notice of an excellent Preparation of *Sal Polychreſt* of peculiar uſe to Men, in obſtructions of the Bowels, ſtoppage of the Lungs, ſpitting of Blood, and falls; which purges gently without heating the Body. 'Tis this. *Take Sal Polychreſt, diſſolve it in Water; ſtrain the Water, and boil it till there appears a film on the top; then put it into a Wooden Veſſel, and ſet it to Cryſtalliſe in a Cellar.* Then, *take four drams of theſe Cryſtalls, one ſtalk of Liquorice, beaten, two Pugils of the flowers of double Damask Roſes, either freſh or dry; or,* inſtead of theſe, *of Violet flowers.* Put all into an *Earthen Pot*, with a *quart of boiling Water*, and let 'em ſtand in *Infuſion* all Night. In a Morning drink a large glaſsful of the Water, and another about an hour after. You may likewiſe diſſolve *half an ounce of theſe Cryſtalls, in two quarts of Water*, for a *Diet drink*, to be uſed at meals.

The golden Sulphur of Antimony.

The true preparation of the *Golden Sulphur of Antimony*, is as follows. *Take of Crude Antimony, two pounds; Tartar, a pound; fine Nitre, half a pound; make a Regulus according to Art, and boil the* Scoriæ *in a ſufficient quantity of Water, ſtirring it from time to time, till part of the* Scoriæ *be diſſolv'd.* Filtrate the ſolution thro' brown Paper, and reſerve the ſtrain'd liquor. At the ſame time, boil a *ſufficient quantity of Tartar in Wine*, ſtirring it till it be diſſolv'd, which will require a conſiderable time. Then *pour by degrees the ſolution of the Tartar, upon the ſolution*

ſolution of the Scoriæ, *in an earthen Pot*; and they'll precipitate a *brown pouder*, throwing out a ſtrong and ſtinking ſmell. Dry this pouder on brown Paper, and preſerve it for the *Golden Sulphur of Antimony*. Infuſe all Night from *half an ounce to an ounce of this Sulphur*, with a *double quantity of fine white flower*, (to keep it from falling to the bottom) in a *quart of white Wine*; and give the infuſion to your Horſe every Morning, for fifteen or twenty days; keeping him bridl'd two hours before, and three hours after.

This Remedy does admirably redreſs the lank and heated Flanks of lean and tyr'd Horſes; and diſpells thoſe humours that keep 'em from growing fat. It does not purge Horſes; but by inſenſible Tranſpiration, purifies the Blood, looſens the Skin from the Bones, cools the internal parts, opens the paſſages, and encreaſes the natural heat; for whereas other cooling Medicines make the Horſe lean, and the Hair to ſtare, and ſink the Appetite; this is attended with no ſuch inconveniency. 'Tis not only of uſe for lean and tyr'd Horſes; but likewiſe for the Cure of the *Farcin*, *Scab*, *Cough*, *Peeling of the Head*, and a *beginning Purſiveneſs*.

A cheap method of curing tyr'd Horſes.

Thoſe who cannot go to the charge of the above mention'd Medicines for Horſes tyr'd with hard riding; may blood the Horſe in the Neck; the next day inject a *Glyſter* with *an ounce and an half of Sal Polychreſt*; and the day following exhibit *a pound and a half of Oil Olive*, keeping him bridled two hours before, and after; and four days after that, give him the following *Purging* and *Comforting Potion*.

A Purging and Comforting Potion.

Take the Electuary of Diacarthamum, and fine Catholicum of Nicolaus, of each an ounce; Venice Treacle, two drams; liquid Conſerve of red Roſes, and pouder of Senna leaves, of each an ounce; Pulp of Caſſia,

Caſſia, two ounces; *juice of Liquorice, half an ounce*; *Scammony Sulphurated, two drams*; *Anniſeed and Cumminſeed, of each a dram.* Give all in a *quart of white Wine*, keeping him bridled ſix hours before, and two hours after. If this does not make a ſufficient purgation, give him a *purging Glyſter.* Feed him with *moiſten'd Hay* and *Honey'd Water.* If after all, you perceive no amendment, you muſt have recourſe to the *Cordial Pouder*, the *Golden Sulphur*, and *Glyſters*; and afterwards repeat the *Purgation.* If the *purging Potion* is too chargeable, give the Medicines preſcrib'd in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XXVI.

The method of Fattening Horſes.

FOr an eaſy, cheap, and very effectual method of *Fattening a Horſe*; after you have let him Blood; give him for his ordinary and only Drink, *a pailful of Water*, after *half a buſhel of coarſe Barley Meal* has been ſtir'd in it for a conſiderable time, and then ſuffer'd to fall to the bottom, the Water being pour'd off into another Pail: Make him eat the *Meal* remaining at the bottom, Morning, Noon, and Night; adding to it a little *Bran* or *Oats*, if he refuſes to eat it; and afterwards leſſening the quantity of the *Bran* or *Oats*, gradually, till you bring him to eat the *Meal* alone. The *Barly* muſt be ground every day, for it quickly grows ſoure. Continue this *Diet* twenty days; and when your Horſe grows luſty, take him off from it by degrees, giving him at firſt *Oats* once a day, and the *Meal* twice, and afterwards the *Meal* but once, and the *Oats* twice, and ſo on. In the mean time you may give

give him *Hay* and good *Straw*; but you must not ride him, only walk him softly about half an hour in the middle of the day.

After he has eaten *Barley Meal* eight days, give him the following *Purgative*, if you find he stands in need of it. *Take of the finest Aloes, an ounce and a half; Agarick, and Roots of Florentine Orris, of each an ounce*; beat all to pouder, and give 'em with *a quart of Milk, warm from the Cow*, keeping him bridl'd six hours before, and four hours after, without discontinuing his usual *Diet*. Since the body was cool'd before by the Diet, the purge will occasion no heat or disorder. The same Diet is an admirable preservative from several Distempers, especially at the end of a Campaign, or after a long Journey.

If the Horse loses his Appetite, when he begins to eat the *Meal*, tye a *chewing Ball* to his Bit, renewing it often; for it not only restores the Appetite, but contributes to the fattening of the Horse.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Palpitation of the Heart.

THE *Beating*, or *Palpitation of the Heart*, is a violent motion, by which it endeavours to expel something that oppresses it. 'Tis occasion'd by hard riding, violent exercise, corrupt Water, bad nourishment, and whatever produces heat or obstructions. When 'tis violent, the motion may be perceiv'd on the sides, as likewise a noise like the blows of a Hammer. Some Horses bear it without loss of Appetite, or any extraordinary beating in the Flanks. 'Tis a vehement Distemper, but it

but not mortal, unleſs it be accompanied with a *Fever*. Horſes once ſiez'd with it are uſually ſubject to it afterwards.

The *Cure* is perform'd by a frequent repetition of *Bleeding*, *Glyſters*, and *Cordial Remedies*. For *Glyſters*, I refer you to the foregoing Chapters. As for *Cordials*, you have the *Electuary of Kermes*, the *Cordial Pouder*, the *Lieutenant's Pouder*, and *the Cordial Balls*; which are to be repeated every day, or at leaſt once in two days. If the *Palpitation* be accompanied with a Vehement beating in the Flanks, give him a *quart* of a *Cordial mixture*, of the *Waters of Vipers graſs*, *Scabious Carduus Benedictus and Roſes*, with *an ounce of the Confection of Hyacinth* without *Musk* or *Ambergreeſe*, and one of the *Cordial Balls* reduc'd to pouder, rinſing the Pot and Horn with *half a pint of the ſame Cordial Waters*. Or,

An eaſy Remedy for a Palpitation of the Heart.

Take Bugloſs, Borrage and Bawm, of each a handful; boil 'em in a ſufficient quantity of Water, for the ſpace of half a quarter of an hour, till the Water be reduc'd to a pint. Then removing it from the Fire, add two handfuls of Sorrel, and let it ſtand till it be cold. Diſſolve in the ſtrain'd Liquor, an ounce and a half of the Conſerve of Roſes, half an ounce of the Confection of Hyacinth without Musk or Ambergreaſe, and ten grains of Saffron. Make your Horſe drink it lukewarm, and two hours after, give him an *Emollient Glyſter*, with *Sal Polychreſt*; repeating the *Glyſter* every ſix hours, and the *Potion* once a day; keeping him to a ſpare diet of *moiſten'd Bran*, without *Oats*, and walking him frequently at a Foot pace. When the *Palpitation* is perfectly cur'd, 'twill be convenient to give him the *purge* preſcrib'd in the foregoing Chapter; walking him next day, till the evacuation is quite over: After which, you may give

give him his usual allowance of *Oats*. This is a general method of Cure for all sorts of *Palpitations*.

For a Palpitation from an excessive heat.

If it be Summer, and if you perceive an excessive heat in the Horse's Body; let him blood in the *Neck-Vein*, and make him stand in Water up to the Neck for an hour; then give him a *draught*, compos'd of the *Waters of Vipers-grass, Scabious, Roses, and bitter Succory, of each a glass-full; with an ounce of Cream of Tartar, and four ounces of Syrup of the juice of Sorrel, or of Violets.* You may likewise give him *an ounce of Sal Polychrest, in a quart of Wine*, and walk him an hour or less, according to his strength, and afterwards give him an *Emollient* and *Cooling Glyster*, with *Sal Polychrest* in it.

For a cold Palpitation of the Heart.

If it be Winter, and no excessive heat be perceiv'd in the Horse's body; omit letting Blood, unless there be a great oppression (in which case you may open the Veins of the Thighs, or that in the Brisket) and exhibit the following *Cordial Potion.*

Take Carduus Benedictus, Sage, and Rosemary, of each a handful; boil 'em in a pint and a half of Water, to the consumption of half a pint. To the strain'd liquor add a pint of white Wine; Juniper berries, round Birthwort, Myrrh, and shavings of Ivory, of each a dram; Galangal, Cinnamon and Cloves, of each a Scruple; Saffron, six grains, all in fine pouder. Make your Horse drink this Potion lukewarm, then walk him half an hour; and two hours after give him a *Glyster of three quarts of the Emollient Decoction, with four ounces of the Carminative purging Oil; a quarter of a pound of Oil of Bay; and two ounces of Butter.*

In all caſes, you muſt be cautious of over-cooling the Horſe's Body; for, as I ſaid before, their Condition is different from that of Mens.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Fevers.

VIgorous young Horſes of a ſlender make, are often attack'd by *Putrid Fevers*; in which caſe, they ſtupidly hang their Heads, and can ſcarce keep their Eyes open; they reel as they go; the Tongue and roof of the Mouth is blackiſh, rough and dry; a great heat is ſpread over all the body; their Eyes are red, their breath hot and ſharp, and their Flanks beat violently.

As for the *Cure:* Let Blood immediately, ſometimes in the Neck, Temple, or Eye-Veins; and ſometimes in the Briſket, Flanks, or Veins of the Thighs; for Bleeding eaſes the diſtended Veſſels, allays the Heat and Ebullition; and by leſſening the quantity of the humours, gives nature an opportunity of ſubduing the reſt. Feed the Horſe with *green Barley*, *Dandelion*, and *the tops of Vine-leaves*; and that in ſuch a quantity, as is juſt ſufficient to keep him from ſtarving. For his *ordinary drink*; boil *two ounces of white Tartar*, in fine pouder, in *two quarts of Water*, for a quarter of an hour: Then pour the Decoction into a Pail-ful of Water, with a *handful* of *Barley flower*; and let him drink as much as he pleaſes.

An excellent cheap Remedy for Fevers.

Nothing is of more uſe for allaying the heat, and quieting the commotion of the humours, and provoking Urine powerfully; than what follows.

follows. *Put a quart of Water, with two ounces of Salt of Tartar in a brazen Pot, with a cover, and set it over the Fire, till the Salt be dissolv'd. Dissolve after the same manner, an ounce of Sal Armoniack in pouder, in another quart of Water.* Mix the two *Solutions* in a Pail, and fill up the Pail with Water, adding a little *Barley flower*, to qualify the unpleasant Taste. This *Febrifuge* ought always to be mix'd with his drink, for it excels *Sal Prunellæ*, and all others that can be prescrib'd. When the Horse does not eat or drink, let him be always bridled, with a *Bag* ty'd to the Bit, containing, *Assa fætida* and *Savin*, both in pouder, of each *half an ounce.*

A Cordial Potion.

Cordial Waters are very proper in this case, for they inable nature to resist the malignity, and by their moisture allay the internal heat. For instance: *Take three pints of the Waters of Scabious, Carduus Benedictus, Scorzonera, and Queen of the Meadows, with an ounce of the Confection of Alkermes.* Make the Horse drink it up; and repeat it next day, if there be occasion.

A Purging Glyster for Fevers.

Above all, *Glysters* repeated, if there be occasion, three or four times a day; relieve the Horse most effectually. *Take two ounces of the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony, in fine pouder; boil 'em in five pints of Whey, made of Cow's Milk; and after two or three brisk waums, remove it from the Fire, and immediately add two heads of Coloquintida, slic'd small;* and after 'tis half cold, press out the Liquor, to which add, *a quarter of a pound of Butter*; and inject it lukewarm. This is a *Purgative Glyster*, that must not be used daily; but the following may be repeated several times a day.

A cooling Glyſter. *Take a ſufficient quantity of the ſoftening Herbs, and Fennel-ſeed, beaten with an ounce and an half of Sal Polychreſt, and two handfuls of whole Barley.* Boil and ſtrain; adding to the ſtrain'd liquor *Oil of Roſes and Violets, of each four ounces; extracted Caſſia, or Benedictum Laxativum, three ounces.* Inject it often, and rub the Horſe now and then againſt the Hair, to give vent to the fuliginous Vapours by opening the Pores. But if the Fever continues three days without intermiſſion, you may ſuperſede all Medicines, and throw the Horſe upon the Dunghill; for in that time, the *Liver* is quite conſum'd by the heat, as appears by the Diſſection of Horſes that die of Fevers.

A Purge for a Fever. In the Declenſion of the Fever, it will be neceſſary to exhibit a Purge; for which end, I recommend the following, which purges effectually, without heating the body.

Take pouder of white Tartar, and fine Nitre, of each two ounces; put 'em in an earthen diſh, and kindle 'em with a live Coal. After the matter is ſufficiently burnt and cold, beat it to a fine pouder; put it into Water and white Wine, of each a quart, with four ounces of Senna. Let 'em ſtand all night in a cold infuſion. Then pour the ſtrain'd infuſion upon four or five drams of Scammony, in fine pouder, incorporated with half a pound of Hony prepar'd with the Herb Mercury; ſtirring all gently with a Peſtle in a Mortar. Give the whole quantity, keeping the Horſe bridled four hours before, and three hours after. Feed him with *moiſten'd Bran* inſtead of *Oats*; and twenty four hours after, walk him gently for the ſpace of an hour. This Medicine may be ſafely adminiſtred on all occaſions, without any danger of heating, or inflaming the body.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Farcin.

THE *Farcin* is a ſwelling, that frequently appears with an Ulcer, ſpreading almoſt over the whole body; caus'd by a corruption in the Blood, and a certain malignity of the humours. It has ſome affinity with the *French Pox* in Men; and is cur'd like that, by removing the cauſe, *i. e.* purifying and ſweetening the Blood; for which end, feed your Horſe with *moiſten'd Bran*, Bleed him, and two days after keep him bridled ſix hours or till Morning; at which time give him *Saſſafras Wood, Sarſaperilla, and Guaiacum, in groſs pouder, of each three ounces; in a quart of white Wine:* Rinſing the Pot and Horn, with *half a pint of the ſame Wine*; which he muſt alſo drink, and ſtand bridled ſix hours. Then give him *moiſten'd Bran* and *Hay*, and ſuffer him to eat and drink two hours. Then let him ſtand bridled all Night as before, and take the ſame Doſe next Morning; continuing the ſame method three, or, if need be, ſix days. When the knots are ripe, open 'em, if they do not break of their own accord; and having drawn out all the matter, dreſs 'em every day with the *Ointment of Portugal.*

An excellent Remedy for the Farcin.

If a *Farcin* be of ſo long ſtanding, that the Liver and Lungs are corrupted and waſted; or that it is accompanied with a running at the Noſe, or ſiezes on the Kernels; or that the knots void great pieces of fleſh, like large Muſhroons; no Cure is to be expected, eſpecially after a ſucceſsleſs adminiſtration

Of an inveterate Farcin.

of the foregoing Remedies. However, if the Lungs are only dry'd, and but ſlightly ulcerated, ſomewhat may be done; or becauſe the condition of the Lungs is not eaſily trac'd, 'twill be proper to make a trial, by making the Horſe champ twenty four hours together, upon *two ounces* of *Aſſa fætida*, ſpread upon a ſtick, and wrap'd up in a cloath, without ſuffering him to eat or drink all the while; for a Horſe may faſt ſo long without danger. By this means he will caſt forth a prodigious quantity of filthy humours; and, if the Lungs be not conſum'd, or the Liver ulcerated, he may recover. And perhaps it would not be amiſs to put a ſecond ſtick of freſh *Aſſa fætida*, into his Mouth, after twelve hours.

This done; if the Horſe be fleſhy and full of raw, tough, and viſcous humours; like your *Dutch* bulky Horſes: *Infuſe ten ounces of the ſhavings of Guaiacum wood, or, for want of that, of Box wood, in nine pints of Water, for twelve hours, on hot Aſhes. Then boil with a gentle heat in a cover'd Veſſel, to the conſumption of the third part of the Water.* Give the Horſe a quart of the ſtrain'd liquor every day, for eight days together, keeping him bridled three hours before and after; and then *purge* him, for the Decoction attenuats and prepares the humour for *Evacuation.*

If the Horſe be lean, dry and cholerick; *Put four ounces of China Roots, cut very ſmall, into a large glaſs Bottle, well ſtop'd. After they've infus'd fifteen hours, boil 'em over a gentle Fire, in a cover'd Veſſel, to the conſumption of one half.* Give your Horſe a *third part* of the ſtrain'd liquor lukewarm, every Morning, keeping him bridled two hours before and after. It muſt be prepar'd freſh every three days, becauſe 'tis apt to ſowre. After eight Doſes, purge him, for this Decoction prepares

prepares the humours for Evacuation, without augmenting the heat.

For a Horſe of a middling nature, give, for ſix or eight days, the Decoction of *Sarſaperilla*, prepar'd like that of *China*, only allowing a third part more of *Sarſaperilla*, becauſe 'tis to prepare thicker humours, in order to purgation; which ſucceeds much better after a ſuitable preparation of the humours.

After *Purgation*, repeat the *Decoctions* to dry the habit of the Body. The ſame method of *Cure* is alſo very effectual for Coach Horſes troubled with *pains* or *filthy Sores* in their Legs; for this extirpates the cauſe, and prevents relapſes, which other methods will not do. Inſtead of the Decoctions, you may *exhibit two ounces of* the *pouder* of the reſpective ingredients, in a *quart of white Wine*, tho' indeed the pouders are not altogether ſo good, as the Decoctions; eſpecially that of *China* for lean, dry, and cholerick Horſes. *Saſſafras* in pouder, is no deſpicable Medicine.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Ebullition of the Blood, or Blood-Running Itch.

LOng reſt, and want of exerciſe, hindring the diſſipation of ſuperfluous humours; do uſually occaſion a redundancy of Blood, upon which its ſubtiler part penetrating the ſubſtance of the fleſh, cauſes external tumours, oftentimes miſtaken for the *Farcin*; tho' the ſuddenneſs of their appearance, and their eaſy Cure, together with their ſoftneſs and looſeneſs, are plain diſtinguiſhing marks.

This Diſtemper is eaſily cur'd by bleeding plentifully once or twice in the *Neck Veins.* If unſeaſonable bleeding occaſions a Fever, by repelling the humour, you muſt immediately inject a *Glyſter*, and an hour after give *an ounce* or *two* of *Venice Treacle or Diateſſaron* in *Wine*; which will drive out the humour, and at laſt cure the Horſe.

Sometimes the exceſſive heat and boiling of the Blood, occaſions its forming it ſelf into little knots, or bunches, in ſeveral parts of the body; which is effectually cur'd by giving every day *an ounce and an half of Liver of Antimony*; or *three or four Doſes of Cinnabar Pills*; for ſuch Medicines cool and purify the Blood. *Sal Prunellæ* given in the Horſe's Bran, will prevent this Diſtemper, by expelling the bilious ſeroſities, and that perhaps by Urine.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Molten Greaſe.

THE Molten Greaſe is a Diſtemper, to which fat Horſes are moſt ſubject; for their tough ſlimy humours (miſtaken for melted fat) are by virtue of an agitation and a provident ſtruggle of nature, thrown into the Guts, in order to Evacuation; and this caſe is beſt known, by putting ones hand into the Horſe's Fundament, for if the *greaſe* is *molten*, a whitiſh film will cover the excrements thus drawn forth.

Upon the leaſt ſuſpicion of the *Molten Greaſe*; put into the Horſe's Fundament, your hand and arm, anointed with *freſh Butter*; and draw forth not only the Dung, but all the ſlimy humours.

After

After you have rak'd him carefully, let him blood in the Neck; and half an hour after inject a *Glyster*, of *two ounces of Benedictum Laxativum*, *one ounce of Sal Gemmæ*, (or *Sal Polychrest*, or the *Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony*) *and a quarter of a pound of Hony of Violets*; all dissolv'd in *two quarts of the common Decoction*; adding *Emetick Wine*, *and the Urine of a sound Man*, *of each a pint*. Then walk him gently, for half an hour, to make the *Glyster* work. After that, give him about *half a pint of the juice of Housleek*, mix'd with *a pint of white Wine*, walking him gently for the space of an hour; for that *juice*, both cools, cleanses and heals: Afterwards repeat the *Glyster*, and indeavour by all means to retrieve his appetite.

I have often administred the following *Glyster*, with very good success. After you have rak'd your Horse, and allow'd him some time to rest, cut the Neck of a *young Sheep* or *great Lamb* in the Stable, receive the *Blood* into a hot Pipe, and inject it warm by way of *Glyster*; to be repeated every twelve hours, instead of all other *Glysters*; for it moistens and tempers the Guts, and is seldom or never thrown out till the usual time of dunging, when it appears clotted among the Excrements.

When the Disease is of longer standing, bleed your Horse, and half an hour after, give him two *stinking Pills* in *a pint of Wine*, or of *Beer* if it be in Summer; an hour after repeat the same dose; and after a like interval, repeat it again. Half an hour after the last Dose, inject the following *Glyster*. *Boil two ounces of the Scoriæ of Liver of Antimony*, *reduc'd to fine pouder*, *in five pints of Beer or Whey*; *after two or three brisk waums*, *remove the Vessel from the Fire*, *and adding a quarter of a pound of fresh Butter*, inject the *Glyster* blood warm. For

want

want of the *Glyſter*; you may thruſt a piece of *Soap* into the Fundament.

If the Diſtemper be extreamly Violent, and the Horſe is very reſtleſs and troubled with a vehement Palpitation of the Heart; and if a great deal of ſlime is drawn out of the Fundament; give him a *Glyſter*, of *Sheep's Blood warm*, every two hours: If the Violence of the Diſeaſe ſtill continues, 'twill be convenient to give him three *Doſes* of the *Pills*, two or three hours, after the laſt of the former *Doſes*; without fearing the ill conſequences of giving ſo large a Doſe; for the heat of theſe *Pills* is qualified by the *Antimony*, and the *fix'd Salt*, with which they abound.

This method will always ſucceed, if it be ſeaſonably begun; but if the firſt inſults are over-look'd, 'tis a dangerous caſe. If this Diſeaſe is attended by a running of much matter at the Noſe; 'tis a ſign of death; eſpecially if the humours are frothy. If it be caus'd by violent exerciſe, or overheating, 'tis a hard matter to cure it. I have obſerv'd ſome Horſes ſiez'd with it in the Stable, others after very moderate riding; and others again after the violent agitation of the Body, occaſion'd by *Colick pains*; in all which caſes the Cure is the ſame.

Since the ſtinking Pills, mention'd but now, are of excellent uſe for Horſes, not only in this, but in many other Diſtempers; 'twill not be improper to take a view of their Compoſition. 'Tis this,

The ſtinking Pills for Molten Greaſe, Foundering, Colick and Fevers.

Take the reddeſt and cleareſt Aſſa fœtida, *Bayberries of* Provence *or* Italy, *and Liver of Antimony, of each an equal quantity; beat 'em to pouder, and mix 'em carefully with a Peſtle, in a large Mortar, pouring on by degrees, a ſufficient quantity of Vinegar, to*

to incorporate 'em. Make Pills weighing fourteen drams each, to be dried on the bottom of a hair Sieve, and kept as long as you will. In the Ancient Compoſition, the *Liver of Antimony* was left out. But I chooſe to add it, becauſe it renders the Pills more agreeable to the Stomach, and more proper and ſafe in Fevers; and by promoting the inſenſible Tranſpiration, quickens the ſlow operation of the *Aſſa fætida.* This method of mixing all the pouders together, is much preferable to the former way of diſſolving the *Aſſa fætida* in *Vinegar*, and evaporating the ſolution to the thickneſs of Hony, and then adding the pouders; for by this means the *Volatile Salt* of the *Aſſa fætida* is retain'd, which in the other way would evaporate with the ſteams of the *Vinegar*; and the unſupportable ſtench and ſharp ſmell that uſually cauſes violent Head-aches, is corrected. Some would perſuade us, that the *Volatile Salt* of the *Aſſa fætida*, is lodg'd in an Oily viſcous ſubſtance, uncapable of evaporating with the Vinegar; but I am not of their opinion. Indeed, if the reddiſh pure *Aſſa fætida*, without any mixture of Earth or Wood, cannot be had; 'twill then be not only allowable, but neceſſary to diſſolve the impure *Gum* in *Vinegar*, and evaporate the ſtrain'd ſolution to the thickneſs of Hony, and make Pills of that with the other pouders; becauſe thoſe Impurities would weaken their virtues. But at the ſame time they are certainly inferiour to thoſe prepar'd the other way. *Aſſa fætida*, the chief Ingredient of theſe Pills, is a Gum that grows in the *Indies* on a Buſh, with ſmall leaves reſembing *Rue*; and that in ſtony and dry places. It appears about the end of *Summer*, and is gather'd in *Autumn.* Notwithſtanding its ſtench, the *Indians* uſe it in their Sawces, and anoint their

Pots,

Pots and drinking Veſſels with it. The beſt *Aſſa fætida* grows in the Province of *Utrad*, in the *Indies*; for that which comes from *Perſia*, grows on a Plant, with leaves like thoſe of a *Fig-tree*, and is much inferior to the other.

Theſe Pills are ſo univerſally uſeful, and withal ſo cheap and portable, that no body ſhould be without 'em. In the *molting of the Greaſe*, and *Foundering*, they are of ſingular uſe; if they be given as I directed above; only if the Horſe be founder'd, as ſoon as you let him Blood, you muſt pick his Feet, and pour *Oil of Bay* into his fore-Feet, ſtopping them with Flax, and laying hot Embers upon the Flax, with *Splents* over all; and renew the ſame Application thrice, once every ſix or four hours; and twenty four hours after ſuffer him to lie down. The Horſe muſt neither eat nor drink, for four hours after the laſt of the three Doſes; nay, 'twould be convenient to keep him twenty four hours from drinking, and two or three days from *Hay* or *Oats*.

Three Doſes of theſe Pills, exhibited according to the above mentioned method, may perhaps cure that fatal kind of *Colick*, call'd the *red Gripes*; being follow'd by a *Glyſter* of *warm Sheep's*, *or Calf's Blood*. In *Fevers* they are very proper, the Horſe being carefully cover'd up after the firſt *Doſe*; adding another *Doſe* next morning, together with frequent *Glyſters*; for tho' the beating of his Flanks increaſes at firſt, it will abate quickly after.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Worms, Bots, or Trunchions, bred in the body of a Horse.

Worms are the product of crude undigested humours. The Remedies prescrib'd against *Worm Colicks* are proper on this occasion. To which we may add the following pouder.

A pouder for Worms.

Take the seeds of Coriander, Lettuce, Rapes and Colewort, of each two ounces; Zedoary, an ounce; shavings of Hartshorn, four ounces: Make a *pouder*. Dose, *two ounces* a day with *Oats* or *Bran* moisten'd with *Wine* for twelve days together; after which, give your Horse a proper *purge*; for Purgation is always necessary in this case.

A Steel Medicine for Worms.

The following Remedy is also very proper for killing *Worms*. *Take an ounce of the filings of Steel, mixt with moisten'd Bran*; give it to your Horse daily, till he has eaten a whole *pound*; and then *purge* him. This *Steel course* is very proper for Horses return'd from the Camp, or from a long Journey; for *Worms* are oftentimes the hidden cause of their not thriving. Besides, *Steel* is an excellent Medicine against all obstructions whatsoever.

The *pouder* of *Earthworms* dry'd in an oven, in an earthen Pot, cover'd, after they have vomited up all their filth by lying six hours in clean Water; giving every morning from *one* to *two ounces* in a *quart of good Wine*, for seven or eight days; is an effectual Remedy against *Worms*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of Swaying of the Back, and Falls.

IF the Ligaments of the Bones of the Back are ſtretch'd by a fall; the back is ſaid to be *ſway'd*: and if a Vein be broken within the body, the extravaſated Blood curdles, and putrefies, and produces very dangerous Diſtempers. *Mules* are more ſubject to the *ſwaying of the Back*, than *Horſes*; becauſe the Ridge of their Back being higher, is not ſo firmly ſupported by their Ribs.

For the Cure; take two pounds of Blood from the *Neck-Veins* immediately; and having chaf'd his Back with your hand, till it grow warm, apply two large *ſcarifying Cupping-glaſſes*, one on each ſide, where he complains moſt of pain, or where the extravaſated Blood is lodg'd. Then put your Horſe into a frame, and hang him up; or elſe encloſe him with Grates, ſo that he cannot move his body, and let him remain in that poſture five or ſix Weeks. Then rub upon his Back, *equal quantities of Spirit of Wine, and Oil of Turpentine*, ſhaken together in a Viol till they grow white as *Milk*; after which, apply the *red Hony Charge* hot, adding, *half an ounce of Galls*, at every Application; and applying a freſh *charge* every time, without taking away the former. This application will occaſion a ſwelling of the Back; which may afterwards be remov'd by the *Baths* and *Fomentations* preſcrib'd againſt *ſwellings*. In want of the *Hony Charge*, you may apply the *Ointment of Montpelier* for two or three days; and then proceed to the *Fomentations*. If your Horſe voids blood ſtill at the

Mouth

Mouth or Nose, give him every day *Sal Polychrest, and Juniper-berries beaten, of each an ounce, in a pint of red Wine*, for eight days together: And for the first four days inject every day an *Anodyne Glyster*, after you have rak'd his Fundament.

If these Remedies prove successless, as it often happens in very great strains: Make two or three incisions with a large Iron slice, and separate the Skin from the flesh on the Reins, (or that part of the back that lies behind a little Saddle) about the breadth of half a Foot, on each side of the back bone, till you come to the Hip-bone. Then stop the holes with slices of *Hog's-lard*, of the thickness of half a Crown, and two or three Fingers breadth long and broad, to hinder the Skin from growing to the flesh. Rub the separate Skin with an *Ointment* made of *equal parts of Populeum, and the Ointment of Marshmallows*; covering the whole part with a *Lamb's-Skin*, the woolly side inwards; and laying a Saddle cloth over all. Then hang up your Horse, or fix him in such a posture, that he may not be able to stir; and give him a *Glyster* every Night of *Sal Polychrest*; and every day a *Potion* of *an ounce* of *Assa fætida* in pouder, mixt with a *pint* of *Wine*; for eight days together. After forty eight hours uncover the sore place; and you will find it very much swollen; as it must be in order to the *Cure*. Take out the *Lard*, and press out the reddish matter in the Sore. Then put in fresh pieces of *Lard*, and chafe the whole part with the above mention'd *Ointment*; after that, cover it up as before; and dress it after the same manner, once in forty eight hours, for the space of twelve days. After which, omit the *Lard*, and dress it with the *Duke's Ointment*, keeping it cover'd and dressing it every day, till the Skin be reunited to the flesh, and the Sores heal'd. Twenty

two

two days after the beginning of the *Cure*, you may take away the *Lamb's-Skin*; and ten days after that ſuffer the Horſe to ſtir, walking him a little; and ſo accuſtoming him to Travel by degrees.

Inſtead of ſeparating the Skin, you may give the Fire (which is an eaſier, and no leſs effectual Remedy) piercing the Skin with a red hot Iron, and making holes all over the ſame part, at the diſtance of an Inch from each other. Then apply a good Plaiſter, and over that, two Sheets of Paper; after which, hang up your Horſe for a month; and when the Scabs are fallen, dreſs the Sores with the *Duke*'s *Ointment*, and proceed as before.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the ſwelling of the Cods or Stones; and of bruis'd or hard Stones.

THE ſwelling of the *Cods* or *Stones*, may proceed from a ſerous humour that deſcends along the production of the *Peritonæum*; or from a Defluxion, occaſion'd by the ſtroke of another Horſe; or from a *Rupture* or downfall of the Guts, occaſion'd by a ſtrain.

Of an Inflammation of the Cods.

If it be only a ſlight *Inflammation*, riding the Horſe into the cold Water, will repel it. But if the Inflammation be violent, you muſt apply the following *Pultis*. *Take yellow Wax, freſh Butter, and Oil Olive, of each half a pound; ſtrong Vinegar, half a pint; boil 'em together till the Vinegar be almoſt*

almoſt conſum'd. Then remove the Veſſel from the Fire; and adding an ounce of Camphyr; make a Pultis; to be applied to the ſwoollen Cods, and renew'd after four hours, without taking away the former, or covering the part. This will remove the heat and pain; and the ſwelling too, if it be a ſimple inflammation. But if the ſwelling continues ſtill, and the Stones hang low, after the heat and pain are gone; 'tis a ſign of an *Hydrocele*, *i.e.* that by a relaxation of the *Peritonæum*, the Cods are fill'd with Water; which, if retain'd, may corrupt the Stones, and occaſion a fatal *Gangrene*. In which caſe, after the application of the former *Pultis*; you muſt make a ſort of *Gruel* of *Barley-meal* and *Vinegar*, and when 'tis almoſt boil'd, add *half the quantity of Chalk*, with a *ſufficient quantity of Oil of Roſes* and *Quinces*, and *two Pugils of Salt*; and apply it as hot as you can touch it with your hand, binding it on very carefully. Or, inſtead of that, boil a *ſufficient quantity* of *Beans* in the *Lees of Wine*, till they grow ſoft; then beat 'em to a *Maſh*; to *two pounds* of which, add *half an ounce of Caſtor* in fine pouder, and ſew all up in a Bag, large enough to cover the Stones, to be bound on as hot as it can be ſuffer'd, the Cods being firſt anointed with the *Ointment* or *Oil of Roſes*. Twenty four hours after, anoint again, and heat the *Bag* in the ſame *Lees of Wine*, in which the *Beans* were boil'd; continuing to renew the Application after the ſame manner, till the ſwelling be abated.

Of an Hydrocele.

A Reſolvent Pultis.

If all proves ineffectual, and the Stones hang very low, and feel as if they contain'd a great deal of Water, you muſt geld your Horſe at the Full-Moon; and, if the Stones were not Ulcerated, th Wound may be eaſily heal'd.

A Cure for a Rupture. When by a relaxation of the *Peritonæum*, the Guts fall into the Cods, you muſt indeavour to put up the fallen Gut with your hands; or if you cannot do it otherwiſe, caſt the Horſe on his Back on ſoft ground, and bind his two Legs on each ſide together; and having bath'd the Stones with lukewarm Water, put up the Guts with your hand. Then apply the following *Bag.*

Take the roots of Comfrey, the bark of the Pomgranate and Oak-Trees, Cyprus Nuts, green Oak Apples, Sumach and Barberries, of each four ounces; Annis and Fennel-ſeed, of each two ounces; flowers of Pomgranats, Chamomil, and Melilot, of each two handfuls; pouder of crude Allum, half a pound. Put 'em altogether into a bag, large enough to cover the Stones, and ſew it after the manner of a Quilt. Then boil this Bag for two hours in a large potful of *Sloe-Wine*; or, for want of that, of *thick red Wine*; after which, apply it moderatly hot to the Stones, tying it on dexterouſly with a *Bandage* paſſing round the Flanks, and ty'd on the Rump; heating the *Quilt* in the ſame *Wine*, every twenty four hours; and continuing the uſe of it for a conſiderable time. Afterwards the Cods may be fomented with *Adſtringent Baths.*

I have ſeen ſome Truſſes for Horſes, ſo dexterouſly made; that they could leap very well with them. But the ſureſt Remedy is to geld the Horſe, after the Guts are put up; for ſo the Cods ſhrink up, and the Guts fall no more down into 'em.

Of Bruis'd or hard Stones. Sometimes the Stone grows dry and hard, by reaſon of a Contuſion, when a Horſe entangles himſelf among the Bars that are ſet up to ſeparate him from other Horſes; and ſometimes a Defluxion falls upon the Liga-

Ligaments by which the Stone hangs, which is more dangerous.

If the hardneſs and contuſion be not very ſtubborn, it may be cur'd; by applying the following *Paltis. Take Hony and freſh Butter melted, of each half a pound; juice of green Coleworts, a pound; leaves of Rue, without the Stalks, a large handful; black Soap, a quarter of a pound; Bean Flower, a pound.* Stamp the *Rue* in a Marble Mortar, then add the *Hony*, and afterwards the *juice of Coleworts*, *Butter*, and *black Soap.* Mix 'em well without heat, and, with the *Bean Flower*, make a *Paltis* to be applied cold with a Hog's Bladder, and kept on with a Bandage ty'd about the Horſe's Back; renewing the Application every day. If the ſwelling be accompanied with a great Inflammation, add to the whole Compoſition, *two drams of Camphyr*, diſſolv'd in three Spoonfulls of *Spirit of Wine.* But if the tumour be ſeated in the Ligaments above the Stone; you muſt chafe the part with *Spirit of Wine Camphorated*, before you apply the *Cataplaſm.*

If there is matter generated in the Stone, apply to the part where the matter ſeems to be ſeated, *Emplaſtrum Divinum*, ſpread on very ſoft Leather; then apply the *Paltis*; and, if there be any matter, the *Plaiſter* will draw it. The *Plaiſter* muſt be taken off once a day, but needs not be chang'd.

You muſt let the Horſe blood in the beginning and end of the Cure; and give him two ounces of *Sal Prunellæ* every day mix'd with *Bran*, which muſt be his only food.

If the matter appears ſo high above the Stones, that it cannot be conveniently evacuated, you muſt open a Paſſage with a red hot Iron at the bottom of the *Cod*, without touching the Stone.

Then anoint the *Cod* with *Baſilicum*, and lay over it *Beet-leaves* ſmear'd with *Butter*; putting into the hole a Tent anointed with *Emplaſtrum Divinum* melted in *Oil of Roſes:* which indeed is an excellent Remedy, in all caſes, where a Sore is requir'd to be kept open.

This Method regularly purſu'd, will certainly cure the Horſe without *Gelding*; which is to no purpoſe, when the Malady is ſeated in the *Ligaments*; and is always dangerous, till the pain be aſſwag'd and the defluxion ſtopt.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Lask, Looſneſs, or Flux of the Belly.

THE *Lask* or *Flux*, which is frequently fatal to Horſes, is occaſion'd by ſuch a weakneſs of the Stomach, that the Food paſſes thro' the Guts almoſt without any alteration, (which is a very dangerous caſe;) or by the corruption of Humours either gather'd in the Stomach, or thrown upon it from other Parts. The External Cauſes, are, eating too much Provender, feeding upon mouldy or rotten Hay, frozen Graſs, Rye-ſtraw, and other unwholeſom Nouriſhment; drinking very cold Water, immoderate Fatigue, exceſſive Fatneſs, drinking immediately after the eating of a great quantity of Oats; and ſometimes, want of Exerciſe. If the Excrements voided boil and ferment upon the Ground, the Diſtemper proceeds from overheated Choler, and is rarely dangerous, nay ſometimes profitable. If the Excrements are white, 'tis a ſign of

of crude cold Humours; if they be watery, they denote a great weakneſs of the Stomach. *Looſneſſes* occaſion'd by drinking cold Water in Summer, or melted Snow, or eating tender Graſs, or other looſening things; are not to be regarded. But thoſe which come without a manifeſt External Cauſe, ought never to be neglected.

As for the *Cure:* If the Excrements are mix'd with ſmall pieces or ſcrapings of the Guts; you muſt immediately endeavour to prevent a fatal Ulcer in thoſe Parts, by giving two or three times a day a pint of a *cooling ſoftning Decoction*; viz. *Of two ounces of Barley, the like quantity of the roots of Marſh-mallows, and an ounce of the pouder of Sal Prunellæ*; boil'd in *three quarts* of *Water* to a *quart*. If the Diſtemper is caus'd by *Flegm*, you muſt have recourſe to *Cordial Pouders*, or *Pills*; and other hot Remedies, capable to ſtrengthen the Stomach, and relaxated Parts.

Sometimes a *Looſneſs* is a ſeaſonable Effort of Nature, to free it ſelf of a troubleſom load of Humours: But if it continues above three Days, with the loſs of Appetite, it muſt be ſeaſonably check'd; for ſometimes Horſes are *founder'd* by its long continuance.

In this caſe, the Horſe's Food may be *Bran* moiſten'd with *Claret*, or *Barley* parch'd on a Peel, and then grownd; and the beſt Hay. But *Oats* are altogether improper. As for *Remedies*, you may begin with a *ſcouring Glyſter*, viz.

A Scowring Glyſter.

Take Wheat-bran well ſifted, and whole Barley, of each two handfuls; red Roſes, a handful; true Opium ſliced ſmall, half a dram; boil 'em in Whey or ſteel'd Water for the ſpace of a quarter of an hour; then add the leaves of wild Succory, Agrimony, Beets, white Mullein, and

Mercury, of each a handful. In two quarts of the ſtrain'd Decoction diſſolve the yolks of ſix Eggs; Honey of Roſes and brown Sugar, of each four ounces. Mix, and make a *Glyſter*. After the Operation of the *Glyſter*, give him *two ounces of liver of Antimony*, or *half an ounce of the golden Sulphur of Antimony*, in moiſten'd *Bran:* Perſiſting in this Method for a conſiderable time; for theſe Medicines corroborate the Guts, and allay the Fermentation of the Humours. This done, you may inject an *adſtringent Glyſter:* for inſtance,

A Binding Glyſter.

Take Knotgraſs (or Shepherd's-purſe) and white Mullein, of each a handful; Plantan-leaves, two handfuls; wild Pomgranate-flowers, half a handful; the ſeeds of Myrtle, Lettuce, and Plantan; of each two ounces. Beat the Seeds, and boil 'em in three quarts of Beer or Barley-water, with half a dram of good Opium cut into thin ſlices; then put in the Herbs, and afterwards a handful of dry'd Roſes. Add to the ſtraining, half a pound of Honey of Roſes, and four ounces of Sugar of Roſes. Make a *Glyſter.*

A Potion for the Flux.

If the *Flux* be not ſtopp'd by the uſe of the *Antimony*, you may continue to repeat the *Glyſters*; and at the ſame time, give the following *Potion. Take eight large or ten ſmall Nutmegs, put 'em upon a point of a Knife, and hold 'em over a Candle till they be burnt to a red coal; then caſt 'em into a quart of Claret, breaking them with your fingers; and after they have ſtood in infuſion all Night, ſtrain out the Wine in the Morning*, and make your Horſe drink it blood-warm; keeping him bridled two Hours before and after. This is an Excellent Remedy for Men, as well as Horſes.

For

A Remedy for a Superpurgation.

For a *Superpurgation* in a Horſe: *Take of Plantane-leaves in Summer, or the ſeeds in Winter, a ſufficient quantity. Boil 'em in three quarts of Beer; and add to the ſtraining,* Catholicum, *two ounces; Rhubarb and Seal'd Earth, of each four ounces.* Make a *Glyſter,* to be repeated twice or thrice. In the mean time, exhibit a *Potion* of *two quarts of Milk,* in which you have quench'd *Steel* five or ſix times; mix'd with *two ounces of the ſtones of roaſted Grapes, and an ounce and a half of the ſhavings of Ivory, calcin'd, and beaten to a very fine pouder.*

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Falling of the Fundament.

THE Falling-out of the Fundament is occaſion'd by a violent Flux, or the Piles, obliging the Horſe to ſtrain violently; or (as it often happens) by cutting off the Tail; in which caſe, if it is accompany'd with a great ſwelling, 'tis almoſt always a fatal ſign of a *Gangrene* ſpreading towards the Back: and if it does not quickly yield to the ordinary Remedies, the Horſe may be given over for loſt.

This Malady ought never to be neglected; for it may be attended with dangerous Conſequences: And therefore you muſt anoint the place with *Oil of Roſes* bloodwarm, and afterwards endeavour to put it up. After two or three ſucceſsleſs attempts, you muſt have recourſe to what follows.

Beat ſix drams of the Salt of Lead in a Mortar, pouring on it by degrees a ſufficient quantity of

Goats-Milk, (or, for want of that, of Cows-Milk) till they aſſume the conſiſtency of a liquid Ointment. Anoint the Part with this Ointment; and put into the Fundament a Tent dipt in the ſame: repeating the Application from time to time. Or,

Take pouder of burnt Oyſter-ſhells, two ounces; the green middle bark of an Aſh-tree beaten, four ounces; (or, for want of that, two ounces of the dry bark;) good Honey, a quarter of a pound; and half a pound of the leaven'd Dough of a Rye-loaf ready to be put into the Oven. Make a *Pultis* without heat, to be apply'd cold to the Fundament; renewing the Application every twelve hours.

If theſe Applications are not attended with ſucceſs; as ſoon as the inflammation and great heat are remov'd, you muſt cut off the part of the Fundament that hangs out, with a ſharp Knife, heated red-hot, to prevent a Flux of Blood.

If the Fundament ſhrinks into its place when the Horſe reſts, and falls out again when he trots, 'tis a ſign of a *Fiſtula:* in which caſe, the beſt and moſt ſucceſsful way, is to tye a piece of ſtrong Packthread about it, and cut it quite off with a red-hot Knife; anointing the Wound afterwards every day with *Album Rhaſis*, and then rubbing the Fleſh with *Siccativum Rubrum.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of Warts, Chops, Pains, Ratt-tails, Mules, and other foul and Watery Sores in a Horse's Legs; and of swollen and gouty Legs, occasion'd by such Sores: together with a description of the Composition and Virtues of the white Honey-Charge.

ONE of the best Secrets in the world for *Warts* in Horses limbs, and likewise for the *Knots* of the *Farcin*; is the following *Recipe.* *Warts.*

Put three ounces of pouder of Copperas into a Crucible, with an ounce of Arsenick in pouder. Place the Crucible in a Charcoal-fire, stirring the matter from time to time, but carefully avoiding the steams. Continue a pretty smart degree of heat, till the whole matter be somewhat reddish; then take the Crucible off the fire, and, after 'tis cool'd, break it, and beat the matter to a very fine pouder. Incorporate four ounces of this pouder with five ounces of Album Rhasis; and make an Ointment to be applied cold to the *Warts*, anointing them slightly every day; and they will fall off like kernels of Nuts, without causing any swelling in the Legs. But you must take care, to anoint only the *Warts*, and neither to work nor ride the Horse during the application of the *Ointment.* When the *Warts* are fallen off, which will happen in a Month's time; dress the Sores with the *Countess's Ointment*, and in a Month more the Cure will be compleated; for the Sores are usually very deep, when the Warts are large.

Some-

Of Cracks or Chops.

Sometimes a ſharp malignant Humour fretting the Skin, occaſions *Cleſts* and *Chops* on the bought of the *Paſterns*; which are accompanied with Pain and a very noiſom ſtench. In this caſe, ſhave away the Hair from the ſore place, in order to keep it clean; and apply the *white Honey-Charge* or the *Coachman's Ointment*, which will quickly heal the Chops, if you renew the Application from time to time. If foul Fleſh retards the Cure, touch it with *Spirit of Vitriol* two hours before the application of the *Charge*. The *Oil* of *Hempſeed*, or that of *Linſeed* ſhak'd in a Vial with an equal quantity of *Brandy*, is alſo very proper to qualifie the ſharp Humours, and to heal and dry up the *Chops*. If theſe Remedies do not operate effectually, apply one of the *drying Ointments*. When a Horſe is ſubject to theſe *Cleſts*, I take it to be the beſt way, to keep the *Paſterns* continually ſhav'd, and to cut the Hair off thoſe places as often as the Mane, taking care not to cut the *Fetlock*.

Of the Pains and watery Sores in the Legs.

Sometimes a ſtinking fretting Matter iſſues out of the Pores, and deadens the Skin of the *Paſtern* and *Fetlock* Joynt, and even of the whole Leg; and ſometimes is ſo corroſive, that it looſens the Hoof from the Cronet at the Heel, appearing on the Skin with a white colour. This is always uſher'd in by a ſwelling, and accompanied with pain; and at laſt aſſumes ſuch a venemous quality, that 'tis ſucceeded by Warts and Clefts. It appears uſually at the firſt ſide of the Paſterns, and afterwards aſcends to the middle of the Leg, peeling off ſome part of the Hair. If it continues any time, the whole Part is over-run with Warts, Clefts, and Nodes, which make the Cure very difficult. As for the *Cure:* Take away two pounds of

of Blood as ſoon as you perceive it; then give him every Morning for eight days together, the *Decoction of Guaiacum* or *Box Wood*, and afterwards *purge* him; obſerving the ſame method as was preſcrib'd for an *inveterate Farcin.* This method will remove and prevent all ſorts of Infirmities in the Legs of Coach Horſes. In the mean time you muſt immediately ſhave away the Hair, and, if the Leg be not gourded, rub the ſore places very hard with a Wiſp, and then apply the following *Ointment.*

An Ointment to dry up Watry Sores.

Take a pound of black Soap; an ordinary glaſs-ful of Spirit of Wine; two ounces of common Salt beaten ſmall; three ounces of burnt Allum; with a ſufficient quantity of Meal, make an Ointment, to be applied to the place without any bandage, or cover. The next day waſh the part very clean with a new made *Lye*, and ſo renew the application of the *Ointment* from time to time.

The Ointment of *Oldenburgh* for the ſame uſe.

Take two pounds of Common Hony; put 'em in a new glaz'd Pot, over a very ſmall Fire. As ſoon as it begins to boil, remove it from the Fire, and incorporate with it Verdigreaſe in fine pouder, and white Vitriol groſly beaten, of each four ounces. Then ſet the Pot again on a ſmall Fire, ſtirring the matter, and add two ounces of Galls, in very fine pouder. Take it off again from the Fire, and after ſtirring it for ſome time, add an ounce of Sublimate, beaten very ſmall, ſtirring all together till they be cold. And then you may make it ſtronger, by adding *four ounces of Aqua fortis.* This *Ointment* may be kept a long time. Anoint the Sore ſlightly with it every day. For Warts indeed you need not be ſo cautious. If the

Legs

Legs are not gourdy, this will certainly do. But if the Legs are ſwollen and gourdy, you muſt take what follows.

A Water for Pains and Warts in ſwollen and gourdy Legs.

Take white Vitriol and Allum, of each a pound and a half; boil 'em in a clean glaz'd Earthen Pot, with *five pints* of *Water*, to the conſumption of *one half*. Cut off the Hair, and make the Sore very clean, and bath it every Evening with this *Water*; which is the beſt Medicine I ever us'd.

The Coachman's Ointment for Sores in Legs that are not gourdy.

If the Legs are not *Gourdy*, the following *Ointment* is a cheap and effectual Remedy for *Pains*, *Clefts*, *Mules*, and *Rat-Tails*. *Take common Hony, and pouder of Copperas, of each a pound and a half*; *mix 'em in a Pot, over a gentle fire, ſtirring 'em conſtantly till they begin to boil*; *then take off the Pot, and when the matter is half cold, add an ounce of Arſenick in pouder. Then ſet it on the Fire again, ſtirring it till it begins to boil. Then take it off*; *ſtirring it perpetually till it grows cold, but ſo as to avoid the noiſome ſmell.* Anoint the part ſlightly with this *Ointment*, once every two days, the part being firſt ſhav'd and rub'd with a wiſp. If you lay either *this*, or *Oldenburg*'s *Ointment*, too thick upon the part, 'twill raiſe a Scab inſtead of drying up the Sore.

A Cure for gourdy Legs, occaſion'd by theſe Sores.

The ſwellings accompanying theſe Sores, are cur'd by ſhaving the Hair about the ſore place very cloſe, and anointing every day with *Oil of Linſeed*, mix'd and ſhaken with *Brandy*; renewing the mixture every time it is uſed. If that does not ſucceed, you muſt apply the *white Hony Charge*, renewing it every day, and at every dreſſing, wiping away all the matter with *Flax*. If the *Gourdy* Legs are cover'd with *Warts*, the following

following Remedy will make 'em fall away by degrees; being call'd, by reaſon of the durableneſs of its effect, the Perpetual Cauſtick.

Lapis Infernalis, or the Perpetual Cauſtick.

Put *an ounce* of *ſtrong Aqua fortis*, with *half an ounce* of *Silver-Lace*, burnt, waſh'd, and dry'd into a Matrice; placing it on *hot Aſhes*, till the Silver be diſſolv'd, which quickly turns reddiſh. Then augmenting the Fire, evaporate all the *Aqua-fortis*, and there will remain at the bottom, a *brown matter*, which muſt be kept dry and cover'd. This Medicine, call'd *Lapis Infernalis*, might be made more effectual and proper for Men; by taking *two ounces* of the *Filings*, or *thin plates* of *fine Silver*, diſſolv'd in *five ounces* of ſtrong *Aqua-fortis*; and pouring the ſolution into a glaſs *Cucurbit*, cover'd with its *Alembick*; and drawing off one half of the *Aquafortis*, with a heat of Aſhes or Sand. After the Veſſel is cool'd, you will find at the bottom, a certain matter, in a ſaline form; which muſt be ſet on a ſmall Fire in a pretty large *German Crucible*, (to prevent its boiling over) till the ebullition ceaſes, and a matter ſinks to the bottom; after which augment the Fire a little, and the matter will aſſume the form of *Oil* at the bottom of the *Crucible*. Pour this *Oil-like* ſubſtance, into a very clean mould, ſomewhat hot, and anointed with *Tallow*, where it will grow as hard as a Stone; and afterwards keep it in a well ſtop'd Glaſs-bottle, and in a dry place. This Stone alone rubb'd upon Warts every day, will deſtroy them; or, to prevent waſt, the ſmalleſt pieces of it may be beaten to pouder, and ſtrew'd upon the Warts; after which the Scabs will quickly fall away. The ſecond Preparation is very effectual againſt Cancers in Men, if they be touch'd with it every day, till they fall away. 'Tis likewiſe proper againſt Figs, proud-

proud-fleſh, and other excreſcencies. The Silver intangling the *Aqua fortis*, keeps up the ſolid form; which Copper, Iron, and ſuch like imperfect Metals would not do.

If the Hoof is ſeparated from the Cronet at the Heel, the white Hony charge will cure it, and make the Hoof grow. The Compoſition of that Medicine is as follows.

The white Hony Charge and Plaiſter.

Boil eighteen large Lilly Roots, chopt, (or, for want of theſe, a *pound and a quarter of the pouder of Linſeed) in two gallons of Whey*, which I take to be better than *Beer*. When the *Roots* begin to grow ſoft and cleave under your Finger, add *leaves of Mallows and Marſhmallows, without the Stalks, of each ten handfuls*. Boil till all be reduc'd to a *Maſh*, pouring in *Whey* from time to time, to make up the waſt. Then ſtrain the *Marſh* through a hair-ſieve turn'd upſide down; and boil the ſtraining for ſome time with *Tallow and Butter, of each a pound*, ſtirring all the while. Then remove the Veſſel from the Fire, and as ſoon as you perceive that the boiling is perfectly ceas'd, incorporate the Ingredients with *Hony and common Turpentine, of each a pound*. If it be not thick enough, thicken it with *wheat Flower*; but the better way is to boil the Maſh at firſt to ſuch a conſiſtency, as ſhall not need any *Flower* to thicken it. It muſt be kept well cover'd; and tho' it appears mouldy, it may be very good nearer the bottom. If the moiſture was well evaporated in the boiling, 'twill keep two months in a dry place. If it be too thick, you may add a little *Beer*, when you uſe it. 'Tis applied cold with *Flax*, to the ſore place ſhav'd, after the manner of a *Pultis*, renewing the application once a day, till the Sores be dry'd up; taking care to wipe off the matter from time to time, and to keep the

Hair

Hair very ſhort, for it grows very faſt, during the uſe of this Remedy. It ought to be bound on with broad Liſts of Cloth, after the manner of an *Expulſive Bandage*. Inſtead of this *Charge*, *Farriers* are wont to apply the *white Plaiſter*, which does a little temper the ſharp humours, but does not aſſwage the ſwelling. 'Tis prepar'd thus. *Boil half a pound of Hony, with a Litron of fine Wheat flower, and a pint of Milk*; ſtirring 'em gently over a little fire, till they begin to incorporate and grow thick. Then adding *four ounces of common Turpentine, and two ounces of Oil Olive*, continue boiling and ſtirring for ſome time, and apply it as you do the *Hony Charge*. This is a cheap Remedy, and not altogether ineffectual, when the ſores are ſmall, and not inveterate.

Sometimes after a long Application of the *Hony Charge*, the humours being condenſated upon the fleſh, and the moiſture dry'd up, make the Legs ſwollen and hard. In which caſe, *Take half a pound of Quickſilver, and four ounces of the pouder of Brimſtone:* Incorporate 'em in a Mortar with the Peſtle, till the *Quickſilver* be kill'd. Then adding a *pound of Tallow*, mix and make an *Ointment*. Shave off the Hair very cloſe, and afterwards rub the part with a *Surſingle* till it grows hot, without making it raw; then apply this *Ointment*, holding a red-hot Iron-bar near the part, to make it penetrate the deeper. Wrap it about with a Hog's-Bladder, and lay a cover over that, binding on the dreſſing with a piece of Liſt, not Cords which leave an impreſſion. Renew the application as before, every 48 hours, omitting the rubbing with the *Surſingle*. This *Ointment* never fails to cure inveterate hard ſwellings, unleſs they follow a *Farcin*, or the Horſe be old; in which caſe the cure is abſolutely impoſſible.

A Mercurial Ointment to diſſolve ſwellings in the Legs.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Halter-Caſt.

SOmetimes Horſes indeavouring to ſcrub their Head, Neck, or any other itching part, with their *hinder Feet*, intangle their Foot in the Halter; and by ſtruggling violently to Diſengage themſelves, occaſion very dangerous hurts in the hollow of the Paſtern. In this caſe; clip away the Hair; and anoint the part Morning and Evening, with *equal quantities of Linſeed Oil and Brandy*, well mix'd by ſhaking in a glaſs; taking care in the mean time to keep the Foot very clean. I once cur'd a Horſe that had cut the inſide of his Paſtern to the bone, upon the two Chains, with which he was ty'd; by clipping off the Hair, applying once a day the *white Hony Charge* bound up with a cover, and anointing the Leg with the *Duke's Ointment*; and applying at the ſame time to the *Cronet*, which was ſwollen and inflam'd, an *adſtringent* of the pouder of *unſlack'd Lime*, mix'd with the *ſecond Water*; for I was affraid he ſhould have caſt his Hoof. During the *Cure*, there fell off Eſcars; And all the Farriers doom'd him to irrecoverable lameneſs; but in a month's time he was cur'd, and did not halt above ſix Weeks. 'Tis true, many Horſes do not eſcape ſo well: However this may ſerve for an Inſtance of the efficacy of the *white Hony Charge*. If the hurts be ſmall, without a ſwelling; black Soap with Spirit of Wine, or the Oil remaining after the evaporation of Wine, mix'd with Oil in an equal quantity; or the Duke's Ointment; will quickly heal 'em.

The End of the Second Part.

AN APPENDIX

CONTAINING,

A Deſcription of ſome Diſeaſes, and the Receipts of ſome noted Medicines, omitted by Monſieur *Solleyſel.*

Extracted from the beſt Authors on that Subject.

Of the Anticor.

THE *Anticor* is a dangerous Sickneſs, ariſing from a redundancy or inflammation of the Blood, occaſion'd either by high Feeding, without Exerciſe; or by hard Riding. In this Diſeaſe the corrupt and inflam'd Blood rendevouzing about the Heart, gathers into a viſible Swelling in the middle of the Breaſt, juſt oppoſite to the Heart, from whence the word *Anticor* is deriv'd. Before this Swelling appears, the Horſe groans when laid down, and hanging down

his Head refuſes to eat. If this Swellings aſcends to the Throat 'tis preſent Death. To prevent this Diſtemper the Horſe ought to be bled before he is turn'd to Graſs, or put to feed in the Stable, and likewiſe two or three Months after; eſpecially if his Blood be black and thick, which is a ſign of Inflammation and Corruption. As for the Cure: Immediately upon the appearance of the Swelling, draw a large quantity of Blood from the Plate-Veins, or if you cannot find them, from both ſides of the Neck. Then give him a Drink of *Diapente*, with *Ale*, adding *an Ounce of brown Sugar-Candy*, and *half an Ounce of London Treacle.* After that rub the Swelling every Day till it become ſoft, with *Hog's-greaſe*, *Boar's-greaſe*, and *Baſilicon*, incorporated together in equal quantities. Then open it, and waſh the Sore with *Copperas-Water, made of two Quarts of Water; half a Pound of green Copperas, an handful of Salt, a ſpoonful of Honey, and a branch of Roſemary, all boil'd together, to the conſumption of half the Liquor, the quantity of a Walnut of Alum being added before it is taken off the Fire.* After you have waſh'd the Sore, apply an Ointment made of *Roſin and Wax, of each the quantity of a Walnut, melted together, half a pound of clean Hogs-greaſe, a ſpoonful of Honey, a pound of Turpentine, and an Ounce of Verdigreaſe in fine Powder.* Some chooſe to ſtrike the Swelling in divers places with a Fleam, that the Corruption may iſſue forth; and then anoint it with *Hog's-greaſe* made warm.

Of

Of Bleymes.

A *Bleyme* is an Inflammation between the Sole and the Bone of the Foot towards the Heel. There are three ſorts of *Bleymes*: The firſt being generated in ſpoil'd wrinkled Feet with narrow Heels, are uſually ſeated in the inward or weakeſt Quarter. In this caſe, pare the Hoof betimes, and let forth the Matter, which is almoſt always of a brown colour; then pour in *Oil de Merveille*, charging the Hoof with a *Remolade* of *Soot* and *Turpentine*. Theſe *Bleymes* are prevented by keeping the Horſe's Feet clean and moiſt, and making him ſtand five or ſix Hours every Day in his own Dung, moiſten'd with Water; and knocking down the Heel when he is ſhod, that the Sinew may be extended, and ſo prevent the ſhrinking of the inſide of the Hoof, by which the *Bleymes* are almoſt always occaſion'd.

The ſecond ſort, beſides the uſual Symptoms of the firſt, infects the Griſtle, and muſt be extirpated, as in the cure of a *Quitter-bone*; giving the Horſe every Day *moiſten'd Bran*, with two Ounces of *Liver of Antimony*, to divert the courſe of the Humours, and purifie the Blood.

The third ſort is occaſion'd by ſmall Stones and Gravel between the Shoe and the Sole. For cure, pare the Foot, let out the Matter, if there be any, and dreſs the Sore like a *Prick of a Nail*. If there is no Matter, take out the bruis'd Sole.

Of Seymes or False-Quarters.

A *False-Quarter* is a Cleft (for the most part) on the inside of the Hoof, accompany'd with a violent Pain, and sometimes Bleeding, and opening as the Horse sets his Foot to the Ground. This Distemper is only the effect of a dry and brittle Hoof, and narrow Heels. For cure, Cut away the old corrupt Hoof, and then take *the Whites of nine Eggs, the Powder of Incense, unslack'd Lime, Mastick, Verdigrease, and Salt, of each three Ounces*; mingle these together, then dip in as much *Hurds* as will cover the Fore-Hoof, lay it on, and all about it lay *Swine's-grease*, an Inch thick or more; do this also below it. And tie it on so as that it may not be stirr'd for a whole Fortnight at least: Then apply it fresh again; and the Horse will require no other dressing to accomplish the Cure. If the Horse starts or shrinks when you lay your Finger on the *False-Quarter*, 'tis a sign Corruption is gather'd within it; in which case, open it with a Drawing-knife, let out the Corruption, and lay on a Plaster of *Horse-dung, Salt, and Vinegar.*

Others commend the following Method: Draw the *False-Quarter* with a Drawing-Iron so near to the quick, that a dewy moisture flows out; then put a Hoop of Wood, about an Inch broad and very thin, twice about the Cronet, fastning it on both sides with a piece of Filleting; the place being first anointed, as well as the *Hurds*, with the following Ointment.

Take of the Roots of Hart's-Tongue, Comfrey, and Mallows, of each half a Pound: Having slic'd 'em small, boil 'em in two Quarts of *Alicant*, till the Roots become soft: Then strain 'em thro' a fine Seaser, and add, of *Venice-Turpentine, New-Wax, Bur-*

Burgundy-Pitch, of each half a Pound; *black Pitch, four Ounces*; *of the oldeſt Oil-Olive a Quart*; melt and boil all (bating the *Turpentine)* till they be well incorporated; then take 'em off the Fire, and put in your *Turpentine*, ſtirring it till it be cold.

Of the Curb.

A *Curb* is a long Swelling, reſembling a Pear, upon the back part of the Heel of the Knee of the Hinder-Leg, occaſion'd by carrying great Burthens, or Strains when Horſes are young, which weaken the great Sinew. For cure; Apply whatever is good for a *Spavin*; or bind the Hoof ſtrait with a broad Incle a little above the Curb; then rub and beat the Curb with a ſmooth Hazel-ſtick; after that thruſt out the Corruption, and put into the Hole two Barley-corns of *White-Mercury* for twenty four Hours. This done, anoint it once a Day with melted Butter.

Of a Jardon.

A *Jardon* is a callous Humour upon the Hough, cauſing Lameneſs, and occaſion'd by ſuch Exerciſes as throw the whole weight of the Body upon the Hough, eſpecially by ſudden ſtops upon Galloping. For the moſt part it is hereditary. For cure; Apply a Reſolvent Plaſter made of *Diachylum cum Gummis, Cinnabar, Bdellium, Opopanax, and Ammoniacum, mixt with Oil of Spike, Turpentine, and new Wax:* And after the Plaſter has been us'd ſeven or eight Days, give the Fire.

Of a String-halt.

HIgh-mettled Horſes are ſubject to an ugly Diſtemper call'd the *String-halt*, for the moſt part in the Hinder-Legs; in which they pull up the affected Leg much higher than the other, twitching it up as if he trod on Needles. For cure; Take up the middle Vein above, and underneath the Thigh, and under it you'll find a String, which you muſt cut away with a ſharp Knife; and then anoint the place once a Day with the following Ointment.

Take of the Oil of Worms, Petroleum, Oil of Nerval, Piece-greaſe (made of the ſhreds of Shoemakers Leather) *and Oil of Spike, of each an Ounce; London Treacle, two Ounces; Hogs-greaſe, a Pound*; melt all together, and after that ſtir it till it be cold. Anoint the place every Day for eight Days together, holding a hot Fire-pan to the place, to make the Ointment ſink the deeper. After the inunction, wiſp him with a ſoft Thum-band of Hay, from the Paſtern to the top of the Hoof; taking care to keep him warm, and not to ride him hard for a Month.

Of the Bone-ſpavin.

THE *Bone* or *Dry-Spavin* is a Swelling as big as a Walnut on the inſide of the Hoof, juſt under the Joint, and near the Maſter-Vein. 'Tis at firſt ſoft, but in time it grows as hard as a Bone, and ſticks very cloſe to the Bone, making the Horſe Lame. 'Tis a hard matter to cure it; however you may try the following Remedies.

Take

Take equal quantities of *Unguentum Apoſtolorum* and *White-Sublimate*, and apply it upon a Pledgit to the Spavin, having firſt caſt the Horſe, and open'd and ſcal'd the Spavin with a ſharp Inſtrument; defend the adjacent Parts, eſpecially the *Maſter-Vein*, from the *Corroſive*, by applying dry Lint; and take care you do not touch the Maſter-Vein when you lay open the *Spavin*. Above the *Coroſive* lay a Plaſter of *Pitch*, *Roſin*, *Turpentine*, *and Hog's-greaſe*, round about the Hoof. After twenty four Hours open it, and if the *Corroſive* has not ſufficiently conſum'd it, apply a freſh one. After that dreſs the Wound with a warm *Salve* of *Turpentine*, *Deer's-ſuet*, *and Wax*.

To prevent a Swelling from running into a *Spavin*, ſhave away the Hair about it, and anoint it two or three Days with *Natural Balſam*; and then lay on a *Charge* made of *three Ounces of the Oil of Roſes*, *an Ounce of Bole-Armoniack*, *half an Ounce of Wheat-floure*, *and the White of an Egg*.

Of the Blood-ſpavin.

THE *Blood* or *Wet-Spavin* is a Swelling on the Hoof, continually ſupplied with Blood from the *Maſter-Vein*. 'Tis eaſier cur'd than a *Bone-Spavin*. The beſt Remedy is this: Having ſhav'd off the Hair, and taken up the Vein, letting it bleed as long as it will, apply twice a Day a *Cataplaſm* of *Cow's-Dung* and *bruis'd Linſeed*, as hot as it can be endur'd. When this has ripen'd the *Spavin*, break it, and lay on a *Plaſter* of *Pitch*, which muſt not be remov'd till it falls off of it ſelf.

Of the Hough-bonny.

Hough-bonny is a round Swelling on the elbow of the Hoof, proceeding from a bruiſe, by beating againſt a Poſt, or otherwiſe. For cure; Pull the Sore a little from the Sinew, and pierce it to the bottom with a red-hot Iron, ſharp at the end like a big Bodkin, and ſomewhat bending at the point. Having thruſt out all the Jelly, tent the hole with *Flax* dipt in *Turpentine and Hog's-greaſe* melted together, and anoint the out-ſide with *warm Hog's-greaſe.* Continue thus, making the Tent leſſer and leſſer till the Sore be cur'd. But above all, the beſt Remedy is what follows: Apply to the Swelling *Hay* boil'd in *old Urine*; and if it comes to Suppuration, lance it in the loweſt part with a thin hot Iron: When the Matter is let out, tent it with a *Salve* of *Turpentine, Deer's-ſuet, and Wax,* laying above it a *Plaſter* of the ſame Ingredients.

Of a Cramp.

A *Cramp* is the contraction of the Sinews of any one Limb. For cure; Chafe it with *Vinegar* and *common Oil,* and then wrap it all over with *wet Hay, rotten Litter,* or *Woollen-cloaths.*

Of

Of the over-ſtretching *or* relaxation *of a* Sinew.

TAke Blood from the *Schackle Veins* in the *Paſtern*, then flea a very fat *Puppy-Dog*, of two Months old, immediately after he is kill'd; bruiſe his Fleſh and Bones together, lay them on a Cloth, and bind it cloſe to the Sinew-ſtrain as warm as you can, having firſt bath'd it with *Brandy*, and taken care to throw away the Dog's Guts. Some prefer a *Fat Cat* us'd in like manner.

Of Gaunt-Belly'd or Light-Belly'd Horſes.

IF a Horſe's Belly ſhrinks up towards his Flanks, you may conclude he is very Coſtive, and afflicted with much unnatural Heat, and will always be very waſhy and tender, and very unhealthy after hard Labour. In order to cure; you muſt know that all Horſes have two ſmall Strings, extending from the Cods to the bottom of the Belly, one on each ſide. Theſe Strings you muſt break with your Fingers, and then anoint the place every Day with *Freſh-Butter*, and the *Ointment Populeon* mix'd in equal quantities.

Of

Of the Ambury.

AN *Ambury* is a great ſpongy Wart full of Blood, with a Root like a Cock's-Stone, happening for the moſt part about the Eye-brows, Noſtrils, or Privy-parts. For cure; Tie a Horſe-hair (which is much better than a Thread) hard about the Wart, and in ſeven or eight Days 'twill fall off. If the Wart be ſo flat that you cannot bind any thing about it, take it away with a ſharp hot Iron, cutting it round about, and ſo deep as to leave none of the Root behind; and then dry it up with the *Powder* of *Verdigreaſe*. In ſinewy places, where a hot Iron is improper, eat out the Core with *White-Sublimate*, then ſtop the hole with *Flax* dip'd in the *White of an Egg* for a Day or two; and at laſt dry it up with *unſlak'd Lime* and *Honey*.

Of the Cords.

THE Cords is a ſtring that runs from the Schackle-Vein to the Griſtle in the Noſe and between the Lip; or two Strings lying betwixt the Knee aud the Body, which run through the Body to the Noſtrils, making a Horſe to ſtumble and fall. As for the cure; ſome take the ſharp end of a crooked Harts-horn, and putting it under the Cords, twine it ten or twelve times about, till the Horſe be conſtrain'd to lift up his Foot; then they cut the Cord and put a little Salt into the place. Others draw a Pottle of Blood from the Vein that deſcends on the inſide of the Leg, and after ſeven Days waſh him with *Beef-Broth*. Others again apply a Plaſter of *Muſtard*, *Aqua-Vitæ*, and *Sallet-Oil* boil'd together.

And

And there are ſome Farriers that bathe the Horſe's Legs with the *Grounds of Ale*, and then rope them up with wet *Hay-Ropes*,

---

Of the Hungry-Evil.

IF a Horſe ſnatches at his Food greedily, as if he would eat a piece of the Manger, give him Milk mix'd with Wheat-Meal to drink, a Quart at a time, and feed him with Provender by little and little at a time.

Of the Stag-Evil, or Palſie in the Jaws.

SOmetimes a Horſe is taken with a ſtiffneſs of the Neck and Jaws, ſo that he cannot move 'em, but turns up the Whites of his Eyes; and at uncertain Intervals of time is ſeiz'd with a Palpitation of the Heart, and beating of the Flanks. If this Diſeaſe be ſpread all over the Body, it uſually proves mortal. The ordinary cauſe, is the Horſe's being expos'd to the cold after a great heat. As for the cure; Give him ſoftening Clyſters Morning and Evening, and let him Blood once in two Days, till you ſee ſome ſigns of amendment. Lay before him a little Bran, with a great quantity of Water, that it may be as thin as Broth. After the uſe of Clyſters and Bleeding, chafe the Neck and Jaws very hard with equal quantities of *Spirit of Turpentine* and *Aqua-Vitæ*, united by ſhaking. Two Hours after rub the ſame parts very hard with the *Ointment of Marſh-mallows*. Afterwards continue to apply *Aqua-Vitæ* in the Evening, and the *Ointment of Marſh-mallows* in the Morning. If the Diſeaſe affects the whole

whole Body, give three or four good ſoftning *Clyſters* every Day; rub the Horſe's Veins with *Ointment of Marſh-mallows* and *Spirit of Wine*, and cover him with a Cloth dip'd in *Lees of Wine* heated, under his uſual Cloaths.

Of Crepances.

THE *Crepance* is an Ulcer in the fore-part of the Foot, about an Inch above the *Cronet*, occaſion'd by a hurt receiv'd in leaping over a Bar or otherwiſe. Waſh it with *warm Wine* and *Urine*, and if 'tis accompany'd with a Swelling or Inflammation apply the *White Honey-Charge*. *Black-Soap* with *Spirit of Wine* is a very effectual Remedy.

Of the Stones drawn into the Body.

IN a Stoppage of Urine, attended with an Inflammation of the Neck of the Bladder, ſometimes the Horſe's Stones are drawn into the Belly by the violent contraction that the Pain occaſions. In this caſe all *Diureticks* muſt be avoided; and we muſt have recourſe to bleeding plentifully in the Flanks, *ſoftning Clyſters*, and the inunction of the Sheath and Stones (after the Horſe is caſt) with an Oil made of *Marſh-mallows*, *Linſeed*, and *Violet-leaves*, boil'd in *Oil-Olive*, and then mix'd with *Oil of Linſeed*; and withal fomenting the Parts with the warm Herbs. As ſoon as the Stones appear tie 'em about with a ſoft Leathern Thong: After which make the Horſe riſe, and he will both Stale and Dung. In a deſperate caſe, exhibit an *Ounce and an half of the Preparation of Antimony*, call'd the *Angelical Powder*, made up into a *Ball* with *Butter* and *White-Wine*.

Of

Of the Head-Ach.

HOrſes are ſometimes liable to Pains in the Head, occaſion'd by extream Heat or Cold, Blows or noiſome Smells. The ſigns are, hanging down of the Head, dropping of his Urine, dimneſs of Sight, ſwoll'n and wateriſh Eyes. For cure; make him Sneeze by Fumigation; then let him Blood in the Palate, keeping him faſting fourteen Hours after. This done, ſpurt into his Noſtrils Wine in which *Euphorbium* and *Frankincenſe* have been boil'd. Others adviſe to let him Blood three Mornings together, then walk him a while; and after that cloath him, and cover his Temples with a *Plaſter* of *Pitch*. Let him eat but little, and ſtand in a dark Stable.

Of an Apoplexy *or* Palſie.

SOmetimes a Horſe will be ſo taken, either in the Neck, that he cannot put his Head down to the Ground, or in the After-parts, that he cannot riſe, the Sinews of his Flank being palpably hard. For cure; Anoint his Neck with *Oil of Peter*, drying it in with a hot Iron, and then wind a little looſely about his Neck, from his Shoulders to his Ears, a Thumb-band of the longeſt hotteſt Dunghil-Litter. If the Malady lies in the After-parts, lay him upon the Litter of a hot reeking Muckhil, after the Parts are anointed, and lay a Cloth over that to keep it on, renewing it four times a Day.

Of

Of the falling of the Creſt, Mangineſs in the Mane, or the ſhedding of the Hair.

THeſe Diſeaſes proceed from Poverty or overriding. Blood-letting and good keeping will certainly raiſe the *Creſt*. Anointing with *Butter* and *Brimſtone* will cure a *Mangy-Mane*. And the application of the Aſhes of *Southernwood* mix'd with *common Oil*, will make the *Hair* ſmooth, thick, and fair.

Of a Canker in the Noſe, Mouth, or any other part of the Body.

TAke equal quantities of the Juice of *Plantane*, *Vinegar*, and Powder of *Allom*, and anoint the Sore twice or thrice a Day.

Of the Poll-Evil.

THE *Poll-Evil* ſo call'd from breeding in the *Poll*, behind the Ears, is a great Swelling or Inflammation, occaſion'd by a Bruiſe or Blow, or the Horſe's ſtrugling with a new Hempen-Halter. There are ſome *Poll-Evils* in the Head, and ſome in the Neck: But for a general cure, the following Remedy will ſerve; Shave off the Hair, and apply a Plaſter of *Black Shoemakers-Wax*, ſpread upon white allom'd Leather, till the Impoſthume breaks. Then apply a hot Poltice of *White-Wine*, boiling hot, mix'd with the Lome of a Mud-Wall, Straws and all; renewing it once a Day till the Impoſthume is well.

Of

For a Horſe burnt by a Mare, and for the Colt-Evil.

THis is known by the Mattering of his Yard. For cure; Take a Pint of White-Wine, in which boil a quarter of a Pound of Roch-Allom; and when it is cool, ſquirt it with a Syringe as far into his Yard as you can. If he ſheds Seed give him every Morning a Ball of *Turpentine* and *Sugar* mix'd together. Some anoint the Yard with a Salve of the Powder of *Avens*, and Leaves of *Betony*, ſtamp'd with White-Wine.

To cauſe a Horſe to Piſs, for his relief in ſome Colicks.

PUT two Ounces of the *Syrup of Dialthæa* to a quarter of a Pound of *Caſtile-Soap*; beat 'em well together, make pretty big Balls, and diſſolve one of 'em in a *Pint and a half of ſtrong Beer*, ſcalding hot. When 'tis lukewarm, give it him in a Horn, and let him faſt an Hour after.

For a Horſe that Gauls between the Legs, thro' Heat or ill Dreſſing.

TAke a *new Egg*, cruſh it between his Legs, and rub the gaul'd places with it, after the Sores are wip'd.

To

To kill Lice.

TAke the *Juice of Beets* and *Staves-acre*, beaten together, and anoint the Body all over with it.

For a Horſe's Yard that is foul'd or fur'd without, ſo that he piſſes in his Sheath.

TAke *freſh Butter* and *White-Wine Vinegar*, melt them, then pull out his Yard, take off the filth, and waſh it with the *Butter* and *Vinegar*; injecting alſo ſome into his Yard.

Of the Stiffling.

A Horſe is ſaid to be *Stiffled* when the *Stiffling-bone* is out of its place, ſo that it ſticks more out on the one ſide than the other, and the Horſe dares only to touch the Ground with his Toe. For cure; Set a Patton-Shoe on his ſound Foot, and ſo turn him to Graſs; for that will compel him to tread upon his Lame Foot, and the ſtraining will recall the *Stiffling-bone* to its place. Or ſwimming in a Mill-Pool or Pond till he Sweats behind the Ears will perfect the cure; tho' ſwimming is improper for any other Strain but this. After the ſwiming lead him home cloath'd, and peg the oppoſite Foot as long as he ſtands in the Houſe: When he is dry, rub in an Ounce of the *Oil of Turpentine*, ſhak'd in a Glaſs with as much *ſtrong Beer*; tho' this makes it ſwell a little for the preſent, yet it proves an effectual and ſpeedy cure.

Schmit's

Schmit's *Ointment, very effectual in reſtoring the Hoof.*

TAke half a Pound of Roſin and a Pound of Oil Olive, melt them in a Copper Baſon tin'd; a quarter of an Hour after the removal of the Veſſel from the Fire, add *Maſtick* and *Olibanum in Pouder*, of each an Ounce and an half; ſtir the Ingredients together about half a quarter of an Hour, and then add half a Pound of common *Turpentine*, continuing to ſtir a little longer to incorporate the whole.

At the ſame time take half a Pound of *Honey*, and half a Pint of ſtrong *Aqua-Vitæ*, boil them gently till they begin to ſmoak, not forgetting to ſtir them; then add *Verdigreaſe* and *Copperas*, in very fine Powder, of each three Ounces, ſtirring and boiling till all the Subſtances be united; and as ſoon as the mixture is half cold pour it into the firſt Baſon where the Oil is, which ought to be half cold alſo: Mix 'em together, and immediately add two Ounces of *burnt Allom* in fine Powder, one Ounce of *Orpiment*, ſtirring and mixing 'em with the reſt; and as ſoon as they are all incorporated, add *Flower of Linſeed* and *Fenugreek*, of each three Ounces, ſtirring the Maſs till it be almoſt cold; at laſt add two Ounces of *Aloes* in fine Powder, ſtirring till it be incorporated with the reſt of the Ointment, which will then be compleated, and muſt be kept in a Pot. Its colour is not much different from that of *Ægyptiacum*.

This Ointment cleanſes, reſiſts Corruption, heals, and makes a fine Cicatrice; and this alone may ſerve to cleanſe the greateſt Wounds, to ſeparate a *Felander*, or any other extraneous Body, and draw them out of a Sore; mix the Ointment with an equal quantity of *Sugar*, and apply it cold with a

Bolſter of Flax. The ſame Application is convenient when one of the quarters of the Hoof is cut away.

Since the Hoof does not always fall quite away at once, but by degrees, and uſually after conſiderable Intervals; you muſt apply this Ointment cold to all the ſore and raw Parts; and if the Fleſh grow too faſt, or appear frothy, burn the higheſt part of it, and then apply the Ointment.

This Ointment alſo is very proper for Wounds in the Withers, and in all other parts of the Body, for it keeps 'em very clean, and prevents a Gangrene.

Thoſe who carry Trains of Horſes to the Army, or travel with a great number of Horſes, ſhould always make proviſion of a ſufficient quantity of this Ointment. And if Farriers had it in their Shops, they would daily make new Diſcoveries of its Virtues, and lay aſide the uſe of the *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*, and all drying Powders. The Application of this Ointment, after the uſe of an *actual* or *potential Cautery*, and after the Scabs are fall'n off, is a preſent Remedy for all *Quitterbones*, whether they proceed from outward or inward Cauſes.

It may be called an excellent kind of *Ægyptiacum*, and very effectually reſtores and ſtrengthens the Sole, when the ſuperfluous moiſture of the Fleſh hinders its growth.

You may cure watry or running Sores in young Coach-Horſes, by ſhaving off the Hair, and applying this Ointment daily. The ſame may be alſo uſed in the Cure of *Pricks* or *Stubs*; but there are other Ointments more effectual in that caſe.

Neat-

Neat-Herds Ointment for the Mange.

TAke *burnt Allom* and *Borax* in fine Powder, of each two Ounces; *White Vitriol* and *Verdigreaſe* beaten to a very fine Powder, of each four Ounces: put 'em into a very clean Pot, with two Pounds of *Honey*, and boil 'em over a clear Fire, ſtirring all the Subſtances together till they be well incorporated. After the *Ointment* is cold, add two Ounces of ſtrong *Aqua-Fortis*, keep it well cover'd for uſe, ſtirring it once a Day, during the firſt ſix Days. One Application, or two at moſt, will perform the Cure; but you muſt take care that the Horſe may not be able to reach it with his Teeth. If his Tail be Mangy, you muſt firſt ſcrape the place.

Sometimes this *Ointment*, when it is laid on thick, makes the Skin fall off like Scales, but without any danger, for the Scab may be eaſily ſeparated, by anointing it with Tallow; after which the Horſe is perfectly freed from the *Mange*, and even tho' the whole *Cuticula* or Scurf-Skin fall off, it will come again with the Hair, rarely leaving any conſiderable Mark.

This Ointment is not only good for the *Mange*, but alſo for the Pains, running and watry Sores, foul Wounds and Ulcers, Arreſts, Mules, and other ſuch like Sores, which it dries up effectually; but it ought not to be apply'd when the Legs are ſwoll'n or gourdy; for after the drying up of the Sores, the Legs remain ſtill ſwoll'n and full of Humours, which will certainly break forth in ſome other part; and therefore the Humour muſt be firſt evacuated by the *White Honey-Charge*, or ſome other convenient Remedy, and then dry'd up with this *Ointment*.

The ſame Remedy cures the Sores in the Urinary Paſſages of Oxen, that proceed from their being

naſtily kept, and heals Wounds in Horſes, but not without great Pain and Smarting. 'Tis a ſort of *Ægyptiacum*, of excellent uſe for the healing of foul Sores in the Feet, or any other part of the Horſe's Body. 'Tis ſtronger than the *Counteſſes Ointment*, but does not bind ſo effectually; and is not inferior to the beſt *Ægyptiacum*, for cleanſing Wounds and Sores, and conſuming corrupt Fleſh.

The Counteſſes Ointment, *to heal and cloſe up the Sores occaſion'd by Impoſthumes in the hairy part of the Foot.*

TAke half a Pint of *Aqua Vitæ*, and a Pound of *Honey*, boil 'em over a very ſmall Fire, in a clean glaz'd Pot, ſtirring 'em with a Slice till the *Honey* be throughly heated and incorporated with the *Aqua-Vitæ*; then add *Verdigreaſe*, *Gall*, and *Venetian Borax*, of each two Ounces, ſtrain'd thro' a fine Searce, with two Ounces of *White Vitriol* beaten; boil 'em altogether over a gentle Fire, ſtirring 'em till they be well incorporated, and keep the *Ointment* for uſe, in the ſame Pot, well covered.

Apply this *Ointment* cold, on a little Cotton or Flax; and, above that, charge the whole Foot with a white or black Reſtringent: Thus the Sore will be healed, and the Hoof faſten'd to the Skin, after the firſt or ſecond Application.

In this caſe, the main ſcope of the Cure ſhould be to ſtrengthen and bind the upper parts, or to drive the Matter downwards. This may be done, by applying the *Ointment* above, with the *Reſtringent Charge* over it, and dreſſing the hole made in the Foot with the *Vulnerary Water*, the *burning Balſam*, or the *Oil de Merveille*, or of *Gabian*.

The

The Duke's Ointment *proper for all ſorts of Swellings accompanied with Heat, or Inflammations.*

TAke clear and pure *Linſeed Oil*, one Pound; Flowers of Brimſtone, four Ounces; put 'em into a Matraſs or Glaſs Phiol with a long Neck, letting it ſtand in a moderate ſand heat for the ſpace of an Hour; after which, augment the Heat, and keep it up to the ſame degree, till the Flowers be perfectly diſſolv'd. In the mean time, before the Oil grow cold, leſt part of the Brimſtone fall to the bottom, melt a Pound of *Tallow*, or of *Boar's-Greaſe*, in another Veſſel, with two Ounces and an half of *White-Wax*; inſtead of which, if you can procure *Horſe's Greaſe*, the Remedy will be more effectual; but then you muſt take four Ounces of *Wax*, becauſe *Horſe's Greaſe* is not ſo thick as the *Boar's-Greaſe*. The *Greaſe* and *Wax* being wholly melted, pour in the *Linſeed Oil*, and removing the Veſſel from the Fire, ſtir the *Ointment* with a ſlice of *Alkanet-Root* till it be cold.

It reſembles *Ointment of Roſes*; for the *Brimſtone* is ſo perfectly diſſolv'd, that you can hardly perceive it, otherwiſe than by the Smell. This *Ointment* is apply'd cold; it eaſes Pain, and aſſwages all ſorts of Swellings, Blows, Bruiſes, *&c.* in the Withers, Hams, Sheath, and other Parts of the Body; provided it be applied for a conſiderable time.

The ſuppurative or ripening Ointment, call'd, Baſilicum.

TAke *Yellow-Wax, Sheep's-Suet, Roſin,* and *Black-Pitch,* of each half a Pound, cut 'em into ſmall pieces; then put five Pounds of *Oil Olive* into a Baſon or Pot; ſet it over a pretty ſtrong Fire, and when the Oil is hot, add the other Ingredients; after they are wholly melted, ſtrain the Liquid maſs through a piece of Canvaſs or coarſe Cloth, and then add a Pound of *Turpentine,* ſtirring it conſtantly till it be cold: So ſhall you have an excellent Suppurative; with which you may ever chafe the Parts that you mean to ripen, or anoint Tents with it, in order to digeſt and ripen the Matter.

The Liquid Cauſtic.

TAke the *Spirits of Salt* and *Nitre,* of each two Ounces, put 'em into a Matraſs, and after the ebullition is over, if any happen, add two Ounces of Quickſilver, and place the Matraſs in a moderate heat, till the *Mercury* be conſum'd or diſappear; then add two Drams of good *Opium,* and you will have an excellent *Cauſtic,* which muſt be kept in a Glaſs Phiol.

The

The true Ointment of Montpelier.

TAke of the true *Ointments of Roſes, Marſh-mallows, Populeum*, and *Honey*, of each a Pound; mix 'em cold, and keep 'em in a Pot cloſe cover'd. This *Ointment* ſtrengthens without Heat, and is proper in all caſes where there is occaſion for *Charges* or *Ointments*. *Note*, The *Ointment of Roſes* is often adulterated, by taking *Tallow*, coloured red with *Alkanet*, and waſhing it in *Roſe-Water*; as well as that of *Populeum*, by adding *Verdigreaſe*, to give it a bright green colour, and ſo make it more ſaleable.

An excellent Powder for Purſive Horſes.

TAke three Pounds of *Linſeed*, and ſpread 'em in an Earthen Pan; put the Pan into an Oven, as ſoon as the Bread is taken out; ſhut the Oven, and ſtir the Seed in the Pan once every Hour. Continue after the ſame manner to put the Pan into the Oven, immediately after the Bread is taken out, till the Seeds grow dry and brittle, and all their moiſture be exhal'd. Then take two Pounds of *Liquorice* raſp'd, or rather a Pound of the black Juice of *Liquorice*, which is more effectual, and almoſt as cheap; *Anniſeeds*, half a Pound; *Sage*, and *Leaves* and *Flowers of Hyſſop* dry'd, of each half a Pound; *Carduus Benedictus*, and *Leaves* and *Flowers* of *Leſſer Centaury*, of each four Ounces; *Leaves* of *Long Birthwort*, two Ounces; *Speedwel* and *Sanicle*, of each two Handfuls; *Roots of Elecampane*, four Ounces; *Comfrey*, and *Roots of Marſh-mallows*, or *Mallows*, of each two Ounces; *Gentian*, half an Ounce; *Miſletoe of the Oak*, two Ounces; dry all

the Ingredients in the Shade, reduce each of 'em to Powder apart; mix 'em together carefully, and preſerve the Powder in a Leathern Bag cloſe ty'd. Give the Horſe every Morning two ſmall Silver Spoonfuls of this Powder in two meaſures of moiſten'd Wheat Bran, making him faſt an Hour and an half after. At Noon and at Night mix a Spoonful with his Oats, which muſt be alſo moiſten'd; and in the mean time give him no Hay, but only good Wheat-Straw. If the Horſe is not eas'd by a methodical uſe of this Remedy, you may conclude his Purſiveneſs to be incurable.

The End of the Appendix.

THE

TABLE.

A.

AGE, *how to know it while a Horſe hath Mark*, Page 14. *what is neceſſary to be kept in Memory for that end*, 15. *old Horſes labour, eat, and ſleep better than young ones.* 17. *how to know the Age of a Horſe that is paſt Mark, ſhell-tooth'd, or hollow-tooth'd, or counter mark'd*, 17. *Signs of old Age*, 18, 19.
Agility, *ſee* Vigour.
Amble, *its true Motion and difference from a Walk*, 189, 190.
Ambling, *how to know if a Horſe ambles well*, 61, 62. *the true and eaſieſt way to make a Horſe amble*, 175. Amble *and Trot, both prejudicial to Speed*, 158, 159.
Anbury, 362.
Anticor, 353.
Antimony, *its Analyſis*, 314.
Antimonial *Preparations*, 313. *Golden Sulphur of Antimony*, 316.
Apoplexy, 365.
Appetite, *how to know if a Horſe has a good* Appetite, 68. *a good Belly no certain Sign of a good* Appetite 69. *how to preſerve it on a Journey*, 74, 75. Appetite *loſt*, 229.
Arched Legs, *an Imperfection in a Horſe*, 31. *why* Spaniſh *and* Barbary *Horſes are commonly arch'd*, 31. *how to ſhoe arched Horſes*, ſee *ſhoeing*.
Arman *for a loſs of Appetite*, 230.
Arreſts, *ſee* Rat-tails.
Attaint, 275.
Ayres, *or artificial Motions of a Horſe deſcrib'd*, 191.

B

BAck-*gall'd*, 229. *ſway'd*, 334.
Back Sinew, *its beſt Shape*, 12. *in the Fore-leg it ſhould be large, firm and ſeparate from the Flank-bone*, 31, 32.

The

The Bag *wherein the Foal came forth of its Mother's Belly, good against all Diseases under six Years old*, 151.
Balls *for running Horses*, 154. Markham's *Cordial Balls so much esteemed by all* English *Farriers*, 169. *Chewing* Balls *to retrieve the Appetite*, 231. *Cordial* Balls, 234. 237.
Balotade *described*, 192, *how to perform it*, 217.
Barbs, 227.
Barrs *described*, 2. *how they should be shap'd*, 8. *if the* Barr *of the Mouth be hurt and healed up, 'tis a bad Sign*, 57.
A Bath *to preserve a Horses Legs after a Journey*, 79. *a* Bath *to resolve hard Humours*, 266.
Bay, *the most common of all Colours*, 63. *all* Bay *Horses have black Tails and Manes*, 63. *dappl'd* Bay *and dark* Bay, 63.
Beard, *its due Qualities*, 8.
Beating *upon the Hand, how to cure it*, 213.
Belly, *when well shap'd*, 11. *how to know if a Horse has a good* Belly, 47. *some Horses have the Shape of a Cows* Belly. 48, 49. *how to recover a good* Belly, 48. *a Caution concerning light belly'd Horses*, 48, 49. *how to cure* Gaunt *or* Light-belly'd *Hosses*, 362.
Bitt, *how to accommodate a Horse with a* Bitt *proper for him*, 70. 135. 139. *light* Bitts *best upon a Journey*, 70. *a Description of such* Bitts *as are most in Use*, 136. *of the Canon Mouth jointed in the middle*, 136. *of the Canon with a fast Mouth*, 136. *of the Canon with a port Mouth*, 137. *of the Canon Mouth, the Liberty after the Form of a Pigeons Neck*, 137. *of a* Scatch-Mouth *with an Upset or mounting Liberty*, 137. *of a Canon Mouth, the Liberty after Mr.* Pignatel's *fashion*, 138. *gentle Bitt-mouths preferable to rude ones*, 138. *Horses arm themselves two ways against the Operation of the* Bitt, 143. *how to prevent their so doing*, 143.
Bitings *of mad Dogs and venemous Creatures*, 304. Bitings *of Mice*, 306. Bitings *of Serpents*, 307.
Blazes *divided in the middle cross ways, a sign of an odd Disposition*, 67.
Bleeding *at Nose or Mouth*, 246. *from a Wound*, 300. *after blood-letting*, 229.
Bleymes, *what it is, and how it comes*, 99. 119. *how cur'd*, 355.
Blindness *absolute, how discern'd*, 24, 25. *how occasion'd in Foals by eating* Oats, 151.
Blood *stal'd*, 258. *Ebullition of the* Blood, 327. *Blood-running Itch*, 327.
Blooding *profitable in many Diseases*, 128. *six Reasons for letting-blood*, 128. *the Inconveniences of letting-blood*, 129. *what parts of the Body 'tis proper to bleed in, and upon what Occasions*, 129, 130. *Precautions to be observ'd in blood-letting*, 131. *how to stop the excessive Bleeding when a Horse is bled in the Palate*, 130. *how to adjust the Quantity and Quality of Blood*, 132, 133.
Blows, 267, 268.
Body, *how to know if a Horse has a good* Body, 47. *a light-body'd Horse that's fiery, quickly destroys himself*, 48.

Bones *broken*, 263.
Botts, 233.
Bran *wet, good for lean Horses*, 81. *scalded* Bran *good after Bleeding*, 131. Bran *instead of Oats proper before and after Bleeding*, 132.
Branches *of a Bridle*, 139. *rude and gentle* Branches *and their Effects*, 139, 140. *how to discover what* Branch *is proper for a Horse*, 140. *a strait* Branch *like a Pistol*, 140. *a* Branch *after the Constable of* France's *Fashion*, 140. *a* Branch *after the Form of a Gigot or Leg*, 140. *a* Branch *after the Form of a bent Knee, proper for Horses which arm themselves against the Operation of the Bitt*, 141. *a* Branch *after the* French *Fashion proper to raise a Horses Head*, 142. *another* Branch *hardy for the same purpose*, 142. *a* Branch *more hardy to bring in a Horses Head*, 143. *another* Branch *more hardy than the preceeding*, 143. *what* Branches *are most proper for slender Necks and tender Mouths*, 144. *how to know a rude* Branch *from a gentle one*, 144.
Bread *made of Barly and Beans proper for Racers*, 153. *Nothing is more apt to surfeit a Horse than new Bread*, 162. Bread *to be given to a running Horse in the second Fortnights Feeding*, 162.
Breast-plate, *its due Length and Situation*, 71.
Breath *short*, 309.
Of Breeding, *and how to raise a good and beautiful Race of Horses*, 145. *the Duke of* Newcastle, *the best Author upon that Subject*, 144.
Brittle *Fore-feet should be anointed upon a Journey*, 77.
Burning *by a Mare, see* Colt-Evil.
Burstenness, 338.

C

CAlkins *spoil the Feet*, 119. *but are convenient in time of Frost*, 119, 120. Calkins *fashioned like the point of a Hares Ear, not very dangerous*, 87, 120. *great square* Calkins *are the worst*, 87, 120.
Canker *in any part of the Body, how cur'd*, 366.
Canon, *see Bitt.*
Capelet, *what it is*, 35.
Capriole, *an artificial Motion*, 192. *how to perform it*, 216.
Cavezon, *how to fix it*, 194, 195. see, *inward Rein.*
Perpetual Caustick, 349. *Liquid* Caustick, 374.
Champing *on the Bitt, a Token of a good Horse*, 58.
Channel *described*, 2. *its best Shapes*, 8.
Chest foundering, *its Causes and difference from Pursiness*, 52.
Chest foundering, 309.
Chain, *a good* Chain *makes a thick headed Horse light on the Hand*, 187.
Chops *or Cracks in the Legs*, 346.
Chrystal *of the Eye, when faulty*, 22.
Cinnabar *Pills for Wounds*, 294.
Circles, *the first riding of a Horse upon Circles*, 194.

Clay *blue, good to recover a Horſes Feet*, 79, 80.
Clefts *in the Legs*, 346.
Cloſed behind, *an Imperfection in the Hams*, 34.
Coach, *ſome Horſes not proper for a* Coach, 30. 48, *a Caution to be obſerv'd in buying them*, 48. *the firſt ſhoeing of Coach-Horſes is of Conſequence*, 97.
Cods *inflam'd or ſwell'd*, 337.
Coffin *deſcribed*, 3. *Coffin-bone deſcribed*, 4. *its falling down diſfigures the Foot*, 118.
Cold, *a great Enemy to Horſes*, 150.
Cold *with a Cough*, 235. *with a beating in the Flanks*, 235, 236.
Colick *in general*, 255, 256. *a* Colick *from over-feeding*, 250. *Wind* Colick, 251. Colick *from glaſſy Phlegm*, 252. *Worm* Colick, 254. Colick *from a ſuppreſſion of Urine*, 256.
Colour, *Obſervations upon the different Colours of Horſes*, 63.
Colts *of ones own Breed not to be made Uſe of for Stallions*, 149, *when to ſeparate 'em from the Fillies*, 152.
Colt-Evil *cur'd*, 367.
Cooling *Medicines to be cautiouſly uſed*, 315. 322.
A Cord *or hollow along the Ribbs, a fore-runner of Purſineſs*, 50. Cords *cur'd*, 362.
Corner Teeth *deſcrib'd*, 2. *the Age known by them*, 3.
Coronet *deſcrib'd*, 3. *how it ſhould be ſhap'd*, 12. *Ulcers in the* Coronet, 46.
Corvet, *what Motion it is*, 192. *how to make* Corvets *ſtraight forwards, or along a Wall*, 211, 212. Corvets *ſide-ways*, 213. Corvets *backwards*, 214. Corvets *upon the Volts*, 214. *the Croſs and Saraban upon* Corvets, 215. *how to change upon* Corvets, 225 *very dull or very fiery Horſes improper for* Corvets, 216.
Couch, *how to make a Horſe couch upon his out-ſide*, 207.
Cow-dung *ſoftens the Sole*, 77. *but ſpoils the Hoof*, 79.
Cough *in Foals*, 151.
Cough, 307.
Countermark'd, *ſee* Age.
Cramp, *how cur'd*, 361.
Crapandine, *what it is*, 46. *how cur'd*, 364.
Creſcents, *what they are*, 118.
Creſt *fallen, its Cure*, 366.
Crocus Metallorum, 312.
Crown-Scab, *(both moiſt and dry) ſeldom cur'd*, 34. Crown-Scab, 286.
Croup, *a Horſes* Croup *too much ſubjected by Circles*, 202. Croup *put too much out, or too much in, how corrected*, 205, 206. Croup, *how it ſhould be ſhap'd*, 11. *what a Rocking* Croup *is*, 55.
Croupade, *what it is*, 192. *how to perform it*, 217.
Crupper, *when and how to uſe it*, 71.
Curb, *what it is*, 35. *large* Curbs, 139. *how to cure* Curbs, 357.
Cut, *ſee* Interfere.

D

DArk, *the darker you keep a running Horse the better*, 160.
Deer-colour, 65.
Lieutenants Decoction, 311.
Demy-ayre *or* Demy-volt, *what it is*, 191. *how to change upon* Demy-volts, 209.
A Detergent *for a Gangreen*, 299.
Disunited Legs, *how put to rights*, 191.
Dock-piece, *how to manage it upon a Journey*, 71.
Dragon, *or white Spot in the bottom of the Eye*, 85.
Drench, *how to prepare and exhibit a* Drench, 125.
Drinking *soon after hard riding pernicious*, 76.
Driving *musically, what it is, described*, 23.
Dull, *a sign of a dull Lazy Horse*, 61.
Dung *of a Horse to be observ'd upon a Journey*, 78. *moisten'd* Dung *good for a Horses Fore-Feet after shoeing*, 88. 92. 95, 96. 103. 109. *Slimy and Viscous Dung shews that a running Horse is not duly prepared*, 155.
Dust *upon a Journey dries a Horses Mouth, and spoils his Appetite*, 74.

E

EArs, *when well shap'd*, 5.
Eel-back'd *Horses*, 65.
Electuary *of Kermes*, 233.
Emetick *Wine*, 241. 314.
Ermin'd *white Feet a good Mark*, 67.
Essence *of Vipers*, 251.
Eye, *how it should be shap'd*, 6. *how to judge truly of a Horses* Eyes, 22. *how to know moon* Eyes, 23. *what Colours are most subject to weak* Eyes, 25. *what time Horses are most subject to a Weakness of Sight*, 25. *some vulgar Errors about the trying of a Horses* Eyes, 25. *the* Eye-pits *hollow, a Mark of old Age*, 6. *unless the Horses begot by old Stallions*, 20.
Eyes, *their Diseases*, 242. *Rheums*, 242, 243. *Inflamations*, 244. *Blows or Hurts*, 244. *Films*, 245. *weeping* Eyes, 244. *Moon-*Eyes, 245.
Eye-*water*, 243. *a cheap* Eye-*water*, 243.

F

FAlls, 334. *Falling of the Fundament*, 343. *Falling upon the Ground or in the Water corrected*, 180.
Farcy *occasioned by excessive Feeding after a Journey*, 81.
Farcin *recent, how cur'd*, 325. *inveterate*, 326.
Faults *in Horses, how discover'd*, 26.
Feather *in the Forehead a good Sign*, 51. 67. *as also upon the Ply of the hind Thigh*, 67.
Feeding, *see* Running *Horses*.
Feet, *how to know a Horses* Feet, 41. *fat* Feet *hard to distinguish*, 42. *weak* Feet, *what it is*, 44. *too long* Feet *are bad*, 45. *founder'd Feet grow still worse*, 47. White Feet, *see* white. *Feet to be*

be prick'd upon a Journey, and ſtop'd over night with Cow-dung, 77. *what is meant by tender Feet,* 78. Flat Feet, *ſee* Shoeing. *Large* Feet *apteſt to be ſpoil'd,* 98. Feet, *their Diſorders,* 280. Feet *waſted or ſhrunk,* 288, 289.

Fevers, 322. Fevers *from foundering,* 310.

Figs *on the inſide of the Jawbone not dangerous,* 27. Figs *on the Fruſh what they are,* 39. *how to know if a Horſe has had 'em,* 39.

Fillets *deſcribed,* 3.

Fire, *the only Remedy for an Ox-ſpavin and Jardon,* 37. *'tis profitable to the Hoof upon many Occaſions,* 43. Fire, *how to give it,* 269.

Flanks *deſcribed,* 3. *their due Form,* 11. *when a Horſe has no* Flanks, 47. *how to know when his* Flanks *are out of Order,* 49.

Flexible *Joints the chief Quality of a Horſe of manage,* 30, 31.

Foal, *how long a Mare goes with* Foal, *and which is the moſt proper time to* foal *here in* England, 146. *at what time* Foals *are to be wean'd, and how ordered,* 150.

Foal Teeth, 2.

Food, *dry contributes much to the Beauty of Horſes,* 152, 153.

Foot, *its Parts deſcribed,* 3. *when it ought to have a Star,* 5. *its Heel ought to be large and open,* 42. *it ought neither to be too fat, nor too ſmall,* 46, 47.

Forehead, *how beſt ſhap'd,* 15.

Fore-legs, *how they ſhould be ſhap'd,* 12.

Formes, *what they are,* 34. *they are an uncommon but dangerous Imperfection,* 34.

Foundering, *Obſtructions in the Lungs occaſioned by* Foundering, 309. *Feavers occaſioned by it,* 310.

Foundering, *how to prevent it after hard riding,* 80. *a Horſe founder'd in the Feet, ſhould neither have his Toes pared, nor his Heels much taken down,* 119.

Fret, *ſee* Colick.

Froth *in the Mouth a good Sign,* 9, 58. *eſpecially if it be white and thick,* 58.

Fruſh *or* Frog *deſcribed,* 3. *how it ſhould be ſhap'd,* 13. *it ought to be pair'd flat,* 101.

Fruſh *ſcab'd,* 285.

Fund, *ſee* Source.

Fundament *fallen down,* 343.

Fuzies *dangerous,* 33.

G

GAlling *of a Horſe's Back on a Journey, how prevented and cur'd,* 76. Galling *between the Legs cur'd,* 368.

Galls *on the Back,* 299. *Saddle* Gall, 292. *Harneſs* Galls, 300.

Gallop, *its true Motion,* 190, 191. Galloping *before blood-letting unſeaſonable,* 132. Galloping *as ſoon as the Horſe comes out of the Water prejudicial,* 159.

Gangreen, 298.

Gatherers, *the Uſe and Diviſion,* 2.

Geld-

Geldings *not so easily reduc'd from some Tricks, as Stone-Horses*, 59.
Giddiness, 260.
Glanders, 239.
Glanders *rarely cur'd*, 27.
A Glyster *for Costiveness in running Horses*, 156.
Glysters *always beneficial*, 125, 126. *they ought to be given in a large Quantity*, 126. *Purgative* Glysters *should not be fat*, 126. *How and with what Precautions to give* Glysters, 126, 127. Glysters *for a Cold with a Beating of the Flanks*, 236. *for Bleedings*, 247. *for the Vives*, 249. *A purging* Glyster *for Feavers*, 323. *a cooling* Glyster *for Feavers*, 323. *a scouring* Glyster, 341. *a binding* Glyster, 342.
Go, *how to know if a Horse goes well*, 55. *a vulgar Mistake concerning it*, 55, 56.
Going *back upon a straight Line, how taught*, 199. *going back in a Circle*, 199.
Grass *good for young Horses if they are not pursy*, 81. May Grass *purges by softning and soaking the Humours*, 122.
Gray-Colour, 66. *Fleabitten* Gray, *Horses of that Colour commonly good*, 56. Gray *Horses become white when they grow old*, 21. *Branded* Gray, *light or silver'd* Gray, *and sad or powder'd* Gray, 63. *black brownish, and dapple* Gray, 64. *Iron colour'd* Gray, 66.
Grinders *describ'd*, 2.
Gripes, *see* Colick.

H

HÆmorrhagy, 246.
Hair-shedding *cur'd*, 366. *Sores in the* Hairy *part of the Foot*, 373.
Halt, *a Sign of halting*, 54.
Halter *cast*, 352.
Ham *describ'd*, 4. *how it should be shap'd*, 13. *the Imperfection 'tis lyable to*, 34, &c.
Hand, *how to correct a Horse that's hard in the* Hand, 194. Hand *has the Preheminence of the Spur*, 223.
Harness *Galls*, 300.
Haunches, *when they are of a just length*. 56.
Head, *when well shap'd*, 4. Headach, 365.
Heats, *see* Running Horses.
Heavy, *a Sign of a Horse that's heavy on the* Hand, 61.
Heel *its best Shape*, 13. Kib'd Heels, *see* Mules Traverse. *Low* Heels, *how distinguish'd*, 42. *narrow* Heels, 45. *one side of the* Heel *higher than the other, a Fault*, 45. Heel *Nails to be drawn after a Journey, and why*, 78, 79. Heels *are not to be pared*. 82. 84. Low Heels, *see* Shoeing. Narrow Heels, *see* Hoof-bound. *Taking down the* Heels *prevents* Hoof-bound *and* Bleyms. 99. *it helps the bending of the Pastern*, 113. *and Arched Legs*, 115. *and treading on the Toes on the hind Feet*, 116. *How to help unequal* Heels, 109. Heels *scab'd* 285.

Heels, *how to make a Horse obedient to the* Heels, 200.
Hind-leg, *its Parts describ'd*, 4. *what are its best Shapes*, 13. *a Weakness in the* Hind-leg *that is not in the Fore*, 40.
Hips *strain'd or wrench'd*, 261.
Hoof *describ'd*, 3. *Its Shape and good Qualities*, 13. *how to distinguish a bad* Hoof, 41. Hoof-bound, 44. 288. *its Causes*, 99. Hoofs, *their Disorders*, 280, 370. *thin* hoof'd *Horses must rest after they are shod*, 42. *some Clefts in the* Hoof *dangerous*, 42. *Its good and bad Qualities*, 41. *its Thickness*, 85. Hoof-salve, *see* Ointment. Hoof-salve *good for flat Feet*, 91. *the Horn of the* Hoof *follows the Form of the Shoe*, 100.
Hony *Charge white*, 350.
Honey *Charge red*, 262.
Horses *yield Profit and Pleasure*, 1. *the Names of the Parts of a* Horse, 1, 2, &c. *the due Shape of their Parts*, 4, &c. *how to know if a Horse be well bodied*, 47. *two necessary Qualities in a good Horse*, 60.
Hough-bonny, *how to cure it*, 360.
Hunting *Horses*, *how to choose 'em*, 62.
Hurts *of all sorts*, 290.
Hydrocele *or Cods fill'd with Water*, 337.

I

JArdon *more dangerous than the* Spavin, 37. Jardon *and* Spavin, *join'd by a Circle or hereditary, incurable*, 37. *they are more to be fear'd in young Horses than in old*, 37. *their Cure*, 358.
Jaw-bones, *their due Shape*, 6. *the Sharpness of the nether* Jaw-bone *a Sign of old Age*, 20. *good distance between the* Jaw-bones *contributes to the goodness of the Mouth*, 6.
Incest, *no such thing among Horses*, 149.
Inflamations, *a Cure for 'em*, 373.
Infusions *simple will not purge Horses*, 123, *how to make 'em purgative and exhibit them*, 125.
Injection *for promoting an Evacuation by the Nose in the Strangles*, 235. *for the Glanders*, 239, 240.
Instep *described*, 4. *its due Qualities*, 13, 14.
Interfere, *four things occasion it*, 120. *how to shoe* Interfering *Horses*, 120.
Inward Rein *of the Cavezon ty'd to the Girths, or pul'd low, is excellent for Galloping or Trotting upon Circles of one Tread, and for Corvets upon Circles*, 203. *ty'd to the Pommel of the Saddle, or pull'd high, it works his Croup, and is most proper for* terra *a* terra, 204. *how strait it should be ty'd either to Pommel or Girths*, 205.
Journey, *how to preserve Horses sound upon a* Journey, 70. *how to order them in the beginning of a* Journey, 72. *short Marches best in the beginning of a* Journey, 72. *how to manage a Horse when you come to your Inn*, 73. *how to preserve a Horse after a* Journey. 78. *how to recover Horses that are harrass'd and lean after a long* Journey, 80.
Itch, *blood-running*, 327.

K

KErnels, *loose and moving between the Jawbones*, 26. *fix'd* Kernels, 27. Knee, *its best shape*, 12.

L

LAmpas, 226. Lapis infernalis, 349. Lapis mirabilis, 295. Lean Horses *fatten'd*. 318. Leanness *occasion'd by Fatigue, how to remedy it*, 80. Leek-heads *of two sorts*, 38, 39.
Legs, *the Proportion of their Length to that of the Body*, 14. *sometime they are as long at a Year old as ever, but not always*, 14. *how to know when they are good*, 28. *three Marks of bad* Legs, 29, 30, 31. *broad and fat* Legs *are best*, 31. *other Imperfections in the* Legs, 31, &c. to 40. *what is meant by making Use of the fifth Leg*, 70. *how to keep the* Legs *from swelling after a Journey*, 79. *how to recover the* Legs *going from the Knee to the Coronet in a straight Line*, 10, 11, &c. *how to help arched* Legs, 115. *how to help broken* Legs, 263. *tyr'd, stiff, decay'd* Legs, 264, 265. *swell'd or gourdey*, 266.
Lice kill'd, 368.
Limbs, *how to know when a Horse is well planted on his* Limbs, 53.
Lime-water, 295. Line *of the Banquet, what it is*, 139.
Lips *ought to be thin and little*, 8.
Listenings *proper in Running*, 155.
Litter *fresh makes a Horse stale*, 73.
Long haunch'd *Horses good to climb up Hills*, 56.
Long jointed, *Imperfection in a Horse*, 29. Lungs *obstructed*, 309.
Lying down *after Riding, proceeds oftentimes from Pains in the Feet*, 77. *a Horse must be so ty'd that he may lye down easily*, 78.

M

MAle, *how to make a Mare conceive with a* Male *Foal*, 149. Madness *occasion'd by bitings* 304.
Malenders *described*, 53. Malenders, 270.
Manage, 287. Manage, *the due Age and Stature of a Horse design'd for to* manage, 187. *no Exercise more violent for a Horse than the* Manage, 188. *if a Horses Shoulders be not very easy and supple, he is uncapable of the* Manage, 196, 197.
Mane, *how it should be shap'd*, 9. *mangy* Mane *cur'd*, 366.
Mange, 371.
Mares *should not pisse often on a Journey*, 72. *after a long Journey, its proper to give 'em Horses*, 81. *when and in what manner a* Mare *should be cover'd*, 145. *how to prepare a* Mare *for the Stallion*, 148. *what* Mare *to make choice of for Breeding*, 149.
Mark, *see* Age.
Mash *proper after blood-letting and other Indispositions*, 131.
Matter *running from the Nostrils, how to judge of it*, 27, 28.
Mettle, *wherein true* Mettle *consists*, 48. *the difference between high* Mettle *and Fieryness*, 59.
Middle Teeth *or* Seperators, 2. *the Age is known by them*, 3.
Molten-Grease, 328. *a Scouring to bring it away*, 166.

Ointment of Montpelier *good to make the back Sinews of the Legs stretch the more easily*, 110.
Mount, *after what manner a Man should mount and try a Horse he intends to buy*, 60.
Mouse-colour'd *or* Dun *Horses, the dark with black Extremities are most serviceable*, 65
Mouth, *its parts describ'd*, 2. *its best shape*, 7. *how to know if the* Mouth *be good*, 57.
Mules, *what Shoes are used for them*, 113, 116. Mules Traverse, *what Consequence they are of*, 39. Mules *in the Legs*, 345.
A Muscle *near the Plat-vein, the Incision of which rectifies the Situation of the Pastern, and cures arched Legs*, 111, 112. 115.
Muzzle, *its best shapes*, 7. *the Use of* Muzzles, *and which are the best*, 163.

N

NAils, *the thin and small are best for shoeing*, 82, *Directions for the driving of Nails*, 85. *what is to be done before they are riveted*, 85. *what is to be done when the Rivets loosen, and appear more above the Hoof*, 86.
Narrow chested *Horses have a bad Body, and breath with Difficulty*, 47, 48.
Neck, *when well shap'd*, 9. Deer-Necks *describ'd*, 9.
Nippers, *Teeth so call'd*, 2. Nostrils, *their best Shapes*, 7.

O

OAts *given in great Quantity over-heat the Horse*, 69. *eating 'em heartily, is no certain Sign of a good Appetite*, 69. *they should be given both before and after watering upon a Journey*, 75. *a Horse should be left alone when he eats his* Oats, 77. *how to prevent his eating of 'em too greedily*, 77.
Oil *of Bays scalding hot good for the Feet*, 80, 108, 119. Oil Carminative, *for* Glysters, 252. Oil de Merveille, 284. Oil *of Earth-worms*, 264, 265. *An excellent purging* Oil, 253.
Ointment Ægyptiacum, 295, 296. Ointment Basilicum, 374. Ointment *of Beetles, or black* May-*worms*, 272. Ointment *Coachman's*, 348. Ointment *Connestables*, 281. Ointment *Countesses*, 373. Ointment *Dukes*, 373. Ointment *Earth-worms*, 264, 265. Ointment *to make the Flesh grow*, 296. Ointment *Hermites for Wounds*, 297, Ointment *for the* Hoof, 280. Ointment *Mercurial*, 351. Ointment Monpelier, 375. Ointment *Neatherds*, 371. Ointment *of* Oldenburg, 347. Ointment *for Rheums in the Eyes*, 244. Ointment *Schmits*, 369. Ointment *for Strains in the Shoulders or Hips*, 261. 263. Ointment *for the Strangles*, 233. Ointment *for watery Sores*, 347.
Opening *a Horses Heels after the common way pernicious*, 82, 100. *how to open 'em when the Sole is taken out*, 105, 106.
Osselets, *a dangerous Imperfection in a Horses Legs*, 37.
Orvietan, 250.
Overpassing *the Tread of the Fore-feet with the hind a good Mark for ambling, but not for walking*, 56.

Over-

Over-reaches, *or* Calkin-treads, 42. *how to help* over-reaching, 117. Over-reach, 275, 276.
Ox-legs, *what it is*, 32. Ox-feet, *what it is*, 46.

P

PAces, *Shuffling and mixt* Paces *an ill Sign*, 62. *the natural* Paces *of a Horse*, 189.
Pains *in the hinder Quarters cause light Bellies*, 48, 49. Pains *in the Legs*, 346. Pain *in the Feet distinguish'd from Sickness*, 77.
Palate *describ'd*, 2. *Its due shape*, 8. *its Dryness a Sign of old Age, especially in Mares*, 21. *how to stop a Bleeding in the* Palate, 130.
Palpitation *of the Heart*, 319, 320. Palpitation *from an excessive Heat*, 321. *of cold* Palpitation, 321.
Panton-shoes, *good for narrow and low Heels*, 45. 88. 103. *and to hinder the Sole to grow downwards*, 92. *and why*, 92, 93. *they are good for* Flanders *Mares, before their Feet are bad*, 93. 95. *how to be forg'd*. 94. 102. *half* Panton-shoes, 100, 101. 107. *how to be forg'd and fitted*, 107, 108. *why* Panton-shoes *help Hoof-binding*, 104.
Pare *the Feet, see* Shoeing.
Passades, *how perform'd*, 219. *how perform'd upon a full Career*, 220. Passading *with half Steps most proper for Combats*, 220, 221.
Passaging, *how perform'd*, 220, 221. Passaging *along a Wall*, 201. Passaging *upon Circles*, 201, 202. Passaging *the Croup is excellent to make a Horse obey the Hand and Heel*, 205.
Pastern *describ'd*, 3. *Its due Shape*, 12. *long and flexible* Pasterns, *a great Imperfection*, 29. *how to help* Pasterns *cast forwards*, 111. 113.
Pastern *Joint describ'd*, 3. *when it is said to be crown'd*, 30. Pastern *Joint swell'd or gourded*, 275. Pastern *Veins to be barr'd, and how*, 89, 90. Peach-flower, *see* Blossom.
Pesate, *what it is*, 210, *without it a Horse can never go well in any Ayre, tho' it is not to be taught at first riding*, 210.
Pills, *how to make up and administer* Pills *to a Horse*, 125. Pills *of* Cinnabar *for Wounds*, 294. English Pills *for an old Cough*, 308. *Stinking* Pills, 330, 331. *Stomach* Pills, 232.
Pillars, *putting a Horse between* Pillars *after he can rise easily is very pernicious*, 210, 211. *a new Invention to dress Horses upon all Ayres, by the help of one single* Pillar, 221.
Pinching, *what it is*, 58.
Piroyte, *its true Motions*, 218. *how to assist it*, 219.
Plaister *Universal for all Swellings*, 244. Planted, *when a Horse is right* planted, 29. 53. Plat-vein, 111. *how stop its Bleeding*, 113.
Poll-Evil, 366. Potion *purging and comforting*, 317.
An Universal Cordial Powder, 236. Powder *of Simpathy*, 296, 297. Powder *of Worms*, 333. *An excellent Powder for pursive Horses*, 375.
Pricks *in the Feet with Stubs or Nails in shoeing, or in the Streets*, 282.
A resolving Pultice *for the Glanders*, 239. *a general* Pultice *for all Swellings*, 274. *a* Pultice *for the Hoof-bound*, 289.

Of Purging, 122. Purging *not to be attempted without great Necessity*, 122. *Some Remedies are rather Laxative than true* Purgatives, 123. Purgatives *ought to be given in Substance*, 123. *when to purge a Horse*, 123, 124. *how to prepare a Horse for Purgation*, 124. *how to manage him while the Purge is in his Belly*, 124. *how to order after Purgation*, 124.

A safe Purge *that does not heat the Body*, 324.

Purfiveneſs, *its Forerunners*, 50. *how to form a just Judgement of it*, 50. *it may be occasion'd by a Horses not being brought in Wind before he covers*; 146. Purfiveneſs *cur'd*, 309, 375.

Pye-bald *Horses*, 64. *the leſs white they have the better*, 64.

Q

Quarters *deſcrib'd*, 3. *Imperfections incident to the Hind-quarters*, 34. *falſe Quarters, what they are*, 42. 107. *Clefts in the* Quarters, *ſee* Seyms. Quarter *behind*, 82. Quarters *ſhrunk*, 289.

Quitter-bones, 293, 294.

R

Raiſing *of the Legs, when good*, 54. Raiſe *a Horses Head*, ſee *Branch*.

Rattails, *what they are*, 38. *Coach Horses of a large ſize moſt ſubject to them*, 38. Rattails, 345.

Reaving *an end, how cured*, 180.

Reins, *when well ſhap'd*, 11. Reins *ſwell'd*, 304.

A Remedy *for* Rheums *in the Eyes*, 242. *for the Vives*, 248, 249. *for the Colick*, 256. *for provoking Urine*, 257. *againſt a ſtaling of Blood*, 259. *to ſtanch Blood*, 300. *A* Remedy *infallible for Madneſs, occaſion'd by biting*, 305.

A Remolade *for a Blow*, 267, 268. *for the Hoof-bound*, 289.

A Reſtrictive *for flat Feet and round Soles*, 90, 91. 94.

Reſty *Horſes, how to manage 'em*, 179, 180. Reſty *Jades to be rejected*, 59.

Ribs, *their due Form*, 11. Ring-bone, 278.

Ripening *Ointment*, *ſee* Baſilicum.

Riſing *before the laſt thing a Horſe ſhould be taught*, 196, 199.

Rivets, *ſee* Nails.

Roan, *a good Colour*, 64. *its ſeveral Kinds*, 64.

Rubbing *a Horſes Legs with hard Straw is good when he is cooled*, 74. *but very pernicious immediately upon his being put into the Stable*, 73. Rubican, *a mixt Colour*, 65.

Rude *Motions in a Horſe to be oppos'd*, 194.

Running *Horſes, how to chooſe 'em*, 153. 157. *the ancient Method of preparing them*, 153. *the Duty of the Rider upon a Race*, 156. *the modern way of preparing* Running *Horſes*, 157. *the time requir'd for Preparation*, 157. *the firſt Fortnights Feeding of an Horſe, who is foul, or newly taken from the Graſs*, 158. *the ſecond Fortnights Feeding*, 161. *the firſt Bread*, 162. *what Muzles are beſt for Race Horſes*, 163. *ſome things to be obſerv'd in giving of Heats*, 164. *two excellent Scourings, either of which may be given after a Heat*, 166. *how to order him after the Scouring*, 167. *the third Fortnights Feeding*, 169. *the ſecond Bread*. 169. *how and in what*

what Cases to exhibit Markham's *Cordial Balls*, 169, 170. *the fourth and last Fortnights Feeding*, 170. *some useful Observations while a Horse is preparing for a Match*, 173.
A Rupture, 338.

S

SAddle, *how to know if it rests equally upon the Horses Back*, 70. *the most proper Stuffing for* Saddles, 71. *how to contrive their Shape*, 71. Saddle *Gall*, 292.
Sal Polychrest *for Horses*, 315. *for Men*, 316.
Scouring, *see* Running Horses.
Scratches, 277. Scratches *sometimes take away a Horses Belly*, 49.
Seat *of a Man on Horseback*, 193.
The Secret *of raising fine Horses in cold Countries*, 152.
Seeling, *a certain Sign of old Age*, 21.
Selenders, *what they are, and when to be fear'd*, 37. Selenders, 270.
Sense, *the difference between Ticklishness and a quick Sense*, 59.
Sevil *and* Sevil-hole, 139, *&c.*
Seymes *incident to hoof-bound Horses, and from what Causes*, 45, 46. *how to know 'em*, 46. *how to help 'em*, 107, 108, 109, 356.
Shaking *of the Head and Ears corrected*, 179. Shank *describ'd*, 3.
Sharp *things purge*, 123.
Shell-tooth'd, *see* Age.
Shoes *should be put on some days before a Journey*, 70. *how to know upon a Journey whether they rest upon a Horse's Soles*, 77. *the Art of shoeing all sorts of Feet*, 81. *four Rules to be observ'd in shoeing*, 82 *the lightest Shoes are the best*, 85. *thick Shoes are soonest lost*, 83 *how to pare the Feet, fit the Shoes, and drive the Nails*, 83. *how to shoe Horses that have low Heels*, 86. *how to shoe low and narrow Heels*, 86, 87. *how to keep a large and fat Frush from touching the Ground*, 87. *how to shoe Heels low and narrow near the Shoe, tho' the Frush be large*, 87, 88. *how Heels with a large Frush cannot be helped by shoeing*, 88. *how to shoe flat Feet and high and round Soles*, 89. *vaulted and hollow Shoes pernicious*, 90, 93, 94, 95. *shoeing at the change of the Moon causeth the Hoofs to grow*, 91, 92. 104. Panton-Shoes, *see* Pantons. *how to shoe hoof-bound Horses*, 98. *how to shoe a hoof-bound Horse before a Journey*, 104, 105. *how to shoe a hoof-bound Horse that halts to the Ground*, 105. *how to shoe Horses that have false Quarters*, 107. *how to shoe Horses whose Fore-legs from the Knee to the Coronets go in a strait Line, and those whose Pastern Joints bend too far forwards*, 110. *how to shoe Horses which have arched Legs*, 115. Plaunche Shoes *made use of for Mules*, 115, 116. *how to shoe Horses that tread only on the Toes of their hind Feet, and such as stumble*, 116. *how to shoe an Horse that over-reaches*, 117. *how to shoe Horses which have been founder'd in the Feet*, 118. *how to shoe Horses which cut or interfere*, 120.
Short-jointed *Horses apt to become strait upon their Members*, 30.
Shoulders, *how they should be shap'd*, 10. Shoulders *of a Horse, how suppl'd*, 194. *how to bring in the outward Shoulder*, 196.
Shoulders *wrench'd, splait, or strain'd*, 261.

Signs *of Sickneſs in Horſes*, 225.
Sinew *over-ſtretch'd*, 361. Sitfaſt, 292.
Skittiſh *Horſes how to manage 'em*, 181.
Small Snaffles *beſt for Running-Horſes*, 156.
Sole *of the Foot deſcrib'd*, 3. *When well-ſhap'd*, 13. *Crown'd Soles, what they are*, 44. *Upon thin weak Soles the Shoe muſt not reſt*, 85. Soles *round and high, ſee* Shoeing *the Soles of halting Hoof-bound Horſes muſt be taken out*, 105, 106.
Sores, *watery in the Legs*, 346.
Sorrel *Horſes, moſt of 'em are good*, 64. *Unleſs their Flanks are pale, and their Extremities white*, 65. *The difference of Sorrels conſiſt in the colour of the Manes and Tails*, 64.
Sow-backs *deſcrib'd*, 48.
Source *or* Fund, *what it is*, 63.
Spaniſh *Horſes not the beſt Stallions*, 145.
Spavin, *what it is*, 36. *Ox-Spavin not eaſily perceivable*, 36. *Dry-Spavin oftentimes degenerates into the* Ox-Spavin, 37. *A Cure for both*, 359, 360.
A Specifick *for all Colicks*, 255, 256.
Splents *what they are*, 32. *Pin'd*-Splents, 32. *A* Splent *joining to the Knee lames a Horſe*, 33. *Double* Splents *dangerous*, 35.
Splents, 271.
Spunge *of the Heel, what it is*, 84. *It muſt neither be too long nor too ſhort*, ibid. *How they are to be placed*, ibid. *If great and thick they ſpoil the Heel*, 88.
Sponge *to keep Wounds open*, 293.
Spurs, *Obedience to the* Spurs *a neceſſary quality of a good Horſe*, 60. *Diſobedience to them a ſign of a croſs dogged Nature*, 359. *Bloſſom colour'd Horſes rarely obey 'em*, 64. *How to make a Horſe anſwer the Spurs exactly*, 200. Spur *us'd as a help when a Horſe ſlacks upon* Terra à Terra, *or obeys not the outward Leg enough*, 223. Spurs *a Correction for many things, if us'd with diſcretion*, 223. *But given out of time they make Horſes reſty and vicious*, 224.
Stag-Evil, 363. Staggers, 259.
Staling *often to be encourag'd in Horſes, but not in Mares*, 72. *Moſt good Horſes Stale when they are firſt put into the Stable*, 73.
Staling *of Blood*, 258
Stallion, *what Horſes are fitteſt for* Stallions, 145. *How to order a* Stallion, 146. *The* Stallion *and Mare ought to Feed alike*, 147. *The Age of a* Stallion, 148. Stallion *colour*, 64.
Stars *in the Forehead, a good Mark in Horſes that are not white or gray*, 68. *How to know when they are made by Art*, ibid. *The way of making 'em*, ibid. Starting *remedied*, 179.
Stay *of the Legs when good*, 54. *A* Steel *Medicine for Worms*, 333.
Step *and Leap its motion*, 192. *How to perform it*, 217.
Stiffle *deſcrib'd*, 4. Stiffling *cur'd*, 368.
Stirrop-leathers, *how to prevent their galling of the Horſe's ſides*, 71, 72.
Stomach *Skins bred in the Stomachs of Foals, occaſioning a Cough, how cur'd*, 151. Stones

Stones *swell'd*, 336. *Bruis'd or hard*, 339. Stones *drawn into the Body*, 364.
Stopping *of a Horse, how to be done*, 198. *How to stop upon a Trot or Gallop*, 211. *Stopping upon a Gallop dangerous, before a Horse be accustomed to Stop upon a Walk or Trot*, 200.
Straight, *when a Horse is said to be straight upon his Members*, 28, 29.
Strains, 261.
Straitning, *or closing too much, how to prevent it*, 195.
Strangles, 232.
Straw, *cut and mix'd with Oats, wholsome Food*, 81.
Stringhalt, *its cure*, 358. Stubs *in the Foot*, 282.
Swaying *of the Back*, 334.
Swellings *on the Back occasion'd by the Saddle, how discover'd and cur'd*, 76. Swellings *on ths Legs*, 266. *Hard* Swellings *of long standing*, ibid. Swellings *following ill-cur'd Sinew-Sprains*, 268. Swellings *incurable by common Remedies*, 269. Swellings *occasion'd by Blows*, 267, 268. Swellings *in the Withers*, 302, 303. Swellings *on the Reins or Back*, 304. Swellings *in the Legs occasion'd by watry Sores*, 348, 351.
Sulphur *of Antimony, Golden*, 316,
Super-purgation, 343. Surbated *Feet*, 281.
Sympathy *Powder*, 296, 277,
Syringe *better to give Glysters with than a Horn*, 127.

T.

TAil, *its due Qualities*, 12. *Its Joynts, no certain sign of old Age*, 20.
Taste, *how to judge of Blood by its Taste*, 134.
Teeth, *their division and number*, 2. *A Mare has fewer than a Horse*, 3.
Teignes, *what it is, and how it comes*, 101.
Terra à Terra, *what motion it is*, 191. *The true method to make a Horse go* Terra à Terra, 206. *The square preferrable to a Circle for* Terra à Terra, 208. *The Bridle-hand must be low, and not high for* Terra à Terra, 208. *How to change hands upon* Terra à Terra, 209.
Thigh *or Gaskin describ'd*, 4. *When well-shap'd*, 13.
Tick, *what it is*, 69. Tiger *colour*, 65.
Toe, *treading only on the Hind-Toes to be remedy'd by methodical Shoeing*, 41. Toe *before, and Quarter behind, a Rule in Shoeing*, 82.
Tongue, *how it should be shap'd*, 7.
Tramel *for Ambling, the form of it*, 175. Travel, *See* Journey.
Tread, *when good*, 54. *See* Toe. Trot, *its true motion*, 190.
Truncheons, 333. Tumors, *See* Swellings.
Tushes *describ'd*, 2. *Mares seldom have any*, ibid.
Tyr'd *Horses*, 317.

U.

URine, *its immoderate Flux*, 257. *Its Stoppage*, 368.
Varisse, *an imperfection in the Hams*, 35, 36.
Vestigon, *describ'd*, 35.
Vices *in Horses, how prevented and remedy'd*, 179.

Vigour, *how to judge of*, 58.
Vives, 248.

W.

WAlk, *the true motion of a Horse's Legs upon his Walk*, 189.
Walks, *how to know when a Horse* walks *well*, 55. *What it is to* walk *lightly, surely, quickly, and easily*, 55. *Walking a Horse after he has taken a Glyster, unseasonable*, 127.
Warts, *See* Leek-heads *and* Figs. Warts *in the Legs*, 345. *An excellent* Water *for Pains and Warts*, 348.
Water, *when good and proper to be given on a Journey*, 72. *Watering Courses are pernicious*, ibid. *In* Watering *a Horse's draught should be interrupted several times*, ibid. *Whether a Horse should be watered before or after his* Oats, 74, 75. *What Water is best, and how to correct the sharpness of some Waters*, 75.
Waters *or Humours in the Legs return after apparent discussion*, 40. *In Winter their Cure is difficult*, ibid.
Watery *Sores in the Legs*, 346.
Weaning, *See* Foals.
Wet *upon the Ears and Neck very prejudicial to Race-Horses*, 165.
Wheat-sheaves *unthresh'd a proper Food for Running-Horses*, 153.
Wheezing, *different from Pursiness*, 51.
White *Horses black about the Eyes and Nostrils, some of 'em very good*, 66. White *Feet, Observations drawn from them*, ibid. *Ermin'd* White *Feet, an excellent Mark*, 67.
Winching, *how to remedy it*, 179.
Windgalls, 270, 274. Windgalls, *a sign that a Horse's Legs have been too much us'd*, 32. *If they have any coherence with the Nerves they are incurable*, 40.
Winter, *warm housing in* Winter *contributes much to the beauty of a Horse*, 152, 153.
Withers *describ'd*, 3. *Their due shape*, 9, 10. Withers *hurt*, 301.
Wolf-colour, *of two kinds*, 65.
Wolves-Teeth, 227.
Worms, 333.
Wounds *of all sorts*, 290.
Wounds *preceded by Tumors*, 301.
Wounds *in the Mouth* 228, 229.
Wrenches *or* Strains, 261.
Wry-neck'd *Horses how corrected*, 179.

Y.

YArd *foul or furr'd, a cure for it*, 368.
Yellow *Water*, 295.
Young *Horses not so subject to tread on the Toes of their Hind-feet as old ones*, 116. Young *Horses are not fit for the Manage*, 188. *They should never be much press'd to any thing*, 211.

The End of the Table.